



# **SPECIFICATIONS**

**CAMP VILLERE  
NEW HOME CONSTRUCTION**

at

**CAMP VILLERE, LOUISIANA**

For

**STATE OF LOUISIANA  
MILITARY DEPARTMENT**

**MAJOR GENERAL GLENN H. CURTIS  
THE ADJUTANT GENERAL**

**CONSTRUCTION AND FACILITIES MANAGEMENT OFFICE**

**2014**



---

## INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com





DOCUMENT 00101  
TABLE OF CONTENTS

	No. of Pages
COVER PAGE .....	1
INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION	
000101 - TABLE OF CONTENTS .....	3
000102 - PROJECT DIRECTORY .....	1
000105 - PROFESSIONAL SEALS .....	2
BIDDING REQUIREMENTS	
ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS .....	1
INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS .....	12
LOUISIANA UNIFORM PUBLIC WORK BID FORM .....	1
ATTESTATIONS AFFIDAVIT .....	2
CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS	
ACT 343 REGULAR SESSION 2011 RECORDATION OF AMENDMENTS .....	5
ACT 376 REGULAR SESSION 2011 VERIFICATION OF EMPLOYEES .....	3
ACT 402 REGULAR SESSION 2011 ALIEN EMPLOYMENT PENALTIES .....	3
CONTRACT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR AND PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND .....	3
INDEMNIFICATION AGREEMENT .....	1
AFFIDAVIT .....	2
CONTRACTOR CERTIFICATION .....	1
E-VERIFY AFFIDAVIT .....	1
GENERAL CONDITIONS .....	23
SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS .....	24
PROCEDURE MANUAL FOR INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS .....	39
SCHEDULE OF VALUES .....	6
CHANGE ORDER DOCUMENTS .....	14
PARTIAL OCCUPANCY .....	1
SUBSTITUION REQUEST FORM .....	1
DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS	
011000 - SUMMARY .....	3
012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATIONS PROCEDURES .....	2
012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES .....	3
013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION .....	6
013233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION .....	2
013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES .....	8
015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS .....	4
015636 - TEMPORARY SECURITY ENCLOSURES .....	4
015639 - TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION .....	5
017300 - EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS .....	6
017329 - CUTTING AND PATCHING .....	3
017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES .....	5
017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA .....	6
017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS .....	3

017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING .....2

**DIVISION 6 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES**

060560 - LAMINATE .....3  
061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY .....8  
061533 - WOOD PATIO DECKING .....5  
061600 - SHEATHING .....5  
062023 - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY .....2

**DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

072100 - THERMAL INSULATION .....7  
072500 - WEATHER BARRIERS .....7  
073113 - ASPHALT SHINGLES .....4  
074661- FIBER CEMENT SIDING AND TRIM .....4  
074616 - ALMUMINUM SIDING .....3

**DIVISION 8 - OPENINGS**

081000 - STEEL DOORS .....5  
081100 - HOLLOW CORE DOORS .....3  
085313 - VINYL WINDOWS .....5  
088300 - MIRRORS .....3  
089000 - HARDWARE .....8

**DIVISION 9 - FINISHES**

092900 - GYPSUM BOARD .....4  
093000 - TILE .....4  
093001 - SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE .....5  
099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING ..... 11  
099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING ..... 10

**DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

123530 - RESIDENTIAL CASEWORK .....3

**DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING**

220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING ..... 13  
220523 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING ..... 19  
220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION ..... 21  
221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING ..... 14  
221313 - FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS ..... 22  
221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING ..... 10  
221343 - FACILITY PACKAGED SEWAGE PUMPING STATIONS .....8  
224100 - RESIDENTIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES ..... 11

**DIVISION 23 - MECHANICAL**

230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC ..... 14  
233113 - METAL DUCTS ..... 17  
233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES ..... 14  
238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS .....6

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

260500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL .....5  
260519 - LOW VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES .....7  
260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS .....6  
260529 - HANGARS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS .....5  
260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS ..... 11  
260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING .....4  
260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS.....9  
262416 - PANELBOARDS ..... 10  
262726 - WIRING DEVICES ..... 12  
265100 - INTERIOR LIGHTING ..... 13  
265600 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING ..... 10

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

311000 - SITE CLEARING .....6  
312000 - EARTH MOVING ..... 11  
316219 - TIMBER PILES .....4

END OF DOCUMENT





LA14-A-037  
Camp Villere New Home Construction  
Camp Villere, Louisiana

DOCUMENT 00 01 02

PROJECT DIRECTORY

OWNER: STATE OF LOUISIANA  
LOUISIANA NATIONAL GUARD  
OFFICE OF AHE ADJUTANT GENERAL  
6400 ST. CLAUSE AVE.  
JACKSON BARRACKS  
NEW ORLEANS, LA 70117  
Tel: (504) 278-8357  
OWEN W. MONCONDUIT  
BRIGADIER GENERAL (R), STATE MILITARY DEPARTMENT  
DEPUTY DIRECT, CONTRACTING AND PURCHASING

ENGINEER: DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
*an Architectural and Engineering firm*  
554 Old Spanish Trail  
Slidell, Louisiana 70458  
Tel: (985) 649-5832  
Fax: (985) 641-5950  
Engineer in Charge: Brian Mistich

END OF DOCUMENT

LA14-A-037  
Camp Villere New Home Construction  
Camp Villere, Louisiana

LA14-A-037  
Camp Villere New Home Construction  
Camp Villere, Louisiana

DOCUMENT 00 02 01

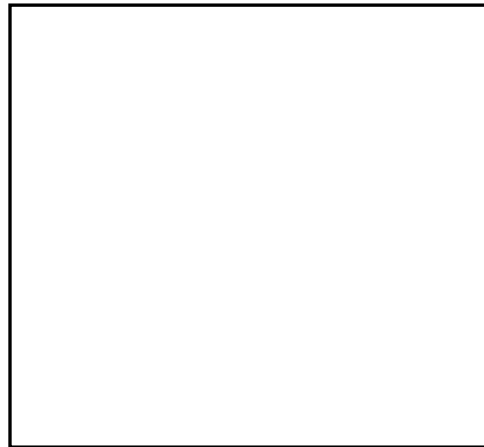
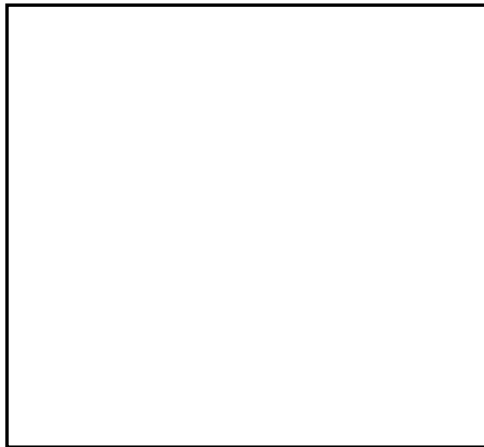
PROFESSIONAL SEALS

PROJECT NAME: CAMP VILLERE NEW HOME CONSTRUCTION  
CAMP VILLERE, LOUISIANA  
LA14-A-037

DATE: OCTOBER 08, 2014

---

ARCHITECTURAL SPECIFICATIONS: The following Specification Sections were prepared by me or under my direct personal supervision:



Dammon Engineering, Inc.

000100 - PROJECT TITLE PAGE

INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION

001001 - TABLE OF CONTENTS  
000102 - PROJECT DIRECTORY  
000105 - PROFESSIONAL SEALS

BIDDING REQUIREMENTS

CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000 - SUMMARY  
012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATIONS PROCEDURES  
012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES  
013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION  
013211 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION  
013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS  
015636 - TEMPORARY SECURITY ENCLOSURES  
015639 - TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION  
017300 - EXECUTION  
017329 - CUTTING AND PATCHING  
017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS  
017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

DIVISION 6 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

060560 - DECORATIVE PLASTIC LAMINATE  
061533 - WOOD AND PATIO DECKING  
061600 - SHEATHING  
062023 - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

073113 - ASPHALT SHINGLES  
074661 - FIBER CEMENT SIDING AND TRIM  
074616 - ALUMINUM SIDING

DIVISION 8 - OPENINGS

081000 - STEEL DOORS  
081100 - HOLLOW CORE DOORS  
085313 - VINYL WINDOWS  
088300 - MIRRORS  
089000 - HARDWARE

DIVISION 9 - FINISHES

092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

LA14-A-037  
Camp Villere New Home Construction  
Camp Villere, Louisiana

093000 - TILE  
093001 - SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE  
096816 - SHEET CARPETING  
099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING  
099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

123530 - RESIDENTIAL CASEWORK

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING  
220523 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING  
220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION  
221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING  
221313 - FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS  
221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING  
221343 - FACILITY PACKAGED SEWAGE PUMPING STATIONS  
224100 - RESIDENTIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES

DIVISION 23 - MECHANICAL

230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC  
233113 - METAL DUCTS  
232200 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES  
238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

260500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL  
260519 - LOW VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS  
AND CABLES  
260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL  
SYSTEMS  
260529 - HANGARS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL  
SYSTEMS  
260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL  
RACEWAYS AND CABLING  
260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
262415 - PANELBOARDS  
262726 - WIRING DEVICES  
265100 - INTERIOR LIGHTING  
265600 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

311000 - SITE CLEARING  
312000 - EARTH MOVING  
316219 - TIMBER PILES

END OF DOCUMENT

---

# BIDDING REQUIREMENTS

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com





PUBLIC NOTICE

Sealed Bids for **CAMP VILLERE NEW HOME CONSTRUCTION**, Camp Villere 34845 Grantham College Rd., Slidell, LA 70460 will be received at Building #402 (Dining Facility), Camp Villere 34845 Grantham College Rd., Slidell, LA 70460, until **9:00 a.m. CST on Wednesday, January 20, 2016**, and immediately opened thereafter.

Complete Bidding Documents for this project, including Plans and Specifications have been prepared by Dammon Engineering Inc. These plans and specifications are available through the listed contact for a plans and specifications deposit of \$200.00 from **Damon Engineering Inc.** Deposit on the first two set is fully refundable to all bonafide prime Bidders upon return of the documents, in good condition, no later than ten (10) days after receipt of bids. **Fifty percent of** the deposit of all other sets of documents will be refunded upon return of documents as stated above. Printed copies are available for **viewing only** from the Designer at the Designers place of business, address listed below. Plans and Specifications are also available in electronic form online and may be obtained without charge and without deposit from Dammon Engineering Inc. Plan holders are responsible for their own printing reproduction cost. Questions about the electronic procedure or viewing shall be directed to **Dammon Engineering Inc. Inc., 554 Old Spanish Trail, Slidell, Louisiana 70458. Phone (985) 649-5832. Attention: Chuck Dammon, Project Manager. E-Mail Address: Chuck@dammonengineering.com.**

The successful Bidder shall be required to furnish a Performance and Payment Bond written as described in the Instructions to Bidders included in the Bid Documents for this project.

A mandatory pre-bid conference is scheduled for **9:00 a.m. CST on Wednesday, January 6, 2016 at Building #402 (Dining Facility), Camp Villere 34845 Grantham College Rd., Slidell, LA 70460. Attendance at this Conference is mandatory.** Prospective bidders must attend the pre-bid conference in order to submit a bid. The Jackson Barracks Point of Contact is Chief Master Sergeant (Retired) James E. Downing Sr. Email: [james.e.downing10.nfg@mail.mil](mailto:james.e.downing10.nfg@mail.mil). Phone contacts: Office: 504-278-8798, Mobile: 985-215-5915.

**BIDS SHALL BE ACCEPTED ONLY FROM CONTRACTORS THAT ATTEND THE ENTIRE MANDATORY PRE-BID CONFERENCE.**

ANY PERSON REQUIRING SPECIAL ACCOMMODATIONS SHALL NOTIFY **CMSGT JAMES E. DOWNING SR** OF THE TYPE(S) OF ACCOMMODATION REQUIRED NOT LESS THAN FIVE (5) DAYS BEFORE THE MANDATORY PRE-BID CONFERENCE.

Bids shall be accepted from Contractors who are licensed under LA. R.S. 37:2150-2192 for the classification of **BUILDING CONSTRUCTION**. Bidder is required to comply with provisions and requirements of LA R.S. 38:2212(A)(1)(c). No bid may be withdrawn for a period of forty-five (45) days after receipt of bids, except under the provisions of LA. R.S. 38:2214.

Electronic Bid documents may be submitted by Contractors to the Louisiana Military Department Contracting Office by submitting their bid to <http://www.centralauctionhouse.com/>. Electronic bids must be submitted so as to be posted prior to **9:00 a.m. CST on Wednesday, January 20, 2016**. Hard copies of the contractor's electronically submitted bid packet must be delivered as described in the Instructions to Bidders included in the Bid Documents for this project. Contractors MUST attend the mandatory Pre-Bid scheduled for **9:00 a.m. CST on Wednesday, January 6, 2016**, at the location listed above in order to submit electronic bids.

The Owner reserves the right to accept or reject any and all Bids for just cause. In accordance with directives and guidance published by Facility Planning and Control Revised Statutes, the provisions and requirements of those stated in the advertisement for bids and those required on the bid form shall not be waived. The Louisiana Military Department Deputy Director for Contracting and Purchasing and the State Contracting Officer do not possess authority to waive any informality incidental thereto. The Owner shall incur no obligation to the Contractor until the Contract between Owner and Contractor is fully executed.





## INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

### **COMPLETION TIME:**

The Bidder shall agree to fully complete the contract within (120) consecutive calendar days, subject to such extensions as may be granted under Paragraph 1B-15, in the General Conditions and the Supplementary Conditions, and acknowledges that this construction time will start on or before the date specified in the written "Notice to Proceed" from the Owner.

### **LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:**

The Bidder shall agree to pay as Liquidated Damages the amount of One Hundred Seventy Five Dollars (\$175.00) for each consecutive calendar day for which the work is not complete, beginning with the first day beyond the contract completion date stated on the "Notice to Proceed" or as amended by change order.

## **ARTICLE 1**

### **GENERAL: DEFINITIONS**

1.1 The following documents/ forms, more commonly referred to as the Louisiana Military Department Front End Documents, found in this Specification Booklet are provided to aid and or assist the Contractor in the preparing of their Bidding Documents:

- a. Specification Cover Sheet
- b. Advertisement for Bid
- c. Instructions to Bidders
- d. Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form
- e. Bid Bond
- f. Sample Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Forms
- g. Sample Contract Between Owner and Contractor and Performance and Payment Bond
- h. Affidavit for Contract
- i. Affidavit for E-verify
- j. Affidavit for Attestation
- k. Contractor Certification and Disclosure Form
- l. Indemnification Agreement
- m. Change Order Request Forms and Sample Change Order
- n. General Conditions issued by the Louisiana Military Department
- o. Insurance Coverage for Louisiana Military Department Projects
- p. Technical Specifications and /or Scope of Work
- q. Any Addenda issued during the Bid period to be acknowledged on the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form

1.2 Unless otherwise defined herein, all definitions set forth in the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction or in other Contract Documents are applicable to the Bidding Documents.

- 1.3 Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued by the Architect prior to the opening of bids which modify or interpret the Bidding Documents or forms by additions, deletions, clarifications, corrections and prior approvals.
- 1.4 A Bid is a complete and properly signed proposal to perform work or a designated portion for a stipulated sum. A bid is submitted in accordance with the bidding documents, is evaluated on price alone and is not subject to qualification.
- 1.5 Base Bid is the amount of money stated in the bid as the sum for which the bidder offers to perform the work described in the bidding documents, prior to the adjustments for alternate bids but including any unit prices.
- 1.6 An Alternate is a specified item of construction that is set apart by a separate sum. An alternate may or may not be incorporated into the contract sum at the discretion of the Owner at the time of contract award. A maximum of (3) three alternates are allowed by State law and, if alternates are to be accepted and added to the base bid total, they must be taken in order of priority.
- 1.7 A Bidder is an entity or person who submits a bid for a prime Contract with the Owner. A bidder is not a contractor on a specific project until a contract is signed between the bidder and the Owner.
- 1.8 A Sub-bidder is one who submits a bid to a Bidder for materials and/or labor for a portion of the work.
- 1.9 Where the word "Architect" is used in any of the documents, it shall refer to the Prime Designer of the project, an Architect, Engineer or Landscape Architect.

## **ARTICLE 2**

### **BIDDER'S REPRESENTATION**

- 2.1 Each Bidder by making his bid represents that:
- 2.1.1 He has read and understands the Bidding and Construction Documents and that his bid is made in accordance therewith.
- 2.1.2 He has visited the site and has familiarized himself with the local conditions under which the work is to be performed.
- 2.1.3 His bid is based solely upon materials, systems and equipment described or listed in the Bidding/ Construction Documents as advertised and/ or as modified by addenda. Labor, overhead and profit, taxes, bonds and insurance costs are added to these costs and constitutes his bid.

2.1.4 His bid is not based on any verbal instructions contrary to the Contract Documents and addenda.

2.1 The Bidder must be fully qualified under any State or local licensing law for Contractors in effect at the time and at the location of the work before submitting his bid. In the State of Louisiana, Revised Statutes 37:2150-2164, et seq. will be considered, if applicable. The Contractor shall be responsible for determining that all of his Sub bidders or prospective Subcontractors are duly licensed in accordance with the law.

### **ARTICLE 3**

#### **BIDDING DOCUMENTS**

3.1 Copies

3.1.1 Bidding and Construction Documents may be obtained from the Architect for a deposit as stated in the Advertisement for Bids. The deposit will be refunded to Contractors who return the Documents to the Architect, provided they are returned in satisfactory condition.

3.1.2 Complete sets of Bidding and Construction Documents are required in order to prepare a bid. Neither the Owner nor the Architect assumes any responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete sets of these Documents.

3.1.3 The Owner or Architect in making copies of the Bidding and Construction Documents available, do so only for the purpose of obtaining bids on the work and not grant copies for any other use or purpose.

3.2 Interpretation or Correction of Bidding and Construction Documents

3.2.1 Bidders shall promptly notify the Architect of any ambiguity, inconsistency or error which they may discover upon examination of the Bidding and Construction Documents or of problems affecting the site and local conditions.

3.2.2 Bidders requiring clarification or interpretation of the Bidding and Construction Documents will make a written request to the Architect. Request must be received no later than 48 hours after the Pre-Bid Meeting in order to answer the Request and submit the Addenda so it can be received 72 hours prior to receipt of bids, excluding holidays and weekends.

3.2.3 Any interpretation, correction or change of the Bidding and Construction Documents will be made by addenda. Interpretations, corrections or changes made to the Documents in any other manner will not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon such interpretations, corrections and changes.

3.2.4 It is the Louisiana Military Department's intent that these bidding documents shall comply with the Public Works Act and any other relevant State law. To the extent that a provision of these bidding documents actually conflict with State law, the provisions of State law shall take precedence over the bidding documents.

### 3.3 Substitutions

3.3.1 The materials, products and equipment described in the Bidding and Construction Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance and quality to be met by any proposed substitution. No substitutions shall be allowed after bidding.

3.3.2 No substitution will be considered unless a written request for approval has been submitted by the bidder and has been received by the Architect at least 48 hours prior to the date for receipt of bids. Each such request shall include the name of the material or equipment for which it is to be substituted and a complete description of the proposed substitute including model numbers, drawings, cuts, performance and test data and any other information necessary for an evaluation. A statement setting forth any changes in other materials, equipment or work that incorporation of the substitute would require shall be included. It shall be the responsibility of the bidder to include in his bid all changes required of the Contract Documents if the proposed product is used. Prior approval is given contingent upon supplier being responsible for any costs which may be necessary to modify the space or facilities needed to accommodate the materials and equipment approved.

3.3.3 If the Architect approves any proposed substitution, such approval will be set forth in an addenda. Bidders shall not rely upon approvals made in any other manner.

### 3.4 Addenda

3.4.1 Addenda will be sent via FAX or delivered to all who are known by the Architect to have received a complete set of Bidding and Construction Documents.

3.4.2 Copies of addenda will be made available for inspection wherever Bidding Documents are on file for that purpose.

3.4.3 Addenda shall not be issued within a period of seventy-two (72) hours prior to the advertised time for the opening of bids, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and any other legal holidays; however, if the necessity arises to issue an addendum modifying plans and specifications within the seventy-two (72) hour period prior to the advertised time for the opening of bids, then the opening of bids shall be extended a minimum of one week, without the requirement of readvertising.

3.4.4 The Owner shall have the right to extend the bid opening date, up to thirty (30) days, without the requirement for re-advertisement. Any such extension shall be made by addenda issued by the Architect.

3.4.5 Each Bidder shall acknowledge every Addendum received from the Architect on the project by annotating each Addenda numerically on the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form being submitted by the Bidder at the bid opening.

## ARTICLE 4

### BIDDING PROCEDURE

#### 4.1 Form and Style of Bids

4.1.1 Bids shall be submitted on the forms provided in this Specification Booklet or by addenda.

4.1.2 **All blanks on the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form shall be filled in by typewriter or manually in ink. (SEE Sample Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Forms).**

4.1.3 Where so indicated by the makeup of the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form, sums shall be expressed in both words and figures; **in case of discrepancy between the two, the written words shall govern.**

4.1.4 Based on the Louisiana Supreme Court decision, the Military Department Contracting Officer cannot waive informalities. Therefore, **NO interlineations, alterations or erasures are authorized on the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form.**

4.1.5 Bidders are cautioned to complete all alternates should such be required in the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form. Failure to submit alternate prices will render the bid incomplete and shall cause its rejection. **Bidders are cautioned to complete all unit prices should such be required in the Bid Form.**

4.1.6 Bidder shall make no additional stipulations on the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form nor qualify his bid in any other manner.

**4.1.7** The bid submitted by a Contractor shall include the legal name of the Bidder and a statement as to whether the Bidder is a sole proprietor, a partnership, a partnership in commendam, a limited liability company, a corporation or any other legal entity. The Bidder's name and contracting license number shall be noted on the envelope and shall be identical to the name and license number used on the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form. The bid shall be signed either by (a) any one of the Bidder's corporate officers or members listed on the most current annual report, limited liability company records or partnership records on file with the Secretary of State, or (b) an agent or other authorized representative of the Bidder, i.e., a person legally authorized to bind the Bidder to a Contract. If the bid is signed by an agent or other authorized representative of the Bidder, the authority of the person signing the bid shall be deemed sufficient and acceptable if (1)

the bid is accompanied by a notarized or authentic Power of Attorney, Corporate Resolution, Certification of Agent, or other similar document indicating the signatory's authority to bind the Bidder, or (2) a notarized affidavit or resolution or any other acknowledged or authentic document indicating the names of all persons authorized to submit bids for public contracts on behalf of the Bidder has been filed in the appropriate records of either the Secretary of State or the Clerk of Court of the parish in which the Louisiana Military Department is located. Said document shall remain in effect and shall be binding upon the Bidder until specifically rescinded and canceled from the records of the Secretary of State's office and/or Clerk of Court's office.

If the successful Bidder is either a partnership or a partnership in commendam, then, prior to signing any contract, the successful Bidder shall be required to submit a copy of its current partnership records on file with the Secretary of State, an executed Disclosure of Ownership and a Certificate of Authority to do business in Louisiana. If the successful Bidder is a limited liability company, then, prior to signing any contract, the successful Bidder shall be required to submit a copy of its current Articles of Organization on file with the Secretary of State, an executed Disclosure of Ownership and a Certificate of Authority to do business in Louisiana. If the successful Bidder is a corporation, then, prior to signing any contract, the successful Bidder shall be required to submit a copy of its current Articles of Incorporation on file with the Secretary of State, an executed Disclosure of Ownership and a Certificate of Authority to do business in Louisiana.

4.1.8 On any bid in excess of fifty thousand dollars (\$50,000.00), the Contractor shall certify that he is licensed under R.S. 37:2150-2164 and show his license number on the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form.

#### 4.2 Bid Security - NOT USED - No Bid Security is Required.

#### 4.3 Submission of Bids

4.3.1 The Bid shall be sealed in an opaque envelope. The bid envelope shall be identified on the outside with the name of the project, and the name, address, and license number of the Bidder. The sealed bid envelope shall contain **only one (1) original bid form** and will be received until the time specified and at the place specified in the Advertisement for Bids. It shall be the specific responsibility of the Bidder to deliver his sealed bid to the appointed place and prior to the announced time for the opening of bids. Late delivery of a bid for any reason, including late delivery by the United States Mail, or express delivery, shall disqualify the bid.

If the bid is sent by mail, the sealed envelope shall be enclosed in a separate mailing envelope with the "Bid Enclosed" on the face thereof. Such bids shall be sent by Registered or Certified Mail, Return Receipt Requested, addressed to:

Louisiana Military Department – Post Headquarters  
CAPT KEVIN KEESE

LA14-A-037  
Camp Villere New Home Construction  
Camp Villere, Louisiana

34845 Grantham College Rd  
Slidell, LA 70460

Bids sent by express delivery shall be delivered to:

Louisiana Military Department – Post Headquarters  
CMSGT JAMES E. DOWNING SR  
34845 Grantham College Rd  
Slidell, LA 70460

4.3.2 Bids shall be deposited at the designated location prior to the time on the date for receipt of bids indicated in the Advertisement for Bids, or any extension thereof made by addendum or addenda. Bids received after the time and date for receipt of bids will be returned unopened.

4.3.3 Bidder shall assume full responsibility for timely delivery at location designated for receipt of bids.

4.3.4 Oral, telephonic or telegraphic bids are invalid and shall not receive consideration. **Electronic bid documents may be submitted by Contractors by means designed by them so as to be received prior to the prescribed bid opening date and time, as specified in the Advertisement for Bids or stated by Addenda. Electronically submitted bids may be submitted by Contractors by submitting their bid along to:**

<https://centralauctionhouse.com/>

**Any Contractor submitting an electronic bid shall deliver their original bid (hard copy) within 24 hours after the prescribed bid opening date and time, as specified in the Advertisement for Bids or stated by Addenda to the Owner at the mailing address stated in 4.3.1 above.**

4.4 Modification or Withdrawal of Bid

4.4.1 A bid may not be modified by the Bidder during the period following the time and bid date designated for the receipt and opening of bids. After bids are opened, contractors may withdraw their bids in accordance with R. S. 38:2214 which states, in part, “Bids containing patently obvious mechanical, clerical or mathematical errors may be withdrawn in writing by the Contractor if clear and convincing sworn, written evidence of such errors is furnished to the public entity within forty-eight hours after the Bid Opening excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal holidays”.

4.4.2 Prior to the time and date designated for receipt of bids, bids submitted early may be modified or withdrawn only by written notice to the party receiving bids at the place and prior to the time designated for receipt of bids.

4.4.3 Withdrawn bids may be resubmitted up to the time designated for the receipt of bids provided that they are resubmitted in full conformance with these Instructions to Bidders.

4.4.4 Bid Security is not required

## **ARTICLE 5**

### **CONSIDERATION OF BIDS**

#### **5.1 Opening of Bids**

5.1.1 The properly identified Bids received on time will be opened publicly and will be read aloud, and a tabulation abstract of the amounts of the base bids and alternates, if any, will be made available to Bidders.

#### **5.2 Rejection of Bids**

5.2.1 The Bidder understands that the Owner shall have the right to accept or reject any or all bids and has no authority to waive informalities.

#### **5.3 Acceptance of Bid**

5.3.1 It is the intent of the Owner, if he accepts any alternates, to accept them in the order in which they are listed on the Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form. Determination of the Low responsive Bidder shall be on the basis of the sum of the base bid, and if accepted, the alternates. However, the Owner shall reserve the right to accept alternates in any order which does not affect determination of the Low responsive Bidder.

## **ARTICLE 6**

### **POST-BID INFORMATION**

#### **6.1 Submission**

6.1.1 At the Pre-Construction Conference, the Contractor shall submit the following information to the Architect.



6.1.1.1 A designation of the work to be performed by the Contractor with his own forces.

6.1.1.2 A breakdown of the Contract cost attributable to each item listed in the Schedule of Values Form. No payments will be made to the Contractor until this is received.

6.1.1.3 The proprietary names and the suppliers of principal items or systems of material and equipment proposed for the work.

6.1.1.4 A list of names and business domiciles of all Subcontractors, manufacturers, suppliers or other persons or organizations (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for the principal portions of the work. It is the preference of the Owner that, to the greatest extent possible or practical, the Contractor utilizes Louisiana Subcontractors, manufacturers, suppliers, and labor. If Louisiana Subcontractors, manufacturers, suppliers and labor will not be used for the project, the Contractor must provide detailed explanation as to why they will not be used.

6.1.2 The Contractor will be required to establish, to the satisfaction of the Architect, the reliability and responsibility of the proposed Subcontractors to furnish and perform the work described in the sections of the Specifications pertaining to such proposed Subcontractor's respective trades. The General Contractor shall be responsible for actions or inactions of Subcontractors and/or material suppliers. The General Contractor is totally responsible for any lost time or extra expense incurred due to a Subcontractor's/or Material Supplier's failure to perform. Failure to perform includes a Subcontractor's financial failure, abandonment of the project, or failure to do work up to standard. Under no circumstances shall the Owner mitigate the General Contractor's losses or reimburse the General Contractor for losses caused by these events.

6.1.3 Subcontractors and other persons and organizations selected by the Bidder must be used on the work for which they were proposed and shall not be changed except with the written approval of the Owner and/ or the Architect.

6.1.4 The lowest responsible bidder shall submit to the Architect and the Owner, prior to award of the contract, a letter from the manufacturer that the manufacturer will issue the final system guarantee based on the specified system and include the name of the applicator acceptable to the manufacturer for installing the specified system. This manufacturer shall be one that has received prior approval or is named in the specifications.

6.1.5 In accordance with LA. R.S. 38:2227, LA. R.S. 38:2212.10 and LA. R.S. 23:1726(B) each bidder on this project must submit the completed Attestations Affidavit (Past Criminal Convictions of Bidders, Verification of Employees and Certification Regarding Unpaid Workers Compensation Insurance) form. The Attestations Affidavit form shall be submitted to the address listed in paragraph 4.3.1. of the Instruction to Bidders. The Attestations Affidavit form shall be submitted within 10 days after the opening of bids.

## **ARTICLE 7**

### **PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND**

7.1 Bond Required: ALL Public Work contracts will be published as Performance and Payment Bond contracts.

7.1.1 The Contractor shall furnish and pay for a Performance and Payment Bond written by a company licensed to do business in Louisiana, which shall be signed by the surety's agent or attorney-in-fact and countersigned by a person who is under Contract with the surety as a licensed agent in this State and who is residing in this State, in an amount equal to 100% of the Contract amount. Surety must be listed currently on the U. S. Department of Treasury Financial Management Service List (Treasury List) as approved for an amount equal to or greater than the contract amount, or must be an insurance company domiciled in Louisiana or owned by Louisiana residents. If surety is qualified other than by listing on the Treasury list, the contract amount may not exceed fifteen percent of policyholders' surplus as shown by surety's most recent financial statements filed with the Louisiana Department of Insurance and may not exceed the amount of \$500,000. However, a Louisiana domiciled insurance company with at least an A- rating in the latest printing of the A. M. Best's Key Rating Guide shall not be subject to the \$500,000 limitation, provided that the contract amount does not exceed ten percent of policyholders' surplus as shown in the latest A. M. Best's Key Rating Guide nor fifteen percent of policyholders' surplus as shown by surety's most recent financial statements filed with the Louisiana Department of Insurance. The Bond shall be signed by the surety's agent or attorney-in-fact and countersigned by a person who is under contract with surety as a licensed agent in this State, and who is residing in this State. The Bond shall be in favor of the Military Department, State of Louisiana.

7.2 Time of Delivery and Form of Bond

7.2.1 The Bidder shall deliver the required Performance and Payment Bond to the Owner simultaneous with the execution of the Contract.

7.2.2 Performance and Payment Bond shall be in the form furnished by the State of Louisiana Military Department, entitled CONTRACT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR AND PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND, a sample of which is included in the Bidding Documents.

7.2.3 The Bidder shall require the Attorney-in-Fact who executes the required Performance and Payment Bond on behalf of the surety to affix thereto a certified and current copy of this power of Attorney.

## **ARTICLE 8**

## **FORM OF AGREEMENT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR**

### 8.1 Form to be Used

8.1.1 Form of the Contract to be used shall be furnished by the State of Louisiana Military Department.

### 8.2 Award

8.2.1 In accordance with Louisiana Law, when the Contract is awarded, the successful Bidder shall, at the time of the signing of the Contract, execute the Non-Collusion Affidavit, which is included as a sample, in the Bidding Documents and will accompany the Performance and Payment Bond contract.

8.2.2 Before award of the Contract, the successful Bidder shall furnish to the Owner a certified copy of the minutes of the corporation or partnership meeting which authorized the party executing the bid to sign on behalf of the Contractor.

8.2.3 When this project is financed either partially or entirely with State Bonds, the award of this Contract is contingent upon the sale of bonds by the State Bond Commission. The State shall incur no obligation to the Contractor until the Contract Between Owner and Contractor is duly executed.

## **ARTICLE 9**

### **COMPLETION TIME AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES**

9.1 The completion of the Contract must be within the time specified in the contract. The contract is subject to extensions and may be granted under the conditions found in Paragraph 1B-15, Suspension of Work, Delays and Extensions of Time in the General Conditions, or the Contractor will be subject to pay the liquidated damages in the amount as stated in the Contract.

## **ARTICLE 10**

### **PRE-BID CONFERENCE**

10.1 A Pre-Bid Conference shall be held at the project site at least 7 days before the date for receipt of bids on all projects with an estimated construction cost exceeding \$25,000. The Pre-Bid Conference will be a Mandatory Pre-Bid Conference if the estimated construction cost exceeds \$50,000. The Architect shall coordinate the setting of the date, time and place for the Pre-Bid Conference/ Mandatory Pre-Bid Conference, on all projects with an estimated construction cost between \$25,000 and \$150,000, with prospective Contractors. On projects exceeding \$150,000 estimated construction costs,

LA14-A-037  
Camp Villere New Home Construction  
Camp Villere, Louisiana

these projects are advertised and state in the advertisement the date, time and place of the Mandatory Pre-Bid Conference with prospective bidders, who have received sets of the Bidding and Construction Documents attending this Conference. The purpose of the Pre-Bid Conference/ Mandatory Pre-Bid Conference is to familiarize Bidders with the bid submission procedure and Construction Documents, requirements of the Project to include a site visit and familiarization of the Contract Documents.

10.2 Any revision of the Bidding Documents made as a result of the Pre-Bid Conference shall not be valid unless included in an addendum issued in accordance with Paragraph 3.4 of the Instruction to Bidders.

-The remainder of this page intentionally left blank-

LOUISIANA UNIFORM PUBLIC WORK BID FORM

TO: MILITARY DEPARTMENT, STATE OF LOUISIANA  
ATTN: State Contracting Officer  
718 E Street, Camp Beauregard  
Pineville, Louisiana 71360-0613

BID FOR: CAMP VILLERE NEW HOME CONSTRUCTION  
CAMP VILLERE, LOUISIANA  
LA14-A-037

(Owner to provide name of project and other identifying information)

The undersigned bidder hereby declares and represents that she/ he; a) has carefully examined and understands the Bidding Documents, b) has not received, relied on, or based his bid on any verbal instructions contrary to the Bidding Documents or any addenda, c) has personally inspected and is familiar with the project site, and hereby proposes to provide all labor, materials, tools, appliances and facilities as required to perform in a workmanlike manner, all work and services for the construction and completion of the referenced project, all in strict accordance with the Bidding Documents prepared by Dammon Engineering, Inc.

and dated : October 08, 2014  
(Owner to provide name of entity preparing bidding documents.)

Bidders must acknowledge all addenda. The Bidder acknowledges receipt of the following **ADDENDA:** (Enter the number the Designer has assigned to each of the addenda that the Bidder is acknowledging) \_\_\_\_\_

**TOTAL BASE BID:** For all work required by the Bidding Documents (including any and all unit prices designated "Base Bid" \* but not alternates) the sum of:

\_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_)

**ALTERNATES:** For any and all work required by the Bidding Documents for Alternates including any and all unit prices designated as alternates in the unit price description.

**Alternate No. 1** Not Applicable  
(Owner to provide description of alternate and state whether add or deduct) for the lump sum of:

\_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_)

**Alternate No. 2** Not Applicable  
(Owner to provide description of alternate and state whether add or deduct) for the lump sum of:

\_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_)

**Alternate No. 3** Not Applicable  
(Owner to provide description of alternate and state whether add or deduct) for the lump sum of:

\_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_)

**NAME OF BIDDER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**ADDRESS OF BIDDER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**LOUISIANA CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE NUMBER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**NAME OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**TITLE OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**SIGNATURE OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER \*\*:** \_\_\_\_\_

**DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_

• The Unit Price Form shall be used if the contract includes unit prices. Otherwise it is not required and need not be included with the form. The number of unit prices that may be included is not limited and additional sheets may be included if needed.

\*\* If someone other than a corporate officer signs for the Bidder/ Contractor, a copy of a Corporate Resolution or other signature authorization shall be required for submission of bid. Failure to include a copy of the appropriate signature authorization, if required, may result in the rejection of the bid unless the bidder has complied with La. R.S. 38:2212(A)(1)(c) or R.S. 38:2212(O).

**BID SECURITY** in the form of a bid bond, certified check or cashier's check as prescribed by LA R.S. 38:2218.A is attached to and made a part of this bid.



LOUISIANA UNIFORM PUBLIC WORK BID FORM

TO: MILITARY DEPARTMENT, STATE OF LOUISIANA  
ATTN: State Contracting Officer  
718 E Street, Camp Beauregard  
Pineville, Louisiana 71360-0613

BID FOR: Upgrade Building 1000 to Current HVAC  
and Electrical Standards, Camp Beauregard,  
Pineville, LA - ARRA  
PROJECT No: 22201007011

(Owner to provide name of project and other identifying information)

The undersigned bidder hereby declares and represents that she/ he; a) has carefully examined and understands the Bidding Documents, b) has not received, relied on, or based his bid on any verbal instructions contrary to the Bidding Documents or any addenda, c) has personally inspected and is familiar with the project site, and hereby proposes to provide all labor, materials, tools, appliances and facilities as required to perform in a workmanlike manner, all work and services for the construction and completion of the referenced project, all in strict accordance with the Bidding Documents prepared by John Q. Public Architects and Engineers, APAC and dated: June 1, 2010.  
(Owner to provide name of entity preparing bidding documents.)

Bidders must acknowledge all addenda. The Bidder acknowledges receipt of the following **ADDENDA:** (Enter the number the Designer has assigned to each of the addenda that the Bidder is acknowledging) 1, 2

**TOTAL BASE BID:** For all work required by the Bidding Documents (including any and all unit prices designated "Base Bid" \* but not alternates) the sum of:

FOUR HUNDRED SIXTY THOUSAND <sup>\$</sup> 00/100 Dollars (\$ 460,000.00 )

**ALTERNATES:** For any and all work required by the Bidding Documents for Alternates including any and all unit prices designated as alternates in the unit price description.

**Alternate No. 1** ADD – One (1) Additional 3 Ton HVAC System to Building 1000 Storage Room

(Owner to provide description of alternate and state whether add or deduct) for the lump sum of:

THREE THOUSAND <sup>\$</sup> 00/100 Dollars (\$ 3,000.00 )

**Alternate No. 2** DEDUCT – Cost to Remove Three (3) Existing Windows

(Owner to provide description of alternate and state whether add or deduct) for the lump sum of:

NINE HUNDRED FIFTY <sup>\$</sup> 75/100 Dollars (\$ 950.75 )

**Alternate No. 3** N/A

(Owner to provide description of alternate and state whether add or deduct) for the lump sum of:

N/A Dollars (\$ N/A )

NAME OF BIDDER: SMITH CONSTRUCTION, LLC

ADDRESS OF BIDDER: 123 4TH AVENUE

ANY TOWN, LA 12345

LOUISIANA CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE NUMBER: 98765

NAME OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER: THOMAS SMITH

TITLE OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER: OWNER

SIGNATURE OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER \*\*: Thomas Smith

DATE: JUNE 15, 2010

• The Unit Price Form shall be used if the contract includes unit prices. Otherwise it is not required and need not be included with the form. The number of unit prices that may be included is not limited and additional sheets may be included if needed.

\*\* If someone other than a corporate officer signs for the Bidder/ Contractor, a copy of a Corporate Resolution or other signature authorization shall be required for submission of bid. Failure to include a copy of the appropriate signature authorization, if required, may result in the rejection of the bid unless the bidder has complied with La. R.S. 38:2212(A)(1)(c) or R.S. 38:2212(O).

**BID SECURITY** in the form of a bid bond, certified check or cashier's check as prescribed by LA R.S. 38:2218.A is attached to and made a part of this bid.

SAMPLE 2 (Bidder – LLC Example)





LOUISIANA UNIFORM PUBLIC WORK BID FORM

TO: MILITARY DEPARTMENT, STATE OF LOUISIANA  
ATTN: State Contracting Officer  
718 E Street, Camp Beauregard  
Pineville, Louisiana 71360-0613

BID FOR: Upgrade Building 1000 to Current HVAC  
and Electrical Standards, Camp Beauregard,  
Pineville, LA - ARRA  
PROJECT No: 22201007011

(Owner to provide name of project and other identifying information)

The undersigned bidder hereby declares and represents that she/ he; a) has carefully examined and understands the Bidding Documents, b) has not received, relied on, or based his bid on any verbal instructions contrary to the Bidding Documents or any addenda, c) has personally inspected and is familiar with the project site, and hereby proposes to provide all labor, materials, tools, appliances and facilities as required to perform in a workmanlike manner, all work and services for the construction and completion of the referenced project, all in strict accordance with the Bidding Documents prepared by John Q. Public Architects and Engineers, APAC and dated: June 1, 2010.  
(Owner to provide name of entity preparing bidding documents.)

Bidders must acknowledge all addenda. The Bidder acknowledges receipt of the following ADDENDA: (Enter the number the Designer has assigned to each of the addenda that the Bidder is acknowledging) 1, 2

TOTAL BASE BID: For all work required by the Bidding Documents (including any and all unit prices designated "Base Bid" \* but not alternates) the sum of:

FIVE HUNDRED TWELVE THOUSAND, <sup>\$</sup>00/100 Dollars (\$ 512,000.00 )

ALTERNATES: For any and all work required by the Bidding Documents for Alternates including any and all unit prices designated as alternates in the unit price description.

Alternate No. 1 ADD - One (1) Additional 3-Ton HVAC System to Building 1000 Storage Room

(Owner to provide description of alternate and state whether add or deduct) for the lump sum of:

TWO THOUSAND FIVE HUNDRED FIFTY, <sup>\$</sup>00/100 Dollars (\$ 2,550.00 )

Alternate No. 2 DEDUCT - Cost to Remove Three (3) Existing Windows

(Owner to provide description of alternate and state whether add or deduct) for the lump sum of:

ONE THOUSAND TEN DOLLARS <sup>\$</sup>82/100 Dollars (\$ 1,010.82 )

Alternate No. 3 N/A

(Owner to provide description of alternate and state whether add or deduct) for the lump sum of:

N/A Dollars (\$ N/A )

NAME OF BIDDER: THOMPSON BUILDERS, INC.

ADDRESS OF BIDDER: 678 B DRIVE  
ANYWHERE, LA 02999

LOUISIANA CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE NUMBER: 45678

NAME OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER: BILL W. THOMPSON

TITLE OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER: PRESIDENT

SIGNATURE OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER \*\*: Bill Thompson  
DATE: JUNE 15, 2010

• The Unit Price Form shall be used if the contract includes unit prices. Otherwise it is not required and need not be included with the form. The number of unit prices that may be included is not limited and additional sheets may be included if needed.

\*\* If someone other than a corporate officer signs for the Bidder/ Contractor, a copy of a Corporate Resolution or other signature authorization shall be required for submission of bid. Failure to include a copy of the appropriate signature authorization, if required, may result in the rejection of the bid unless the bidder has complied with La. R.S. 38:2212(A)(1)(c) or R.S. 38:2212(O).

BID SECURITY in the form of a bid bond, certified check or cashier's check as prescribed by LA R.S. 38:2218.A is attached to and made a part of this bid.

SAMPLE 3 (Bidder - INC. Example)



STATE OF \_\_\_\_\_

PARISH OF \_\_\_\_\_

**ATTESTATIONS AFFIDAVIT**

**Before me**, the undersigned notary public, duly commissioned and qualified in and for the parish and state aforesaid, personally came and appeared Affiant, who after being duly sworn, attested as follows:

**LA. R.S. 38:2227 PAST CRIMINAL CONVICTIONS OF BIDDERS**

A. No sole proprietor or individual partner, incorporator, director, manager, officer, organizer, or member who has a minimum of a ten percent (10%) ownership in the bidding entity named below has been convicted of, or has entered a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any of the following state crimes or equivalent federal crimes:

- (a) Public bribery (R.S. 14:118)
- (b) Corrupt influencing (R.S. 14:120)
- (c) Extortion (R.S. 14:66)
- (d) Money laundering (R.S. 14:23)

B. Within the past five years from the project bid date, no sole proprietor or individual partner, incorporator, director, manager, officer, organizer, or member who has a minimum of a ten percent (10%) ownership in the bidding entity named below has been convicted of, or has entered a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any of the following state crimes or equivalent federal crimes, during the solicitation or execution of a contract or bid awarded pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 10 of Title 38 of the Louisiana Revised Statutes:

- (a) Theft (R.S. 14:67)
- (b) Identity Theft (R.S. 14:67.16)
- (c) Theft of a business record (R.S.14:67.20)
- (d) False accounting (R.S. 14:70)
- (e) Issuing worthless checks (R.S. 14:71)
- (f) Bank fraud (R.S. 14:71.1)
- (g) Forgery (R.S. 14:72)
- (h) Contractors; misapplication of payments (R.S. 14:202)
- (i) Malfeasance in office (R.S. 14:134)

**LA. R.S. 38:2212.10 Verification of Employees**

- A. At the time of bidding, Appearer is registered and participates in a status verification system to verify that all new hires in the state of Louisiana are legal citizens of the United States or are legal aliens.
- B. If awarded the contract, Appearer shall continue, during the term of the contract, to utilize a status verification system to verify the legal status of all new employees in the state of Louisiana.
- C. If awarded the contract, Appearer shall require all subcontractors to submit to it a sworn affidavit verifying compliance with Paragraphs (A) and (B) of this Subsection.

**LA. R.S. 23:1726(B) Certification Regarding Unpaid Workers Compensation Insurance**

- A. R.S. 23:1726 prohibits any entity against whom an assessment under Part X of Chapter 11 of Title 23 of the Louisiana Revised Statutes of 1950 (Alternative Collection Procedures & Assessments) is in effect, and whose right to appeal that assessment is exhausted, from submitting a bid or proposal for or obtaining any contract pursuant to Chapter 10 of Title 38 of the Louisiana Revised Statutes of 1950 and Chapters 16 and 17 of Title 39 of the Louisiana Revised Statutes of 1950.
- B. By signing this bid /proposal, Affiant certifies that no such assessment is in effect against the bidding / proposing entity.

\_\_\_\_\_  
**NAME OF BIDDER**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**NAME OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**DATE**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**TITLE OF AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY OF BIDDER**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**SIGNATURE OF AUTHORIZED  
SIGNATORY OF BIDDER/AFFIANT**

**Sworn to and subscribed** before me by Affiant on the \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

---

# CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com





SENATE BILL NO. 242

BY SENATOR APPEL

Prefiled pursuant to Article III, Section 2(A)(4)(b)(i) of the Constitution of Louisiana.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26

AN ACT

To amend and reenact R.S. 14:141 and R.S. 39:1767 and R.S. 48:251.8, to enact R.S. 38:2192 and 2222 and R.S. 39:1557.1, and to repeal R.S. 38:2196.1, R.S. 39:200(N) and 1493.1, and Part X of Chapter 17 of Subtitle III of Title 39 of the Louisiana Revised Statutes of 1950, consisting of R.S. 39:1758, relative to public contracts; to provide for prohibited splitting of profits, fees, and commissions; to provide with respect to recordation of certain change orders, amendments, or other revisions to public contracts; and to provide for related matters.

Be it enacted by the Legislature of Louisiana:

Section 1. R.S. 14:141 is hereby amended and reenacted to read as follows:

§141. Prohibited splitting of profits, fees or commissions; exceptions

A. For the purposes of this ~~section~~ **Section**, "splitting of profits, fees or commissions" means the giving, offering to give, receiving or offering to receive, directly or indirectly, anything of apparent present or prospective value by or to a public officer or public employee or to any fund or fiduciary existing for the benefit of or use by such public officer or employee, when such value is derived from any agreement or contract to which the state or any **political** subdivision thereof is a party.

B. There shall be no splitting of profits, fees or commissions, past or present, derived from the sale of any commodity, goods, services, insurance, or anything of value to the state or any **political** subdivision thereof from which a public **officer** ~~official~~ or **public** employee, representing the state **or a political subdivision, as the case may be**, in his official capacity ~~in the contract negotiations~~, receives or offers to receive a portion of the profits, fees and/or commissions, ~~unless the amount thereof and the conditions therefor are included in detail in the contract of sale or the insurance contract and said contract is filed by the public official or employee~~

1            ~~hereinabove described with the secretary of state at least ten days prior to execution~~  
 2            ~~of said contract. The ten-day filing period shall be waived in the event of an~~  
 3            ~~emergency in which such filing is not reasonable. Upon filing thereof, the secretary~~  
 4            ~~of state shall immediately release to the news media the details of such contract and,~~  
 5            ~~upon written request, furnish a copy of such contract to the news media. **The**~~  
 6            ~~**contract shall be a public record.**~~

7            C. Whoever commits the crime of ~~failure to report the splitting of **receiving**~~  
 8            ~~**or offering to receive a portion of the** profits, fees or commissions, and to contain~~  
 9            ~~such fee arrangement in the contract of sale or in the insurance contract as provided~~  
 10           ~~by this act **Section** shall upon conviction be fined not more than ~~one~~ **ten** thousand~~  
 11           ~~dollars or shall be imprisoned, with or without hard labor, for not more than ~~two~~ **ten**~~  
 12           ~~years, or both.~~

13           Section 2. **R.S. 38:2192 and 2222 are hereby enacted to read as follows:**

14           **§2192. Certain contract amendments and revisions; recordation** 

15           **Each amendment or other revision to any service or insurance contract**  
 16           **which adds an amount of ten percent or more of the original contract amount**  
 17           **and which additional amount is at least ten thousand dollars or all amendments**  
 18           **and other revisions to any service or insurance contract aggregating to an**  
 19           **amount of twenty percent or more of the original contract amount and which**  
 20           **additional amount is at least ten thousand dollars shall be recorded by the**  
 21           **public entity which entered into the contract in the office of the recorder of**  
 22           **mortgages in the parish where the public entity is domiciled not later than**  
 23           **thirty days after the date of the amendment or other revision which requires**  
 24           **that the recordation take place. In addition, the original contract shall be**  
 25           **recorded together with the amendments or other revisions if not previously**  
 26           **recorded.**

27           \* \* \*

28           **§2222. Change orders; recordation** 

29           **Each change order to a public works contract or to a contract for**  
 30           **materials and supplies which adds an amount of ten percent or more of the**



1 original contract amount and which additional amount is at least ten thousand  
 2 dollars or all change orders to a contract aggregating to an amount of twenty  
 3 percent or more of the original contract amount and which additional amount  
 4 is at least ten thousand dollars shall be recorded by the public entity which  
 5 entered into the contract in the office of the recorder of mortgages in the parish  
 6 where the work is to be done or, if not a public work, where the entity is  
 7 domiciled not later than thirty days after the date of the change order which  
 8 requires that the recordation take place. In addition, the original contract shall  
 9 be recorded together with the change orders if not previously recorded. The  
 10 provisions of this Section shall not apply to the office of facility planning and  
 11 control, and the office of state purchasing.

12 Section 3. R.S. 39:1767 is hereby amended and reenacted and R.S. 39:1557.1 is  
 13 hereby enacted to read as follows:

14 **§1557.1. Change orders; recordation**

15 **Each change order to a contract which adds an amount of ten percent or**  
 16 **more of the original contract amount and which additional amount is at least**  
 17 **ten thousand dollars or all change orders to a contract aggregating to an**  
 18 **amount of twenty percent or more of the original contract amount and which**  
 19 **additional amount is at least ten thousand dollars shall be recorded by the**  
 20 **governmental body which entered into the contract in the office of the recorder**  
 21 **of mortgages in the parish where the work is to be done or where the entity is**  
 22 **domiciled not later than thirty days after the date of the change order which**  
 23 **requires that the recordation take place. In addition, the original contract shall**  
 24 **be recorded together with the amendments or other revisions if not previously**  
 25 **recorded. The provisions of this Section shall not apply to the office of facility**  
 26 **planning and control, and the office of state purchasing.**

27 \* \* \*

28 ~~§1767. Appropriation dependency; requirement for affidavit of notice of fee~~  
 29 ~~disposition~~

30 ~~A:~~ All lease-purchase contracts entered into pursuant to this Chapter shall

1 contain an annual appropriation dependency requirement to the effect that renewal  
 2 and continuation of such contract is contingent upon the appropriation of funds to  
 3 fulfill the requirements of the contract and if the legislature, after a diligent and good  
 4 faith effort, fails to appropriate sufficient monies to provide for the continuation of  
 5 a contract, or if such appropriation can not be effected, the contract shall terminate  
 6 in accordance with the terms of the lease on the last day of the last fiscal year for  
 7 which funds were appropriated, provided the equipment is returned to the nonprofit  
 8 lessor or his agent, as provided in the equipment-lease-purchase contract and such  
 9 contract shall not be a long-term debt of the state or the applicable purchasing  
 10 agency. In addition, in such equipment-lease-purchase contracts, the nonprofit lessor  
 11 shall covenant and agree to indemnify and hold the lessee harmless against any loss,  
 12 damage, liability, cost, penalty, or expense, including attorney fees, which is not  
 13 otherwise agreed to by the lessee in the equipment-lease-purchase contract and  
 14 which is incurred and arises upon a failure of the legislature to appropriate funds in  
 15 the manner described above for a continuation of the contract or the exercise of the  
 16 option to purchase the selected equipment.

17 ~~B. Notwithstanding any limitation of the applicability of this Part or Chapter~~  
 18 ~~in any other provision of law, contracts shall be subject to the provisions of R.S.~~  
 19 ~~38:2196.1 regarding the requirement for an affidavit of notice of fee disposition, if~~  
 20 ~~applicable.~~

21 Section 4. R.S. 48:251.8 is hereby amended and reenacted to read as follows:

22 §251.8. Public contracts; certain provisions invalid; ~~requirement for affidavit of~~  
 23 ~~notice of fee disposition~~

24 ~~A.~~ The legislature hereby declares null and void and unenforceable as against  
 25 public policy any provision in a department contract which requires either of the  
 26 following:

27 (1) That a suit or arbitration proceeding must be brought in a forum or  
 28 jurisdiction outside of this state, instead of being pursued in accordance with the laws  
 29 of this state governing such actions.

30 (2) That the agreement must be interpreted according to the laws of another

1 jurisdiction.

2 ~~B. Notwithstanding any limitation of the applicability of this Part or Chapter~~  
3 ~~in any other provision of law, contracts shall be subject to the provisions of R.S.~~  
4 ~~38:2196.1 regarding the requirement for an affidavit of notice of fee disposition, if~~  
5 ~~applicable.~~

6 Section 5. R.S. 38:2196.1, R.S. 39:200(N) and 1493.1, and Part X of Chapter 17 of  
7 Subtitle III of Title 39 of the Louisiana Revised Statutes of 1950, consisting of R.S. 39:1758,  
8 are hereby repealed in their entirety.

\_\_\_\_\_  
PRESIDENT OF THE SENATE

\_\_\_\_\_  
SPEAKER OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

\_\_\_\_\_  
GOVERNOR OF THE STATE OF LOUISIANA

APPROVED: \_\_\_\_\_



BY REPRESENTATIVES EDWARDS, ARMES, BALDONE, HENRY BURNS, BURRELL, CARMODY, CHANDLER, DIXON, DOERGE, DOWNS, ELLINGTON, GISCLAIR, GUILLORY, HARDY, HENRY, HILL, HINES, HOFFMANN, HOWARD, JOHNSON, SAM JONES, KATZ, LANDRY, LEBAS, LIGI, LITTLE, LORUSSO, MCVEA, MONToucET, POPE, RICHARD, RICHARDSON, SMILEY, GARY SMITH, JANE SMITH, TALBOT, TEMPLET, WHITE, WILLIAMS, AND WILLMOTT AND SENATOR NEVERS

Prefiled pursuant to Article III, Section 2(A)(4)(b)(i) of the Constitution of Louisiana.

1 AN ACT

2 To enact R.S. 38:2212.10, relative to public contracts; to provide for the verification of  
3 employees engaged in public contract work; to provide for penalties; and to provide  
4 for related matters.

5 Be it enacted by the Legislature of Louisiana:

6 Section 1. R.S. 38:2212.10 is hereby enacted to read as follows:

7 §2212.10. Verification of employees involved in public contract work

8 A.(1) The legislature finds that when illegal immigrants are living in this  
9 state and are encouraged to reside here through the benefit of employment without  
10 verification of immigration status, the result is that the enforcement of federal  
11 immigration law is impeded and obstructed, the security of the nation's borders is  
12 undermined, and the privileges and immunities of the citizens of Louisiana are  
13 impermissibly restricted.

14 (2) The legislature further finds that it is a compelling public interest of this  
15 state to discourage illegal immigration by requiring employers who do business with  
16 the state of Louisiana to cooperate fully with federal immigration authorities in the  
17 enforcement of federal immigration law.

18 B. For the purposes of this Section, the following terms shall mean:

19 (1) "Legal alien" is a person who is or was lawfully present or permanently  
20 residing legally in the United States and allowed to work at the time of employment  
21 and remains so throughout the duration of that employment.

1           (2) "Status verification system" means the electronic verification of work  
 2           authorization program of the Illegal Immigration Reform and Immigrant  
 3           Responsibility Act of 1996, 8 U.S.C. 1324(a), and operated by the United States  
 4           Department of Homeland Security, known as the "E-Verify" program.

5           C. A private employer shall not bid on or otherwise contract with a public  
 6           entity for the physical performance of services within the state of Louisiana unless  
 7           the private employer verifies in a sworn affidavit attesting to both of the following:

8           (1) The private employer is registered and participates in a status verification  
 9           system to verify that all employees in the state of Louisiana are legal citizens of the  
 10           United States or are legal aliens.

11           (2) The private employer shall continue, during the term of the contract, to  
 12           utilize a status verification system to verify the legal status of all new employees in  
 13           the state of Louisiana.

14           (3) The private employer shall require all subcontractors to submit to the  
 15           employer a sworn affidavit verifying compliance with Paragraphs (1) and (2) of this  
 16           Subsection.

17           D.(1) Any private employer violating the provisions of this Section may be  
 18           subject to cancellation of any public contract, resulting in ineligibility for any public  
 19           contract for a period of not more than three years from the date the violation is  
 20           discovered.

21           (2) Any private employer shall be liable for any additional costs incurred by  
 22           a public entity, occasioned by the cancellation of a contract or loss of any license or  
 23           permit to do business in the state, as provided in this Subsection.

24           (3) Any private employer penalized in accordance with this Section shall  
 25           have the right to appeal to the appropriate agency, department, or other public entity  
 26           sanctioning the employer or to a court of competent jurisdiction.

27           (4) Any person, contractor, or employer who complies with the provisions  
 28           of this Section shall not be civilly or criminally liable under state law for either  
 29           hiring or retaining in its employ an unauthorized alien, as defined by 8 U.S.C.  
 30           1324a(h)(3), if the information obtained in accordance with the status verification

1            system indicated that the employee's federal legal status allowed the employer to hire  
2            that employee.

3            (5) Any person, contractor, or employer who complies with the provisions  
4            of this Section shall not be civilly or criminally liable under state law for a refusal  
5            to either hire or retain an individual in its employ if the information obtained in  
6            accordance with the status verification system indicated that the individual's federal  
7            legal status was that of an unauthorized alien, as defined in 8 U.S.C. 1324a(h)(3).

8            (6) No person, contractor, or employer shall be penalized under the  
9            provisions of this Section for the actions of a subcontractor unless such person,  
10           contractor, or employer had actual knowledge of such subcontractor's failure to  
11           comply with the provision of this Section.

12           E. The provisions of this Section shall apply only to contracts entered into  
13           or bids offered on or after January 1, 2012.

14           F. In the event the status verification system expires and extensions are not  
15           approved by the federal government, the provisions of this Section shall no longer  
16           apply.

\_\_\_\_\_  
SPEAKER OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

\_\_\_\_\_  
PRESIDENT OF THE SENATE

\_\_\_\_\_  
GOVERNOR OF THE STATE OF LOUISIANA

APPROVED: \_\_\_\_\_





BY REPRESENTATIVE TALBOT AND SENATOR GUILLORY

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24

AN ACT

To amend and reenact R.S. 23:995, relative to the verification of citizenship and authorization for employment; to provide with respect to civil penalties for violations; to require the suspension of permits or licenses for violations; to provide for defenses; and to provide for related matters.

Be it enacted by the Legislature of Louisiana:

Section 1. R.S. 23:995 is hereby amended and reenacted to read as follows:

§995. Civil penalties

A. No person, either for himself or on behalf of another, shall employ, hire, recruit, or refer, for private or public employment within the state, an alien who is not entitled to lawfully reside or work in the United States.

B. No person shall be subject to civil penalties pursuant to the provisions of this Part upon a showing of either of the following:

(1) The citizenship or work authorization status of every employee has been verified by the United States Citizenship and Immigration Services E-Verify system, hereinafter referred to as E-Verify.

(2) Each employee has provided a picture identification and one of the following documents of which the employer has retained a copy for his records:

- (a) United States birth certificate or certified birth card.
- (b) Naturalization certificate.
- (c) Certificate of citizenship.
- (d) Alien registration receipt card.
- (e) United States immigration form I-94 (with employment authorized stamp).

1           C. Any employer who has utilized the E-Verify system to determine the  
2           employment eligibility of an employee is presumed to have been in good faith and  
3           is not subject to any penalty as a result of the reliance on the accuracy of the E-  
4           Verify system.

5           D. The executive director of the Louisiana Workforce Commission shall  
6           enforce the provisions of this Section. The executive director may assess civil  
7           penalties against any person violating the provisions of this Section, or when  
8           appropriate, inform the proper governing or licensing authority to suspend a license  
9           or permit to do business, as follows:

10           (1) For a first violation the penalty shall be not more than ~~two hundred fifty~~  
11           five hundred dollars for each alien employed, hired, recruited, or referred in violation  
12           of this Section.

13           (2) For a second violation the penalty shall be not more than ~~five hundred~~  
14           one thousand dollars for each alien employed, hired, recruited, or referred in  
15           violation of this Section. However, the provisions of this Section shall not apply to  
16           any health care facility or entity licensed by the Department of Health and Hospitals,  
17           the department shall follow the applicable licensing statutes and licensing rules for  
18           suspension of a license.

19           (3) For a third or subsequent violation ~~the penalty~~, the appropriate local  
20           governing authority or licensing agency shall immediately suspend the violator's  
21           permit or license to do business in the state for not less than thirty days nor more  
22           than six months and a fine shall be assessed that shall be not more than one thousand  
23           two thousand five hundred dollars for each alien employed, hired, recruited, or  
24           referred in violation of this Section. However, the provisions of this Section shall  
25           not apply to any health care facility or entity licensed by the Department of Health  
26           and Hospitals, the department shall follow the applicable licensing statutes and  
27           licensing rules for suspension of a license.

28           ~~E.~~ E. Civil penalties may be imposed only by a ruling of the executive  
29           director pursuant to an adjudicatory hearing held in accordance with the  
30           Administrative Procedure Act, R.S. 49:950, et seq.

1                   ~~D. F.~~ The executive director may institute civil proceedings in the Nineteenth  
 2                   Judicial District Court to enforce its rulings. In the event judgment is rendered in  
 3                   said court affirming the civil penalties assessed, the court shall also award to the  
 4                   Louisiana Workforce Commission reasonable attorney fees, and judicial interest on  
 5                   said civil penalties from the date of its assessment by the Louisiana Workforce  
 6                   Commission until paid and all costs.

7                   E. G. The executive director may institute civil proceedings in the  
 8                   Nineteenth Judicial District Court seeking injunctive relief to restrain and prevent  
 9                   violations of the provisions of this Part or of the rules and regulations adopted under  
 10                  the provisions of this Part. If the court grants the injunctive relief sought by the  
 11                  Louisiana Workforce Commission, it shall also award reasonable attorney fees and  
 12                  costs to the Louisiana Workforce Commission.

---

SPEAKER OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

---

PRESIDENT OF THE SENATE

---

GOVERNOR OF THE STATE OF LOUISIANA

APPROVED: \_\_\_\_\_



*Sample*

CONTRACT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR  
AND PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND

This agreement entered into this \_\_\_\_\_<sup>nd</sup> day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2015 by \_\_\_\_\_ hereinafter called the "Contractor", whose business address is \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and the Louisiana Military Department, herein represented by the contracting office executing this contract hereinafter called the "Owner".

Witnesseth that the Contractor and the Owner, in consideration of premises and the mutual covenants; consideration and agreement herein contained, agree as follows, that:

1. The Advertisement or solicitation for Bids,
2. The Louisiana Uniform Public Work Bid Form dated \_\_\_\_\_, 2015,
3. The Instructions to Bidders and General Conditions,
4. Bonds,
5. The Specifications and Scope of Work dated \_\_\_\_\_, including Plans, Drawings and Attachments,
6. The enumerated plans prepared by **Dammon Engineering, Inc., 554 Old Spanish Trail, Slidell, LA 70458. Phone (985) 649-5832,**
7. The following enumerated addenda: **Addendum No \_\_\_\_\_, dated \_\_\_\_\_, 2015** are all Contract Documents hereby made a part of this Contract to the same extent as if incorporated herein in full.

The Contractor agrees to furnish all labor and materials, tools, equipment, and other facilities necessary to perform all work in a thorough and workmanlike manner required to complete the:

**Camp Villere New Home Construction**

for the Department of Military Affairs in \_\_\_\_\_ Parish, Louisiana in accordance with this contract and their proposal dated \_\_\_\_\_, 2015, all in strict accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents to include the above witnessed documents which are incorporated herein by reference with the same force and effect as though said documents were herein set out in full. It is recognized by the parties herein that said Contract Documents impose duties and obligations upon the parties herein, and said parties thereby agree that they shall be bound by said duties and obligations.

Time for Completion: The work shall be commenced on a date to be specified in a written order of the Owner and shall be completed within \_\_\_\_\_ consecutive calendar days from and after the said date. Contract shall begin no earlier than \_\_\_\_\_, 2015 and end on \_\_\_\_\_, 2015.

Liquidated Damages: Contractor shall be assessed Liquidated Damages in the amount of \_\_\_\_\_ per day for each

*Sample*

CONTRACT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR  
AND PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND

consecutive calendar day which work is not complete beginning with the first day beyond the completion time.

Compensation to be paid to the Contractor: The Owner will pay and the Contractor will accept in full consideration for the performance of the Contract the sum of:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(\$00.00) which sum represents the \_\_\_\_\_ (Base Bid or Base Bid plus alternates).

Performance and Payment Bond: To these presents personally came and intervned \_\_\_\_\_, herein acting for \_\_\_\_\_, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_, and duly authorized to transact business in the State of Louisiana, as Surety, who declared that having taken cognizance of this Contract and of the Contract Documents mentioned herein, he hereby in his capacity as its Attorney in Fact obligates his said company, as Surety for the said Contractor, unto the said Owner, up to the sum of:

\_\_\_\_\_  
**(\$00.00). By issuance of this bond, the Surety acknowledges they are in compliance with R.S. 38:2219.**

The condition of this Performance and Payment Bond shall be that should the Contractor herein not perform the Contract in accordance with the terms and conditions hereof, or should said Contractor not fully indemnify and save harmless the Owner from all costs and damages which he may suffer by said Contractor's non-performance or should said Contractor not pay all persons who have and fulfill obligations to perform labor and/or furnish materials in the prosecution of the work provided for herein, including by way of example; Workmen, laborers, and mechanics, and furnishers of materials, machinery, equipment, and fixtures then said Surety agrees and is bound to so perform the Contract and make said payment(s).

Provided, that any alterations which may be made in the terms of the contract or in the Work to be done under it, or the giving by the Owner of any extensions of time for the performance of the Contract, or any other forbearance on the part of either the Owner or the Contractor to the other shall not in any way release the Contractor or the Surety from their liability hereunder, notice to the Surety of any such alterations, extensions or other forbearance being hereby waived.

The Contractor agrees to abide by the requirements of the following as applicable: Title VI and VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended by the Equal Opportunity Act of 1972, Federal Executive Order 11246, the Federal Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, the Vietnam Era Veteran's Readjustment Assistance Act of 1974, Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, the Age Act of 1972, and contractor agrees to abide by the requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990.

Contractor agrees not to discriminate in its employment practices, and will render services under this contract without regard to race, color, sex, religion, national origin, genetic information, age or disabilities. Any act of discrimination committed by Contractor or failure to comply with these statutory obligations when applicable shall be grounds for termination of this contract.

*Sample*

CONTRACT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR  
AND PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND

Contractor hereby agrees that the responsibility for payment of taxes from the funds thus received under this agreement and/or legislative appropriation shall be said Contractor's obligation and identified under Federal tax identification number \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_.

In Witness whereof, the parties hereto on the day and year first above written have executed this agreement in Four (4) counterparts, each of which shall, without proof or accountancy for the other counterparts, be deemed an original thereof.

ALTERATIONS/MODIFICATIONS TO CONTRACT

Annex A - Affidavit attesting that public contract was Not, nor will not be secured through Employment or payment or solicitor.

WITNESSES

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Print)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Print)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

**CONTRACTOR**

BY: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Print)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

Note: If Contractor is not a Corporation, witnesses are required. If Contractor is a corporation, a Corporate Resolution must be attached.

WITNESSES

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Print)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Print)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

**LOUISIANA MILITARY DEPARTMENT**

BY: Owen W. Monconduit  
(Print)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

Brigadier General (Ret),  
Louisiana Military Department  
Deputy Director -  
Contracting and Purchasing

WITNESS

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Print)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
SURETY

BY: \_\_\_\_\_  
ATTORNEY IN FACT





INDEMNIFICATION AGREEMENT

The \_\_\_\_\_(Contractor/Lessee) agrees to protect, defend indemnify, save, and hold harmless, the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards and Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees and volunteers, from and against any and all claims, damages, expenses and liability arising out of injury or death to any person or the damage, loss or destruction of any property which may occur or in any way grown out of, any act or omission of \_\_\_\_\_(Contractor/Lessee), its Agents, servants, and employees, or any and all costs, expenses and/or attorney fees incurred by \_\_\_\_\_(Contractors/Lessee) as a result of any claims, demands, suits or causes of action, except those claims, demands, suits or causes of action arising out of the negligence of the State of Louisiana, all State Department, Agencies, Boards, Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees and volunteers.

\_\_\_\_\_ (Contractor/Lessee) agrees to investigate, handle, respond to, provide defense for and defend any such claims, demands, or suits or causes of action at its sole expense and agrees to bear all other costs and expenses related thereto, even if the claims, demands, suits or causes of action are groundless, false or fraudulent.

Accepted by \_\_\_\_\_  
(Company Name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Title)

Date Accepted \_\_\_\_\_

Is Certificate of Insurance Attached: \_\_\_\_\_ Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No

Contract No. \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_  
(State Agency Name)

PURPOSE OF  
CONTRACT: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



STATE OF LOUISIANA  
PARISH OF ST. TAMMANY

CONTRACT NO: \_\_\_\_\_  
NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
LOCATION: \_\_\_\_\_

AFFIDAVIT

Before me, the undersigned authority, duly commissioned and qualified within and for the state and parish aforesaid, personally came and appeared \_\_\_\_\_ representing \_\_\_\_\_ who, being by me first duly sworn, deposed and said that he has read this affidavit and does hereby agree under oath to comply with all provisions herein as follows:

PART I

Section 2220 of Part of Chapter 10 of Title 38 of the Louisiana Revised Statutes of 1950 as amended.

(1) That affiant employed no person, corporation, firm, association, or other organization, either directly or indirectly, to secure the public contract under which he received payment, other than persons regularly employed by the affiant whose services in connection with the construction of the public building or project or in securing the public contract were in the regular course of their duties for affiant; and

(2) That no part of the contract price received by affiant was paid or will be paid to any person, corporation, firm, association or other organization for soliciting the contract, other than the normal payment of their normal compensation to persons regularly employed by the affiant whose services in connection with the construction of the public building or project were in the regular course of their duties for affiant.

PART II

Section 2190 of Part 1 of Chapter 10 of Title 38 of the Louisiana Revised Statutes of 1950 as amended.

That affiant, if he is an architect or engineer, or representative thereof, does not own a substantial financial interest, either directly or indirectly, in any corporation, firm, partnership, or other organization when the architect or engineer has performed architectural or engineering services, either directly or indirectly, in connection with the public building or project for which the materials are being supplied.

For the purposes of this Section, a "substantial financial interest" shall exclude any interest in stock being traded on the American Stock Exchange or the New York Stock Exchange.

That affiant, if subject to the provisions of this Section, does hereby agree to be subject to the penalties involved for the violation of this Section.

PART III

That affiant does hereby state that he has read and agrees to comply with and be subject to the provision of Part V of Chapter 10 of Title 38 of the Louisiana Revised Statutes of 1950, being Sections 2290 through 2296 of Title 38 as amended.

\_\_\_\_\_  
AFFIANT

SWORN TO AS PRESCRIBED BEFORE ME THIS \_\_\_\_\_ DAY OF \_\_\_\_\_, 2014.

\_\_\_\_\_  
NOTARY



\_\_\_\_\_  
(Contractor Name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Contractor Address)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Contractor City, State, Zip)

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**Contractor Certification and Disclosure Form**

I, \_\_\_\_\_, do hereby certify that:  
(Print Name)

- a. As an entity contracting with the State of Louisiana Military Department, I acknowledge and agree that I am responsible for ensuring there is no conflict of interest or violation of the State of the Louisiana Ethics Code.
- b. Neither I, nor any of my employees, have immediate family members who work for the Louisiana Military Department (LMD). In addition, no member of the LMD has a controlling interest in my company, as defined in the Louisiana Ethic Code.
- c.  Neither I, nor any of my employees, have any other relationships with LMD employees that are or may be perceived as improper or unethical; OR

I hereby disclose freely and with no reservations that I, or the below listed employee, have/has relationships with the following LMD employee (s): \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
The nature of this/these relationship (s) is/are (personal, professional; number of years of relationship, etc): \_\_\_\_\_

- d. The information above is true and correct, and should anything come to my attention that would damage the answers above, I will inform LMD immediately.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Printed name)



Sworn Affidavit

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Date)

I hereby verify that all of the employees of \_\_\_\_\_ have been placed into the (E-Verify System) and are US-Born Citizens or Legal Aliens.

Contract Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Contract number: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Witness Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Company Name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Witness Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Notary Signature / Seal)





# **GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**ISSUED BY:**

**LOUISIANA MILITARY DEPARTMENT  
STATE CONTRACTING OFFICE  
BUILDING 718 “E” STREET, CAMP BEAUREGARD  
PINEVILLE, LOUISIANA 71360-0613**

**April 2015**

## **INDEX**

### **GENERAL CONDITIONS**

#### GENERAL CONDITIONS

#### 1B-01 SCOPE OF WORK

#### 1B-02 DEFINITIONS

#### 1B-03 CORRELATION AND INTENT OF DOCUMENTS

#### 1B-04 DETAIL DRAWINGS, INSTRUCTIONS, ADDENDA AND INTERPRETATION

#### 1B-05 MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP

#### 1B-06 SITE INVESTIGATION AND REPRESENTATION

#### 1B-07 OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS

#### 1B-08 BASE LINES AND GRADES

#### 1B-09 PROGRESS CHARTS, SUNDAYS, HOLIDAYS AND NIGHTS

#### 1B-10 STATEMENT [\(Small Entrepreneurship \(SE\) Program \(The Hudson Initiative\) and the Veteran-Owned and Service Connected Disabled Veteran-Owned \(La Vet\) Small Entrepreneurship Program\)](#)

#### 1B-11 RELATION OF CONTRACTOR AND SUBCONTRACTOR

#### 1B-12 SAMPLES AND DESCRIPTIVE DATA

#### 1B-13 PROTECTION OF MATERIAL AND WORK

#### 1B-14 POSSESSION PRIOR TO COMPLETION

#### 1B-15 SUSPENSION OF WORK, DELAYS AND EXTENSION OF TIME

1B-16 ACCIDENT PREVENTION AND SANITATION

1B-17 NOT USED

1B-18 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

1B-19 WATER

1B-20 DRINKING WATER

1B-21 SANITARY CONVENIENCES

1B-22 ELECTRICITY

1B-23 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE

1B-24 PAYMENTS

1B-25 PAYMENTS WITHHELD

1B-26 APPROVAL

1B-27 DAMAGE TO WORK

1B-28 GUARANTEE OF MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP

1B-29 SPECIAL DESIGNS

1B-30 ROYALTIES AND PATENTS

1B-31 PERMITS AND REGULATIONS

1B-32 SUPERINTENDENT, SUPERVISION

1B-33 CHANGES, EXTRAS, AND CHANGE ORDERS

1B-34 CHANGED CONDITIONS

1B-35 CLAIMS FOR EXTRA COST

1B-36 DEDUCTIONS FOR UNCORRECTED WORK

1B-37 CORRECTION OF WORK BEFORE FINAL PAYMENT

1B-38 THE OWNER'S RIGHT TO DO WORK

1B-39 TERMINATION FOR DEFAULT-DAMAGES OR DELAY

1B-40 CONTRACTOR'S RIGHT TO STOP WORK OR TERMINATE CONTRACT

1B-41 DAMAGES

1B-42 LIENS

1B-43 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY OF CONTRACTORS

1B-44 ASSIGNMENT

1B-45 TERMINATION FOR THE CONVENIENCE OF THE GOVERNMENT

1B-46 SEPARATE CONTRACTS

1B-47 ARCHITECT'S STATUS

1B-48 ARCHITECT'S DECISIONS

1B-49 DISPUTES

1B-50 STANDARDS

1B-51 TAXES

1B-52 MEASUREMENTS

1B-53 STORAGE AND CARE OF MATERIALS

1B-54 RECORDING OF DOCUMENTS

1B-55 OWNER'S OCCUPANCY

1B-56 SURVEY OF OUTSIDE UTILITY LINES

1B-57 FAILURE TO COMPLETE ON TIME - LIQUIDATED DAMAGES

1B-58 EQUAL OPPORTUNITY

## GENERAL CONDITIONS

### 1B-01 SCOPE OF WORK

The work to be performed under this contract consists of furnishing all plant, material, equipment, supplies, labor and transportation, including fuel, power, water (except any materials, equipment, utility or service, if any specified herein to be furnished by the Owner), and performing all work as required by the Contract in strict accordance with the specifications, schedules and drawings, all of which are made a part hereof and including such detail drawings as may be furnished by the Architect / Engineer from time to time during the construction in explanation of said drawings.

### 1B-02 DEFINITIONS

a. The "**Contract Documents**" are enumerated in the Contract Between Owner and Contractor And Performance And Payment Bond (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect.

b. The "**Owner**" is the Louisiana Military Department (LMD), Contracting Office located at Camp Beauregard, Pineville, Louisiana.

c. The "**Contracting Officer**" is the duly authorized Military representative of the Owner acting on behalf of The Adjutant General.

d. The "**Contractor**" is the person, association of persons, firm or corporation entering into the contract with the Owner.

e. The "**Subcontractor**" is the person, association of persons, firm or corporation who contracts with the Contractor to perform work covered by the Contract.

f. "**Written Notice**" shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to the individual or to a member of the firm or to an officer of the corporation for whom it is intended, or if delivered at or sent by registered mail to the last business address known to him who gives the notice.

g. The term "**work**" of the Contractor or Subcontractor includes labor or materials, or both. The term "**provide**" includes furnishing and installation.

h. The law of the place of the building shall govern the construction under the Contract.

i. In the event there is no "**Architect**", then substitute the term "**Owner**" as necessary.

j. The term “**Contract**” represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract Documents form the “**Contract**” for construction. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect’s consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect’s consultants or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect’s duties.

k. The “**Drawings**” are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules and diagrams.

l. The “**Specifications**” are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

### **1B-03 CORRELATION AND INTENT OF DOCUMENTS**

The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is called for by any one shall be as binding as if called for by all. The intention of the documents is to include all execution of the work. It is not the intent, however, that materials or work not covered by or properly inferable from any heading, branch, class or trade of the Specifications shall be supplied unless distinctly so noted on the Drawings. Materials or work described in words, which so applied, have a well-known technical or trade meaning shall be held to refer to such recognized standards. The Contract Documents are intended to produce a piece of work complete in every respect, and the Contractor shall furnish all things necessary to complete the work within the meaning and intent of the said documents. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide everything necessary to complete the work except for such items, which are specifically excluded and excepted.

### **1B-04 DETAIL DRAWINGS, INSTRUCTIONS, ADDENDA AND INTERPRETATION**

a. The Architect shall furnish with reasonable promptness additional instructions, by means of drawings or otherwise, necessary for the proper execution of the work. All such drawings and instructions shall be executed in conformity therewith, and the Contractor shall do no work without proper drawings and instructions.

b. Addenda and Interpretations - No interpretation of the meaning of the plans, specifications or other pre-bid documents will be made to any bidder orally. Every request for such interpretation will be in writing to the Architect and to be given consideration must be received at least seven (7) days prior to the date fixed for the opening of bids. Any and all such interpretations and any supplemental instructions will be in the form of written addenda to the specifications which, if issued, will be mailed to all prospective bidders (at the respective addresses furnished for such purposes), not later than three (3) days prior (do not include Saturday, Sunday or legal holidays) to the date fixed for the opening of

bids. Failure of any bidder to receive any such addendum(a) or interpretation shall not relieve such bidder from any obligation under his bid as submitted. All Addenda so issued shall become part of the Contract Documents.

### **1B-05 MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP**

Unless otherwise specifically provided for in the specifications, all equipment, materials and articles incorporated in the work covered by this Contract are to be new and of the most suitable grade of their respective kinds for the purpose intended, and all workmanship shall be **in a thorough workmanlike manner**. Where any work not performed to the skill of a qualified workman in that particular trade, Contractor is to replace, remove, rework or repair to meet the quality expected of that craftsman with no additional expense to owner. Where equipment, materials or articles are referred to in the specifications as "equal to" any particular standard, the Architect shall decide the question of equality. The Contractor shall furnish to the Architect for his approval the name of the manufacturer of machinery, mechanical and other equipment, which he contemplates incorporating in the work, together with their performance capacities and other pertinent information. When required by the specifications, or when called for by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish to the Architect for approval full information concerning the materials or articles, which he contemplates incorporating in the work. Samples of materials shall be submitted for approval when so directed. Machinery, equipment, materials and articles installed or used without such approval shall be at the risk of subsequent rejection. The Architect/ Owner may in writing require the Contractor to remove from the work site such employee as they deem necessary for incompetence, carelessness, insubordination or otherwise objectionable, or whose continued employment on the work site is deemed by the Architect/ Owner to be contrary to the public interest.

### **1B-06 SITE INVESTIGATION AND REPRESENTATION**

The Contractor acknowledges that he has satisfied himself as to the nature and location of the work, the general and local conditions, particularly those bearing upon transportation, disposal, handling and storage of materials, availability of labor, water, electric power, roads and uncertainties of weather, river stages, tides, or similar physical conditions at the site, the conformation and condition of the ground, the character, quality and quantity of surface and subsurface materials to be encountered, the character of equipment and facilities needed preliminary to and during the prosecution of the work and all other matters which can in any way affect the work or the cost thereof under this Contract. Any failure by the Contractor to acquaint himself with all the available information concerning these conditions will not relieve him from responsibility for estimating properly the difficulty or cost of successfully performing the work. The Owner assumes no responsibility for any understanding or representations made by any of its officers or agents during or prior to the negotiation and execution of this contract, unless:

a. Such understanding or representations are expressly stated in the Contract.

b. The Contract expressly provides the responsibility therefore is assumed by the Owner, representations made but not so expressly assumed by the Owner in the Contract shall be deemed only for the information of the Contractor, and the Owner will not be liable or responsible therefore.

### **1B-07 OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS**



a. All operations of the Contractor (including storage of materials) upon Owner's premises shall be confined to areas authorized or approved by the Owner. No unauthorized or unwarranted entry upon, passage through, storage or disposal of materials shall be made upon the Owner's premises. Owner's premises and adjacent to the construction will be made available for use by the Contractor without cost whenever such use will not interfere with Owner's other uses or purposes. The Contractor will be liable for any and all damage caused by him to such Owner premises. The Contractor shall hold and save the Owner, its officers and agents, free and harmless from liability of any nature or kind arising from any use, trespass or damage occasioned by his operations on premises of third persons.

b. Temporary buildings (storage sheds, shops, offices, etc.) shall be erected by the Contractor only with the approval of the Contracting Officer, and shall be built with labor and materials furnished by the Contractor without expense to the Owner, such temporary buildings and/or utilities must be removed unless otherwise approved by the Owner.

c. The Contractor shall, under regulations prescribed by the Owner, use only established roadways or construct and use such temporary roadways as may be authorized by the Owner. Where materials are transported in the prosecution of the work, vehicles shall not be loaded beyond the loading capacity recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle or prescribed by any federal, state or local law or regulation. When it is necessary to cross curbing or sidewalks, protection against damage shall be provided by the Contractor, and any damaged roads, curbing, or sidewalks shall be repaired by or at the expense of the Contractor.

#### **1B-08 BASE LINES AND GRADES**

The Contractor shall lay out his work from base lines and grades established by the Architect and shall be responsible for all measurements in connection therewith. The Contractor shall at his own expense furnish all stakes, templates, platforms, equipment and labor that may be required in setting marks, or laying out any part of the work. The Contractor will be held responsible for the proper execution of the work to such lines and grades as may be established or indicated by the Architect, and all stakes or other marks thus established shall be preserved by him until their removal is authorized by the Architect. The Architect will furnish, on request from the Contractor, all location and limit marks reasonably necessary for the conduct of the work.

#### **1B-09 PROGRESS CHARTS, SUNDAYS, HOLIDAYS AND NIGHTS**

a. The Contractor shall, prior to award of the Contract, prepare and submit through the Architect to the Construction and Facilities Management Office for approval a practical and feasible schedule showing the date on which he will start the several salient features (including procurement of materials, plant and equipment) and the contemplated dates for completing same. The schedule shall be in the form of a progress chart of suitable scale to indicate approximately the percentage of work scheduled for completion at any time. The Contractor shall enter on the chart the actual progress at the end of each week or at such intervals as directed by the Owner and shall immediately deliver to the Owner three (3) copies thereof.

b. The Contractor shall furnish sufficient forces, construction plant and equipment shall work such hours, including night shifts, overtime operations and Sunday and Holiday work as may be necessary to ensure the prosecution of the work in accordance with the approved progress schedule. If,

in the opinion of the Owner, the Contractor falls behind the progress schedule, the Contractor shall take such steps as necessary to improve his progress and the Owner may require him to increase the number of shifts and/or overtime operations, day of work and/or the amount of construction plants, all without additional cost to the Owner.

c. Failure of the Contractor to comply with the requirements of the Owner under this provision shall be grounds for determination by the Owner that the Contractor is not prosecuting the work with such diligence as will ensure completion within the time specified. Upon such determination, the Owner may terminate the Contractor's right to proceed with the work, or any separate part thereof, in accordance with the **Termination for Default-Damages or Delay** article of the Contract.

### **1B-10 STATEMENT TO CONTRACTORS**

The Louisiana Military Department is a participant in the Small Entrepreneurship (SE) Program (The Hudson Initiative) and the Veteran-Owned and Service Connected Disabled Veteran-Owned (La Vet) Small Entrepreneurship Program. Bidders are encourage to consider participation.

### **1B-11 RELATION OF CONTRACTOR AND SUBCONTRACTOR**

a. The Contractor agrees to bind every subcontractor and every subcontractor agrees to be bound by the terms of the Contract, the General Conditions, the Drawings and Specifications as far as applicable to his work, including the following provisions of this article, unless specifically noted to the contrary in a subcontract approved in writing as adequate to the Owner. This does not apply to minor subcontracts.

b. The Subcontractor agrees:

1. To be bound to the Contractor by the terms of the Contractor, General Conditions, Drawings and Specifications and to assume toward him all obligations and responsibilities that he, by these documents, assumes toward the Owner.
2. To submit to the Contractor applications for payment in such reasonable time as to enable the Contractor to apply for payment under the General Conditions.
3. To make all claims for extras, for extensions of time and for damages for delays or otherwise, to the Contractor in the manner provided in the General Conditions for like claims by the Contractor upon the Owner except that the time for making claims for extra cost is one (1) week.

c. The Contractor agrees:

1. To be bound to the subcontractor by all obligation that the Owner assumes to the Contractor under the Agreement, General Conditions, Drawings and Specifications, and by all the provisions thereof affording remedies and redress to the Contractor from the Owner.
2. To pay the subcontractor an amount allowed to the Contractor on account of the subcontractor's work to the extent of the subcontractor's interest therein.

3. To pay the subcontractor so that all times his total payment shall be as large in proportion to the value of the work done by him as the total certified to the Contractor is to the value of the work done by him.
4. To pay the subcontractor to such extent as may be provided by the Contract Documents or subcontract, if either of those provided for earlier or larger payments than the above.
5. To pay the subcontractor a just share of any fire insurance as far as executed and fixed in place, less the retained percentage.
6. To pay the subcontractor a just share of fire insurance money received by him, the Contractor.
7. To make no demand for liquidated damages or penalty for delay in any sum in excess of such amount as may be specifically named in the Contract.
8. That no claim for services rendered or materials furnished by the Contractor to the subcontractor shall be valid unless written notice thereof is given by the Contractor to the subcontractor during the first ten (10) days of the calendar month following that in which the claim originated.
9. To give the subcontractor an opportunity to be present and submit evidence in any arbitration involving his rights.
10. To name as arbitrators under arbitration proceedings as provided in the General Conditions the person nominated by the subcontractor if the sole cause of dispute is the work materials, rights, or responsibilities, of the subcontractor; or if of the subcontractor and any other subcontractor jointly, to name as such arbitrator the person upon whom they agree.

d. The Contractor and the subcontractor agree that:

1. In a matter of arbitration, their rights and obligations and all procedure shall be analogous to those set forth in this Contract.
2. Nothing in this article shall create any obligation on the part of the Owner to pay to or see to the payment of any sums to any subcontractor.

#### **1B-12 SAMPLES AND DESCRIPTIVE DATA**

a. Samples and descriptive data required shall:

1. Be submitted within the time specified in these specifications, or if no time is specified, within a reasonable time before use to permit inspection and testing.
2. Be shipped prepaid and delivered as specified in these specifications, or as directed by the

Owner.

3. Be properly marked to show the name of the materials, trademark and name of manufacturer, place of origin, name and location of the work where the material represented is to be used in the project, and the name and address of the person or firm submitting the sample.

b. Samples not subject to destructive tests may be retained until completion of the work but thereafter will be returned to the contractor, if he so requests in writing, at his own expense. Failure of any sample to pass the specified requirements will be sufficient cause for refusal to consider further any samples from the same manufacturer whose materials failed to pass the test.

### **1B-13 PROTECTION OF MATERIAL AND WORK**

a. The Contractor shall at all times protect and preserve all materials, supplies and equipment of every description (including property which may be Owner-furnished or owned) and all work performed. All reasonable requests of the Owner to enclose or specially protect such property shall be complied with. If, as determined by the Owner, material, equipment, supplies and work performed are not adequately protected by the Contractor, such property may be protected by the Owner and the cost thereof may be charged to the Contractor or deducted from any payment due to him.

b. The Contractor shall continuously maintain adequate protection of all work from damage and shall make good any such damage, injury or loss, except such as may be directly due to errors in the contract documents. He shall provide and maintain all passageways, guard fences, lights and other facilities for protection required by public authority or local conditions.

c. In an emergency affecting the safety of life or of the work or of adjoining property, the Contractor, without special instruction or authorization from the Architect or Owner, is hereby permitted to act at his discretion, to prevent such threatened loss or injury, and he shall so act without appeal if so instructed or authorized. Any compensation claimed by the Contractor on account of emergency work, shall be determined by agreement or arbitration.

### **1B-14 POSSESSION PRIOR TO COMPLETION**

The Owner shall have the right to take possession of or use any completed or partially completed part of the work. Such possession or use shall not be deemed an acceptance of any work not completed in accordance with the contract. If such prior possession or use by the Owner delays the progress of the work or causes additional expense to the Contractor, an equitable adjustment in the contract price and/or the time of completion will be made and the contract shall be modified in writing accordingly.

### **1B-15 SUSPENSION OF WORK, DELAYS AND EXTENSION OF TIME**

a. The Owner may order the Contractor to suspend all or any part of the work for such period of time as may be determined by him to be necessary or desirable for the convenience of the Owner. Unless such suspension unreasonably delays the progress of the work and causes additional expense or

loss to the Contractor, no increase in Contract price will be allowed. In the case of suspension of all or any part of the work for any unreasonable length of time causing additional expense or loss, not due to the fault or negligence of the Contractor, Owner shall make an equitable adjustment in the Contract price and modify the contract accordingly. An equitable extension of time for the work in the event of such suspension will be allowed the Contractor, provided, however, that the suspension was not due to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. If the Contractor be delayed at any time in the progress of the work by an act or neglect of the Owner or the Architect, or by any employee of either, or by any other Contractor employed by the Owner, or by changes ordered in work or by the strikes, lockouts, fire, unavoidable casualties or any causes beyond the Contractor's control or by delay authorized by the Architect pending arbitration, then the time of completion may be extended for such reasonable time as the Owner may decide.

b. No such extension shall be made for delay occurring more than seven (7) days before claim therefore is made in writing to the Architect. In the case continuing cause of delay, only one claim is necessary.

c. If no schedule or agreement stating the dates upon which drawings shall be furnished is made, then no claim for delay shall be allowed on account of failure to furnish drawings until two (2) weeks after demand for such drawings and not then unless such claim be reasonable.

d. This article does not exclude the recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions in the contract documents.

#### **1B-16 ACCIDENT PREVENTION AND SANITATION**

The Contractor will ensure compliance with OSHA Safety and Health Standards (29 CFR 1910) and Occupational Safety and Health Regulations for Construction (CFR 1926).

#### **1B-17 Not Used**

#### **1B-18 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS**

a. The Contractor shall keep one (1) copy of all drawings and specifications on the work, in good order, available to the Architect and his representatives.

b. Upon completion of work, and before final acceptance of project, submit one (1) set of red lined "As-Built" (hard copy) prints clearly indicating all deviations from project drawings to the architect.

c. The contractor is to keep on job site all Fire Marshal approved drawings and specifications, Fire Marshal reviewed shop drawing submittals of sprinklers, fire alarm system, etc. and any associated correspondence. These items are to be kept in a secure location to prevent anyone from defacing or removing any part of these documents. These documents are to be available to the owner, Fire Marshal inspectors and the architect at any time.

#### **1B-19 WATER**

The responsibility shall be upon the Contractor to provide and maintain at his own expense an adequate supply of water of a quality suitable for his use for construction and domestic consumption. At his own expense he shall install and maintain any necessary water supply connection and piping but only at such locations and in such workmanlike manner as may be authorized by the Owner. All water shall be carefully conserved. Before final acceptance, temporary connections and piping installed by the Contractor shall be removed in a workmanlike manner to the satisfaction of the Owner. If it is determined by the Owner that the water systems and supplies operated by the Owner are adequate for the needs and use of the Contractor as well as the Owner, all reasonable required amounts of water will be made available to the Contractor by the Owner from such existing water systems and supplies, without cost to the Contractor.

### **1B-20 DRINKING WATER**

During the construction of the building, the Contractor shall provide proper drinking water for workmen employed on the job. Drinking water shall be strictly pure, and when the weather warrants, ice shall be provided.

### **1B-21 SANITARY CONVENIENCES**

During the construction of the building, the Contractor shall provide proper sanitary conveniences for the workmen employed on the work. Conveniences shall be kept in a thoroughly sanitary condition at all times and adequately supplied with a good grade of toilet paper. Workmen will not be permitted to use the present toilet facilities, if any, unless specifically approved by the Owner.

### **1B-22 ELECTRICITY**

All electric current required by the Contractor shall be furnished at his own expense. All temporary connections for electricity shall be subject to the approval of the Owner. In the event electricity is made available by the Owner, the Contractor shall, at his own expense, install a meter to determine the amount of current used by him, and such electricity will be paid for by or charged to the Contractor at prevailing rates or at reasonable rates as determined by the Owner. All temporary lines will be furnished, installed, connected and maintained by the Contractor in a workmanlike manner satisfactory to the Owner and shall be removed by the Contractor in like manner at his expense prior to completion of the construction.

### **1B-23 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE**

a. The work will be conducted under the general direction of the Architect and is subject to inspection by his appointed inspectors to ensure strict compliance with the terms of the Contract. No inspector is authorized to change any provision of the Specifications without written authorization of the Owner, nor shall the presence or absence of an inspector relieve the Contractor from any requirements of the Contract. The Architect and/or his representative shall at all times have access to the work wherever it is in preparation or progress, and the Contractor shall provide proper facilities for such access and for inspection.

b. If the Specifications, the Architect's instructions, laws, ordinances or any public authority require any work to be specially tested or approved, the Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of its readiness for inspection and, if the inspection is by another authority other than the Architect, of the date fixed for such inspection. Inspections by the Architect shall be promptly made, and where practicable at the source of supply. If any work should be covered up without approval or consent of the Architect, it must be, if required by the Architect, uncovered for examination at the Contractor's expense. The Architect may order re-examination of questioned work and, if so ordered, the work must be uncovered by the Contractor.

c. Upon completion of work, the Contractor will inspect the entire project; make a list of all deficiencies and forward to the Architect. Following correction of all these items, the Contractor, the Architect, and the Owner will conduct a joint inspection of the project. The Contractor will compose a list of deficiencies, details for correction, a timetable for correction, and a Schedule of Values and submit to the Architect for approval. The Architect shall submit this Schedule of Values to the Owner for approval, and upon Request For Payment by the Contractor, the Owner shall **withhold the amount** of this Schedule of Values until the work is complete, in addition to any other retainage.

d. Following Partial Acceptance or Final Acceptance by the Owner, the Owner will issue a Partial Acceptance or Final Acceptance "Notice" through the Architect to the Contractor. The Contractor will, at his own expense, record the Acceptance with the Recorder of Mortgages in the Parish in which the contract is recorded. Should a Partial Acceptance be issued, a Final Acceptance will be issued upon the completion of the punch list. Following the 45-day lien period, and completion of all punch list items, the final payment will be processed in accordance with 1B-24.

## **1B-24 PAYMENTS**

a. **Monthly**, the Contractor **shall submit to the Architect**, an itemized application and Certification for Payment, AIA Documents G702-G702A, notarized if required, supported by such data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment as the Owner or the Architect may require. The payment request must include the date of the application and contract numbers. Application for Payment shall be submitted on or about the first of each month for the value of labor and materials incorporated in the work and of material suitably stored at the site as of the twenty-fifth (25th) day of the preceding month, less normal retainage as follows:

1. Projects with Contract price up to and including \$500,000 - ten (10%) percent.
2. Projects with Contract price exceeding \$500,000 - five (5%) percent.

The normal retainage shall not be due the Contractor until expiration of the forty-five (45) day lien period and submission to the Architect of a clear Lien Certificate, and an invoice for same.

b. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments will be made on account of materials or equipment not incorporated in the work but delivered and suitably stored at the site and, if approved in advance by the Owner, payments may similarly be made for materials or equipment suitably stored at some other location agreed upon in writing. Payments for materials or equipment stored on or

off the site shall be conditioned upon submission by the Contractor of bills of sale or such other procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials or equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, including applicable insurance and transportation to the site for those materials and equipment stored off the site.

c. The Contractor warrants that title to all work, materials and equipment covered by the Application for Payment will pass to the Owner either by incorporation in the construction or upon the receipt of payment by the Contractor, whichever occurs first, free and clear of all liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances, hereinafter referred to as "liens"; and that no work, materials or equipment covered by an Application for Payment will have been acquired by the Contractor, or by any other person performing work at the site or furnishing materials and equipment for the Project, subject to an agreement under which an interest therein or an encumbrance thereon is retained by the seller or otherwise imposed by the Contractor or such other person.

**d. The Architect will, within seven (7) days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either issue a Certificate for Payment to the Owner's Project Manager, with a copy to the Contractor, for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, or notify the Contractor in writing his reasons for withholding a Certificate.**

e. This issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Project Manager, based on his observations at the site and the data comprising the Application for Payment, that the Work has progressed to the point indicated; that, to the best of his knowledge, information and belief, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents (subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to the result of any subsequent tests required by or performed under the Contract Documents, to minor deviations from the Contract Documents correctable prior to completion, and to any specific qualifications stated in his Certificate); and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. However, by issuing a Certificate for payment, the Architect shall not thereby be deemed to represent that he has made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality of the work or that he has reviewed the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or that he has made any examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used the moneys previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

f. Upon receipt of a payment request by the Contracting Officer, **certified by the Architect and approved by the Owner's Project Manager Management Office Project Manager**, the Owner shall make payment to the Contractor no later than thirty (30) days from the date received, in amount verified by the Architect, Project Manager and Contracting Officer.

g. The Contractor shall promptly pay each Subcontractor, upon receipt of payment from the Owner, out of the amount paid to the Contractor on account of such Subcontractor's work, the amount to which said Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting the percentage actually retained, if any, from payments to the Contractor on account of such Subcontractor's work. The Contractor shall, by an appropriate agreement with the Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to his Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

h. The Architect may, on request and at his discretion, furnish to any Subcontractor, if practical, information regarding the percentages of completion or the amounts applied for by the Contractor and



the action taken thereon by the Architect on account of Work done by such Subcontractor.

i. Neither the Owner nor the Architect shall have the obligation to pay or to see to the payment of any moneys to any subcontractor except as may otherwise be required by law.

j. No Certificate for a progress payment, nor any progress payment, nor any partial or entire use or occupancy of the project by the Owner, shall constitute an acceptance of any work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

### **1B-25 PAYMENTS WITHHELD**

a. The Architect may withhold or, on account of subsequently discovered evidence, nullify as may be necessary to protect the Owner from loss on the account of:

1. Defective work not remedied.
2. Claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of claims.
3. Failure of the Contractor to make payment properly to Subcontractors or for material or labor.
4. A reasonable doubt that the Contract can be completed for the balance then unpaid.
5. Damage to another Contractor.

b. The Contracting Officer may withhold or cause to be withheld from the State prime Contractor so much of the accrued payment or advances as may be considered necessary (i) to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, watchmen and guards, employed by the Contractor or any Subcontractor on the work, the full amount of wages required by the Contract, and (ii) to satisfy any liability of the Contractor and any Subcontractor for liquidated damages under paragraph (b) of the clause entitled CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT-OVERTIME COMPENSATION.

c. If the Contractor or any Subcontractor fails to pay any laborer, mechanic, apprentice, trainee, watchmen, or guard employed or working on the site of the Work, all or part of the wages required by the Contract, the Contracting Officer may, after written notice to the State Prime Contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause suspension of any further payments or advances until such violations have ceased.

### **1B-26 APPROVAL**

Any contract awarded as the result of this invitation for bids may be subject to the approval of the Chief, National Guard Bureau, Washington, D.C., shall not be binding until so approved.

### **1B-27 DAMAGE TO WORK**

The Contractor shall be responsible for all work until completion and final acceptance thereof. However, if, in the judgment of the Owner, any part of the permanent work performed by the Contractor is damaged by flood, which damage is not due to the failure of the Contractor to take reasonable

precaution or to exercise sound engineering and construction practices in the conduct of the work, additional payment for the repair of such damaged permanent work as ordered by the Owner may be made at the applicable Contract unit or lump sum prices as fixed and established in the Contract, which shall be full compensation therefore. If, in the opinion of the Owner, there are no Contract unit or lump sum prices applicable to a part of such work, an equitable amount pursuant to Article 3, "Changes", of the Contract will be made as full compensation for the repairs of that part of the permanent work which there are no applicable Contract or lump sum prices. Except as herein provided, damage to all work (including temporary construction), utilities, materials, equipment and plant shall be repaired to the satisfaction of the Owner at the Contractor's expense regardless of the cause of such damage.

### **1B-28 GUARANTEE OF MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP**

a. The Contractor shall be held responsible for and must correct and rectify, at his own expense, all defects discovered in the work with one (1) year from the date of final acceptance of the Contract and its acceptance by the State. It is the intent and purpose of this Contract, and it shall be the obligation of the Contractor, to construct rainproof and leakproof walls and exterior openings and the Contractor shall and will, therefore, assume full responsibility for the accomplishment of this condition and shall at his own cost, use whatever means that may be required to make same. All remedial measures are to meet with the approval of the Owner.

b. If, within any guarantee period, repairs or changes are required in connection with guaranteed work which, in the opinion of the Architect, is rendered necessary as the result of the use of materials, equipment, or workmanship which are inferior, defective, or not in accordance with the terms of the Contract, or from omissions of work specifically required by the plans and/or the Specifications, the Contractor shall, promptly upon the receipt of notice from the Owner, and without expense to the Owner:

1. Place in satisfactory condition in every particular all such guaranteed work, correct all defects herein;
2. Make good all damages to the building or site, or equipment or contents thereof, which, in the opinion of the Architect is the result of the use of materials, equipment, or workmanship which are inferior, defective, or not in accordance with the terms of the Contract; and,
3. Make good any work or material, or the equipment and contents of said building or site disturbed in fulfilling any such guarantees.

c. In any case wherein fulfilling the requirements of the contract or of any guarantee, embraced in or required thereby, the Contractor disturbs any work guaranteed under another Contract, he shall restore such disturbed work to a condition satisfactory to the Architect, and guarantee such restored work to the same extent as it was guaranteed under such other Contract.

d. If the Contractor, after notice, fails to proceed promptly to comply with the terms of the guarantee, the Owner may have the defects corrected and the Contractor and his surety shall be liable for

all expenses incurred.

e. All special guarantees applicable to definite parts of the work that may be stipulated in the Specifications or other papers forming a part of the Contract shall be subject to the terms of this paragraph during the first year of the life of such special guarantee.

f. If in the opinion of the Contractor that any workmanship, materials or installation required in the Drawings and Specifications be of such a nature as to render this guarantee impossible, notice to this effect must be served in writing to the Owner previous to submission of bid; failure to do so will be construed as a tacit agreement to the strictest terms of this guarantee.

g. Prior to the expiration of the warranty period, the Contractor, Architect and Owner will conduct a joint inspection to determine items to be corrected by the Contractor. Following issuance of a list of deficiencies, the Contractor will diligently correct all work deemed to be warranty items.

### **1B-29 SPECIAL DESIGNS**

a. Bids based on plans and specifications for work involving special designs or material departures from advertised Plans and Specifications of form standards previously approved by the Owner, provided the bidder clearly states such differences, and that all essential requirements of the advertised standard Plans and Specifications are strictly adhered to; and provided further that the bidder otherwise qualified under the terms of the invitation for bids and the advertised specifications.

b. If the plans offered under these provisions are, in the opinion of the Owner, equal to or better than those specified by the Owner, they will be given consideration. Where a statement of departure is not made, it will be understood that the Plans and Specifications offered will be in strict accordance with the standard Plans and Specifications referred to in the invitation to bids.

### **1B-30 ROYALTIES AND PATENTS**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. He shall defend all suits of claims for infringement of any patent rights and shall save the Owner harmless from loss on account thereof, except that the Owner shall be responsible for all such loss when a particular process or the product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is specified, but if the Contractor has information that the process or article specified is an infringement of a patent he shall be responsible for such loss unless he promptly gives such information to the Architect or Owner.

### **1B-31 PERMITS AND REGULATIONS**

a. Permits and licenses of a temporary nature necessary for the execution of the work shall be secured and paid for by the Contractor. Permits, licenses and easements for permanent structures or permanent changes in existing facilities shall be secured and paid for by the Contractor, unless otherwise specified.

b. The Contractor shall give all notices and comply with all laws, ordinances, rules and regulations bearing on the conduct of the work as drawn and specified. If the Contractor observes that the Drawings and Specifications are at variance therewith, he shall promptly notify the Architect in

writing, and any necessary changes shall be adjusted as provided in the Contract for changes in the Work. Contractor performs any Work knowing it to be contrary to such laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, and without such notice to the Architect, he shall bear all cost arising therefrom.

### **1B-32 SUPERINTENDENT, SUPERVISION**

a. The Contractor shall keep on his work during its progress a competent superintendent and any necessary assistants, all satisfactory to the Architect. The superintendent shall not be changed except with the consent of the Architect unless the superintendent proves to be unsatisfactory to the Contractor and ceases to be in his employ. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor in his absence, and all directions given to him shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor. Important directions shall be confirmed in writing to the Contractor. Other directions shall be so confirmed on written request in each case.

b. The Contractor shall give efficient supervision to the work, using his best skill and attention. He shall carefully study and prepare all drawings, specifications and other instructions and shall at once report to the Architect any error, inconsistency or omission which he may discover; but shall not be held responsible for their existence or discovery.

### **1B-33 CHANGES, EXTRAS, AND CHANGE ORDERS**

a. The Contracting Officer may at any time, in writing, and without notice to the sureties, order extras or make changes in the Drawings and/or Specifications of this Contract, providing such extras or changes are within the general scope thereof. If any such extra or change causes an increase or decrease in the amount due under this Contract, or in the time required for its performance, an equitable adjustment shall be made, and the contract shall be modified in writing. Federal funding support for any change or extra is subject to prior approval by the Chief, National Guard Bureau, of his duly authorized representative. Any claim of the Contractor for adjustment under this clause must be asserted in writing within thirty (30) days after the date of receipt by the Contractor of the notification of extra or change: Provided, however, that the Contracting Officer, if he decides that the facts justify such action, may require and act upon any such claim asserted at any time prior to the date of final settlement of the contract.

b. The cost to the Owner resulting in a change in the work shall be based on an itemized list of material and labor costs of work done by the General Contractor, Subcontractor, and/or Sub-subcontractor. "Cost of Work" for the purpose of Change Orders shall be costs required to be incurred in performance of the work and paid by the Contractor and Subcontractors which shall consist of:

1. Wages paid direct labor personnel, delineating a labor burden markup for applicable payroll taxes, worker's compensation insurance, unemployment compensation, and social security taxes.
2. Cost of all materials & supplies, including the identification of each item and its cost.
3. Identify each necessary piece of machinery & equipment and its individual cost.
4. Other documented direct cost.

c. The Contractor and Subcontractor shall be due job-site and home office fixed "overhead and

profits” on the Cost of the Work, but shall not exceed a total of 25% of the direct cost of any portion of work. The cost to the Owner resulting from a change in the work shall be the sum of: “Cost of the Work (as defined above) and Overhead and profit (as defined above) and shall be computed as follows:

1. When work is all General Contractor work, 15% markup on the cost of work.
2. When the work is all Subcontract work, 15% markup on the Cost of the work for Subcontractor’s Overhead and Profit, plus 10% markup on the Cost of the Work, not including the Subcontractor’s Overhead and Profit markup, for the General Contractor’s Overhead and Profit.
3. When the work is a combination of General Contract work and Subcontract work; that portion of the direct cost that is General Contract work shall be computed per #1 above and that portion of the direct cost that is subcontract work shall be computed per # 2 above.

d. Bond Premiums may be included, but after the markup is added to the cost of the work

e. If the parties fail to agree upon the adjustment to be made, the dispute shall be determined as provided in the clause entitled DISPUTES. Nothing provided in this clause, however, shall excuse the Contractor from proceeding with the prosecution of the work as changed. Except as otherwise herein provided, no charge for any extra work or material will be allowed.

#### **1B-34 CHANGED CONDITIONS**

The Contractor shall promptly, and before such conditions are disturbed, notify the Contracting Officer in writing of: (1) subsurface or latent physical conditions at the site differing materially from those indicated in this Contract, or (2) unknown physical conditions at the site, of an unusual nature, differing materially from those ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in work of the character provided for in this Contract. The Contracting Officer shall promptly investigate the conditions, and if he finds that such conditions differ materially from those indicated in this Contract, or (2) unknown physical conditions at the site, of an unusual nature, differing materially from those indicated in this Contract, or (2) unknown physical conditions at the site, of an unusual nature, differing materially from those ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in work of the character provided for in this contract. The Contracting Officer shall promptly investigate the conditions, and if he finds that such conditions do so materially differ and cause an increase in the cost of (or the time required for), performance of this Contract, an equitable adjustment shall be made, and the contract modified in writing. Federal funding support to any change or extra is subject to prior approval by the Chief, National Guard Bureau, or his duly authorized representative. Any claim of the Contractor for adjustment hereunder shall not be allowed unless he has given notice as above required, provided, that the Contracting Officer may, if he determines the facts so justify, consider and adjust any such claim asserted before the date of final settlement of the Contract. If the parties fail to agree upon the adjustment to be made, the dispute shall be determined as provided in clause entitled DISPUTES.

#### **1B-35 CLAIMS FOR EXTRA COST**

If the Contractor claims that any instructions by Drawings involve extra cost under this Contract, he shall give the Architect written notice thereof within a reasonable time after the receipt of such instructions, and in any event before proceeding to execute the work, except in emergency endangering

life or property, and the procedure shall then be as provided for changes in the work. No such claim shall be valid unless so made.

### **1B-36 DEDUCTIONS FOR UNCORRECTED WORK**

If the Architect and Owner deem it inexpedient to correct work injured or done not in accordance with the Contract, an equitable deduction from the price shall be made therefore.

### **1B-37 CORRECTION OF WORK BEFORE FINAL PAYMENT**

a. The Contractor shall promptly remove from the premises all materials condemned by the Architect as failing to conform to the Contract, whether incorporated in the work or not, and the Contractor shall promptly replace and re-execute his own work in accordance with the Contract and without expense to the Owner and shall bear the expense of making good all work of other contractors destroyed or damaged by such removal or replacement.

b. If the Contractor does not remove such condemned work and materials within a reasonable time, fixed by written notice, the Owner may remove them and may store the material at the expense of the Contractor. If the Contractor does not pay the expenses of such removal within ten (10) day time thereafter, the Owner may, upon ten (10) days written notice, sell such materials at auction or at a private sale and shall account for the net proceeds thereof, after deducting all the cost and expenses that should have been borne by the Contractor.

### **1B-38 THE OWNER'S RIGHT TO DO WORK**

If the Contractor shall neglect to prosecute the work properly or fail to perform any provision of this Contract, the Owner, after three (3) days written notice to the Contractor may without prejudice to any remedy he may have, make good such deficiencies and may deduct the cost thereof from the payment then or thereafter due the Contractor, provided however, the Architect shall provide both such action and the amount charged to the Contractor.

### **1B-39 TERMINATION FOR DEFAULT-DAMAGES OR DELAY**

a. If the Contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work, or any separate part thereof, with such diligence as will ensure its completion within the time specified in this Contract, or any extension thereof, or fails to complete said work within such time, the State may, by written notice to the Contractor, terminate his right to proceed with the work or such part of the work as to which there has been delay. In such event the State may take over the work and prosecute the same to completion, by Contract or otherwise, and the Contractor and his sureties shall be liable to the State for any excess cost occasioned the State thereby, and for liquidated damages for delay, as fixed in the specifications or accompanying papers, until such reasonable time as may be required for the final completion of the work; or, if liquidated damages are not so fixed, any actual damages occasioned by such delay. If the Contractor's right to proceed is so terminated, the State may take possession of and utilize in completing the work such materials, appliances and plant as may be on the site of the work and necessary therefore.

b. If the State does not terminate the right of the Contractor to proceed, as provided in

subparagraph "a" hereof, the Contractor shall continue the work, in which event he and his sureties shall be liable to the State, in the amount set forth in the specifications or accompanying papers, for the fixed agreed, liquidated damages for each calendar day of delay until the work is completed or accepted; or if liquidated damages are not so fixed, any actual damages occasioned by the delay.

c. The right of the Contractor to proceed shall not be terminated, as provided in subparagraph "a" hereof, nor the Contractor charged with liquidated or actual damages, as provided in subparagraph "b", because of any delays in the completion of the work due to causes beyond his control which could not have been anticipated and where without his fault or negligence, including but not restricted to, acts of God, acts of the public enemy, acts of the Federal Government or of the State (either in its sovereign or contractual capacity), acts of another Contractor in the performance of a contract with the State, guarantee restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes, or unusually severe weather; or, delays of subcontractors or supplies at any tier, provided, that the Contractor shall, within ten (10) days after the beginning of any delay, unless the Contracting Officer shall grant a further period of time prior to the date of final settlement of the contract, notify the Contracting Officer in writing of the cause of delay. The Contracting Officer shall ascertain the facts and the extent of the delay and the extent of time for completing the work when in his judgment the findings of fact justify such an extension, and his findings of facts thereon shall be final and conclusive on the parties hereto, subject only to appear as provided in the DISPUTES clause hereof.

#### **1B-40 CONTRACTOR'S RIGHT TO STOP WORK OR TERMINATE CONTRACT**

If the work should be stopped under an order of any court, or other public authority for a period of three (3) months, through no act or fault of the Contractor or of anyone employed by him, or if the Architect should fail to issue any certificate for payment within seven (7) days after it is due, or the Owner should fail to pay to the Contractor within seven (7) days of its maturity and presentation, any sum certified by the Architect or awarded by arbitrators, then the Contractor may, upon seven (7) days written notice to the Owner and the Architect, stop all work or terminate this Contract and recover from the Owner payment for all work executed and any loss sustained upon any plant or materials and reasonable profit and damage.

#### **1B-41 DAMAGES**

a. If either party to this Contract should suffer damage in any manner because of any wrongful act or neglect of the other party or of anyone employed by him, then he shall be reimbursed by the other party for such damage.

b. Claims under this clause shall be made in writing to the party liable within a reasonable time at the first observance of such damage and not later than the time of final payment, except as expressly stipulated otherwise in the case of faulty work or materials, and shall be adjusted by agreement or arbitration.

#### **1B-42 LIENS**

Neither the final payment nor any part of the retained percentages shall become due until the Contractor, if required, shall deliver to the Owner a complete release of all liens arising out of this

Contract, or receipt in full in lieu thereof and if required in either case, an affidavit that so far as he has knowledge or information the releases and receipts including all the labor and materials for which a lien could be filed; but the Contractor may, if any subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or receipt in full, furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify him against any lien. If the lien remains unsatisfied after all payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all moneys that the latter may be compelled to pay in discharging such a lien, including all cost and reasonable attorney's fee.

#### **1B-43 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY OF CONTRACTORS**

Should the Contractor cause damage to any other Contractor or the work the Contractor agrees upon due notice to settle with such Contractor by agreement or arbitration, if he will settle. If such other Contractor sues the Owner on account of any damages alleged to have been so sustained, the Owner shall notify the Contractor who shall defend such proceedings at the Owner's expense and, if any judgment against the Owner arise, the Contractor shall pay or satisfy it and pay all costs incurred by the Owner.

#### **1B-44 ASSIGNMENT**

Neither party to the Contract shall assign the contract or sublet it as a whole without the written consent of the other, nor shall the Contractor assign any moneys due or to become due to him hereunder without the previous written consent of the Owner.

#### **1B-45 TERMINATION FOR THE CONVENIENCE OF THE GOVERNMENT**

a. The State may, by written notice, through the Architect, to Contractor, terminate the Contract for the convenience of the Government. Such notice will be in writing and will afford the Contractor ample time to complete work in progress, to clean-up the site, secure all Contractor owned equipment and turn materials at the site and stored elsewhere over to the Owner.

b. Payment will be made to the Contractor for all work completed and materials stored as of the date of termination. The Contractor shall submit final payment through the Architect, who will verify, in writing as to the accuracy of the claim.

#### **1B-46 SEPARATE CONTRACTS**

a. The Owner reserves the right to let other Contracts in connection with this work. The Contractor shall afford other contractors reasonable opportunity for the introduction and storage of their materials and the execution of their work, and shall properly connect and coordinate his work with theirs.

b. If any part of the Contractor's work depends on proper execution or results upon the work of any Contractor, the Contractor shall inspect and promptly report to the Architect any defects in such work that render it unsuitable for such proper execution and results. His failure to so inspect and report shall constitute an acceptance of the other Contractor's work as fit and proper for the reception of his



work, except as to defects which may develop in the other Contractor's work after the execution of his work.

c. To ensure the proper execution of his subsequent work the Contractor shall measure work already in place and shall at once report to the Architect any discrepancy between the executed work and the drawings.

#### **1B-47 ARCHITECT'S STATUS**

The Architect shall have general oversight and observation of the work. He is the representative of the Owner and work is under his general oversight as the Owner representative only to the extent he is authorized by the Owner so to act, and in such instances he shall, upon request, show the Contractor written authority. He has authority to stop the work whenever such stoppage may be necessary to ensure the proper execution of the Contract. The Architect is to ensure that the Contractor conforms to the Plans and Specifications.

#### **1B-48 ARCHITECT'S DECISIONS**

a. The Architect shall, within a reasonable time, make decisions on all claims of the Owner or Contractor and on all matters relating to the execution and progress of the Work or the interpretation of the Contract Documents.

b. Except as above or as otherwise expressly provided in the Contract Documents, all the Architect's decisions are subject to arbitration.

#### **1B-49 DISPUTES**

a. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this Contract, and except as otherwise specifically provided by the State procedure for arbitration or other State procedure established by State law, any disputes concerning a question of facts arising under this Contract which is not disposed of by mutual agreement shall be decided by the Contracting Officer, who shall reduce his decision to writing and send by registered mail, return receipt requested, a copy thereof to the Contractor at his address shown herein. Within thirty (30) days after the date of receipt of such copy, the Contractor may appeal in writing to the Governor of this State, whose written decision thereon, or that of his designated representatives, shall, unless determined by a court of competent jurisdiction to have been fraudulent or capricious or arbitrary or so grossly erroneous as necessarily to imply bad faith, or not supported by substantial evidence, be final and conclusive, provided that if no such appeal is taken, the decision of the Contracting Officer shall be final and conclusive. The Governor of this State may designate an individual or individuals other than the Contracting Officer, or a board, as his authorized representative to determine appeals under this Article. In connection with any appeal proceeding under this clause, the Contractor shall be afforded an opportunity to be heard and to offer evidence in support of his appeal. Pending final decision of a dispute hereunder, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with the performance of the Contract and in accordance with the Contracting Officer's decision. Any sum or sums allowed to the Contractor under the provisions of this Article or under the State arbitration proceedings or under State procedure shall be paid for by this State.

b. Disputes concerning Labor Standards - Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this Contract shall be subject to the subparagraph "a" above except to the extent such disputes involve the meaning of classification or wage rates contained in the wage determination decision of the Secretary of Labor or the applicability of the labor provisions of this Contract which questions shall be referred to the Secretary of Labor in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor.

### **1B-50 STANDARDS**

a. Any material specified by reference to the number symbol title of a specific standard, such as a Commercial Standard, a Federal Specification, a trade association standard, or other similar standard, shall comply with the requirements in the latest revision thereof and any amendment or supplement thereto in effect on the date of Invitation for Bids, except as limited to type, class or grade, or modified in such reference.

b. The standards referred to, except as modified in the Specifications, shall have full force and effect as though printed in the Specifications. These standards are not furnished to bidders for the reason that the manufacturers and trades involved are assumed to be familiar with the requirements. The Architect will furnish, upon request, information as to how copies of the standards referred to may be obtained.

c. Reference in the Specifications to any article, device, product, material, fixture, form, or type of construction by name, make or catalogue number shall be interpreted as establishing a standard of quality and not be construed as limiting competition. Substitutions must be submitted in writing, and written approval by the Architect and Owner must be issued prior to the Contractor taking any action to deviate from the specifications. In all events, substitutions must equal or exceed the specific standard.

### **1B-51 TAXES**

The Contractor shall, without additional expense to the Owner, pay all applicable Federal, State, and local sales and other taxes, except taxes and assessments on the real property comprising the site of the project.

### **1B-52 MEASUREMENTS**

Before ordering any material or doing any work, each Contractor shall verify all measurements of the building and shall be responsible for the correctness of same. No extra charge for compensation will be allowed on account of difference between actual dimensions and the measurements indicated on the Drawings; any difference which may be found shall be submitted to the Architect for consideration before proceeding with the work.

### **1B-53 STORAGE AND CARE OF MATERIALS**

The Contractor shall so store, pile, and arrange his materials that they will not be damaged by the elements, by contact with the ground or from other causes. He shall provide any and all protective coverings necessary for this purpose. Storage of materials shall be confined to those areas especially designed by the Architect. Should any materials become damaged from any cause, they shall be

immediately removed from the site upon the direction of the Architect.

**1B-54 RECORDING OF DOCUMENTS**

The contract, Performance Bond, Payment Bond and Acceptance shall be recorded by the Contractor, such recording cost being paid by the Contractor.

**1B-55 OWNER'S OCCUPANCY**

During the progress of the work and/or prior to the final acceptance of the complete project, the Owner reserves the right to place in the building certain items of the Owner's property; or to occupy portions of the building, including, subject to equitable adjustment, access facilities, utilities and services necessary for such partial occupancy. Such action shall not be construed as evidence of the completion of the work or any portion of it or as an acceptance of the work or any part of it by the Owner except as otherwise specified; provided, however, that such partial occupancy shall not delay nor obstruct the completion of the project by the Contractor.

**1B-56 SURVEY OF OUTSIDE UTILITY LINES**

Upon completion of the project, the Contractor shall furnish the Architect a print of the site showing any deviation in the location of utility lines from those shown on the original Contract Drawings and including any additions to the utility services.

**1B-57 FAILURE TO COMPLETE ON TIME - LIQUIDATED DAMAGES**

a. For each Contract day that any work shall remain uncompleted after the Contract completion date time specified in the Contract, the sum specified below will be deducted from any money due the Contractor, not as a penalty but as liquidated damages.

b. Permitting the Contractor to continue and finish the work or any part of it after the time fixed for its completion, or after the date to which the time for completion may have been extended, will in no way operate as a waiver on the part of the Owner of any of its rights under the Contract.

c. Based on the amount of the original Contract, the following charges per Contract day will be made for each such day after the expiration of the contract time or extended Contract time, as the case may be:

<u>Original Contract Amount</u>		<u>Daily Charge</u>
For More Than	To and Including	Contract Day
\$0	\$50,000	\$50.00
\$50,000	\$100,000	\$100.00
\$100,000	\$300,000	\$175.00
\$300,000	\$500,000	\$200.00
\$500,000	\$800,000	\$400.00
\$800,000	\$1,000,000	\$600.00
\$1,000,000	\$2,000,000	\$700.00
\$2,000,000	-----	To be determined

d. The amount of liquidated damages, determined as provided above, will be deducted from any money due the Contractor under this Contract, and the Contractor and his surety shall be liable for any liquidated damages in excess of the amount due the Contractor.

**1B-58 EQUAL OPPORTUNITY**

(a) The Contractor and all Subcontractors shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, creed, color, or national origin. The Contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, creed, color or national origin. Such action shall include but not limited to the following: Employment upgrading, demotion or transfer; recruitment advertising; lay-off or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices to be provided by the Owner setting forth the provisions of this non-discrimination clause.

(b) The Contractor and all Subcontractors shall, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by on behalf of the Contractor, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, creed, color or national origin.

# **SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS**

These Supplementary Conditions modify, change, delete from or add to the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, AIA Document A201, 2007 Edition. Where any Article of the General Conditions is modified or any Paragraph, Subparagraph or Clause thereof is modified or deleted by these supplements, the unaltered provisions of that Article, Paragraph, Subparagraph or Clause shall remain in effect.

Articles, Paragraphs, Subparagraphs or Clauses modified or deleted have the same numerical designation as those occurring in the General Conditions.

## **ARTICLE 1**

### **GENERAL PROVISIONS**

#### **1.1 BASIC DEFINITIONS**

##### **1.1.1. THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

In Subparagraph 1.1.1 delete the third sentence, and add the following sentence:

The Contract Documents shall include the Bid Documents as listed in the Instructions to Bidders and any modifications made thereto by addenda.

#### **1.5 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS AND OTHER INSTRUMENTS OF SERVICE [REFER TO R.S. 38:2317]**

1.5.1 Delete the first sentence of the paragraph.

1.5.1 In the third sentence: delete the remainder after the word “publication”.

## **ARTICLE 2**

### **OWNER**

#### **2.2 INFORMATION AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF THE OWNER**

2.2.1 Delete this paragraph.

2.2.2 In the first sentence, delete: all before “...the Owner shall secure...”

## **ARTICLE 3**

### **CONTRACTOR**

#### **3.4 LABOR AND MATERIALS**

3.4.2 Delete this paragraph.

3.4.3 Delete this paragraph and substitute with the following:

Contractor and its employees, officers, agents, representatives, and Subcontractors shall conduct themselves in an appropriate and professional manner, in accordance with the Owner's requirements, at all times while working on the Project. Any such individual who behaves in an inappropriate manner or who engages in the use of inappropriate language or conduct while on Owner's property, as determined by the Owner, shall be removed from the Project at the Owner's request. Such individual shall not be permitted to return without the written permission of the Owner. The Owner shall not be responsible or liable to Contractor or any Subcontractor for any additional costs, expenses, losses, claims or damages incurred by Contractor or its Subcontractor as a result of the removal of an individual from the Owner's property pursuant to this paragraph. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

### **3.7 PERMITS, FEES, NOTICES, AND COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS (R.S. 40:1724[A])**

3.7.1 Delete Subparagraph 3.7.1

3.7.2 In paragraph 3.7.2, replace the word "public" with the word "State".

Delete Subparagraph 3.7.5 and substitute the following:

3.7.5 If, during the course of the Work, the Contractor discovers human remains, unmarked burial or archaeological sites, burial artifacts, or wetlands, which are not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall follow all procedures mandated by State and Federal law, including but not limited to L.R.S. 8:671 et seq., R.S. 49:213.1 et seq., and Sections 401 & 404 of the Federal Clean Water Act. Request for adjustment of the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features shall be submitted in writing to the Owner pursuant to the Contract Documents.

### **3.8 ALLOWANCES**

Delete Subparagraph 3.8.1, 3.8.2, and 3.8.3 in their entirety and add the following new Subparagraph 3.8.1:

3.8.1 Allowances shall not be made on any of the Work.

### **3.9 SUPERINTENDENT**

3.9.1 Add the following to the end of the paragraph: Important communications shall be confirmed in writing. Other communications shall be similarly confirmed on written request in each case.

### **3.10 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES**

3.10.1 Add the following: For projects with a contract sum greater than \$1,000,000.00, the Contractor shall include with the schedule, for the Owner's and Architect's information,

a network analysis to identify those tasks which are on the critical path, i.e. where any delay in the completion of these tasks will lengthen the project timescale, unless action is taken. A revised schedule shall be submitted with each Application and Certificate for Payment. No payment will be made until this schedule is received.

- 3.10.3 Delete the word "...general..." Add the following: If the Work is not on schedule, as determined by the Architect, and the Contractor fails to take action to bring the Work on schedule, then the Contractor shall be deemed in default under this Contract and the progress of the Work shall be deemed unsatisfactory. Such default may be considered grounds for termination by the Owner for cause in accordance with 14.2.
- 3.10.4 Add the following: Submittal by the contractor of a schedule or other documentation showing a completion date for his Work prior to the completion date stated in the contract shall not impose any obligation or responsibility on the Owner or Architect for the earlier completion date.
- 3.10.5 Add the following: In the event the Owner employs a commissioning consultant, the Contractor shall cooperate fully in the commissioning process and shall require all subcontractors and others under his control to cooperate. The purpose of such services shall be to ensure that all systems perform correctly and interactively according to the provisions of the Contract Documents.

### **3.11 DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES AT THE SITE**

Add the following: This requirement is of the essence of the contract. The Architect shall determine the value of these documents and this amount shall not be approved for payment to the Contractor until all of the listed documents are delivered to the Architect in good order, completely marked with field changes and otherwise complete in all aspects.

## **ARTICLE 4**

### **ARCHITECT**

#### **4.1 GENERAL**

Delete Subparagraph 4.1.1 and substitute the following:

4.1.1 The term Architect, when used in the Contract Documents, shall mean the prime Designer (Architect, Engineer or Landscape Architect), or his authorized representative, lawfully licensed to practice architecture, engineering or landscape architecture in the State of Louisiana, identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

4.1.3 Delete the words: "as to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and"

#### **4.2 ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT**

4.2.1 In the first sentence, delete the phrase: "the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment" and replace with the phrase "final payment is due, and with the

Owner's concurrence, from time to time during the one year period for correction of Work described in Section 12.2."

- 4.2.2 In the first sentence, after the phrase: "become generally familiar with"; insert the following: "and to keep the Owner informed about."

In the first sentence, after the phrase "portion of the Work completed", insert the following: "to endeavor to guard the Owner against defects and deficiencies in the Work,"

- 4.2.10 Add the following sentence to the end of Subsection 4.2.10:

There will be no restriction on the Owner having a Representative.

- 4.2.11 Add the following sentence to the end of Subsection 4.2.11:

If no agreement is made concerning the time within which interpretation required of the Architect shall be furnished in compliance with this Section 4.2, then delay shall not be recognized on account of failure by the Architect to furnish such interpretation until 15 days after written request is made for them.

- 4.2.14 Insert the following sentence between the second and third sentences of Subsection 4.2.14:

If no agreement is made concerning the time within which interpretation required of the Architect shall be furnished in compliance with this Section 4.2, then delay shall not be recognized on account of failure by the Architect to furnish such interpretation until 15 days after written request is made for them.

## **ARTICLE 5**

### **SUBCONTRACTORS**

#### **5.2 AWARD OF SUBCONTRACTS AND OTHER CONTRACTS FOR PORTIONS OF THE WORK**

Delete Subparagraph 5.2.1, and substitute the following:

- 5.2.1 Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall furnish at the Pre-Construction Conference, to the Owner and the Architect, in writing, the names of the persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for each of the principal portions of the Work. No Contractor payments shall be made until this information is received.

Delete Subparagraph 5.2.2 and substitute the following:

- 5.2.2 The Contractor shall be solely responsible for selection and performance of all subcontractors. The Contractor shall not be entitled to claims for additional time and/or



an increase in the contract sum due to a problem with performance or non-performance of a subcontractor.

Delete Subparagraph 5.2.3 and 5.2.4 and add the following:

- 5.2.3 The contractor shall notify the Owner when a subcontractor is to be changed and substituted with another subcontractor.

#### **5.4 CONTINGENT ASSIGNMENT OF SUBCONTRACTS**

Delete Subparagraphs 5.4.1, 5.4.2 and 5.4.3

### **ARTICLE 7**

#### **CHANGES IN THE WORK**

##### **7.1 GENERAL**

Add the following paragraph:

- 7.1.4 As part of the pre-construction conference submittals, the contractor is to submit the following prior to the commencement of Work:

Fixed job site overhead cost itemized with documentation to support daily rates.  
Bond Premium Rate with supporting information from the General Contractor's carrier.  
Labor Burden by trade for both Subcontractors and General Contractor.  
Internal Rate Charges for all significant company owned equipment.

Failure to submit this information as part of the pre-construction submittals shall prohibit the Contractor from claiming these items as costs on any change order issued on the project.

##### **7.2 CHANGE ORDERS**

Delete Subparagraph clause 7.2.1, and substitute the following paragraphs:

- 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written order to the Contractor prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and the Architect, issued after execution of the Contract, authorizing a change in the Work or an adjustment in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. The Contract Sum and the Contract Time may be changed only by Change Order. A Change Order signed by the Contractor indicates his agreement therewith, including the adjustment in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. Any reservation of rights, stipulation, or other modification made on the change order by the contractor will have no effect.

- 7.2.2 "Cost of the Work" for the purpose of Change Orders shall be costs required to be incurred in performance of the Work and paid by the Contractor and Subcontractors which shall consist of:

- 7.2.2.1 Wages paid direct labor personnel, delineating a labor burden markup for applicable payroll taxes, worker's compensation insurance, unemployment compensation, and social security taxes.
- 7.2.2.2 Cost of all materials and supplies, including the identification of each item and its cost including taxes.
- 7.2.2.3 Identify each necessary piece of machinery and equipment and its individual cost including taxes.
- 7.2.2.4 Increases in insurance premiums for those forms of insurance required by Article 11 of these Supplementary Conditions and only for those forms.
- 7.2.2.5 Bond costs.

Credit will not be required for Overhead and Profit.

- 7.2.3 Overhead and Profit - The Contractor and Subcontractor shall be due job-site and home office fixed overhead and profits on the Cost of the Work, but shall not exceed a total of 25% of the direct cost of any portion of Work:

The credit to the Owner resulting from a change in the Work shall be the sum of those items above, except credit will not be required for Overhead and Profit. Where a change results in both credits to the Owner and extras to the Contractor for related items, overhead and profit will only be computed on the net extra cost to the Contractor.

- 7.2.4 The cost to the Owner resulting from a change in the Work shall be the sum of: Cost of the Work (as defined at 7.2.2) and Overhead and Profit (as defined at 7.2.4), and shall be computed as follows:

- 7.2.4.1 When all of the Work is General Contract Work; 15% markup on the Cost of the Work.
- 7.2.4.2 When the Work is all Subcontract Work; 15% markup on the Cost of the Work for Subcontractor's Overhead and Profit, plus 10% markup on the Cost of the Work, not including the Subcontractor's Overhead and Profit markup, for General Contractor's Overhead and Profit.
- 7.2.4.3 When the Work is a combination of General Contract Work and Subcontract Work; that portion of the direct cost that is General Contract Work shall be computed per 7.2.4.1 and that portion of the direct cost that is Subcontract Work shall be computed per 7.2.4.2.

Premiums for the General Contractor's bond may be included, but after the markup is added to the Cost of the Work.

- 7.2.4.4 Subcontract cost shall consist of the items in 7.2.2 above plus Overhead and Profit as defined in 7.2.4.

- 7.2.5 Before a Change Order is prepared, the Contractor shall provide and deliver to the Architect the following information concerning the Cost of the Work, not subject to waiver, within a reasonable time after being notified to prepare said Change Order:

A detailed itemized list of labor, material and equipment costs for the General Contractor's Work including quantities and unit costs for each item of labor, material and equipment.

An itemized list of labor, material and equipment costs for each Subcontractor's and/or Sub-Subcontractor's Work including quantities and unit costs for each item of labor, material and equipment.

- 7.2.6 After a Change Order has been approved, no future requests for extensions of time or additional cost shall be considered for that Change Order.

- 7.2.7 The Contractor will be due extended fixed job-site overhead for time delays only when complete stoppage of Work occurs causing a contract completion extension, and the Contractor is unable to mitigate financial damages through replacement Work. The stoppage must be due to acts or omissions solely attributable to the Owner. In all cases the Contractor is to notify the Architect in writing as required by Article 15.1.2. Reasonable proof may be required by the architect that alternate Work could not be performed. Reasonable proof may be required by the Architect that the stoppage affected the Completion Date.

- 7.2.8 "Cost of the Work" whether General Contract cost or Subcontract cost shall not apply to the following:

Salaries or other compensation of the Contractor's personnel at the Contractor's principal office and branch offices.

Any part of the Contractor's capital expenses, including interest on the Contractor's capital employed for the Work.

Overhead and general expenses of any kind or the cost of any item not specifically and expressly included above in Cost of the Work.

Cost of supervision not specifically required by the Change Order.

- 7.2.9 When applicable as provided by the Contract, the cost to Owner for Change Orders shall be determined by quantities and unit prices. The quantity of any item shall be as submitted by the Contractor and approved by the Architect. Unit prices shall cover cost of Material, Labor, Equipment, Overhead and Profit.

Add the following:

- 7.2.10 Unless otherwise agreed to by the Owner and Contractor, the Contractor shall submit all change order documents through the web based electronic document management system designated by Facility Planning and Control. Any fees charged by the provider of the system shall be the responsibility of the Owner. In using this system the Contractor shall strictly adhere to the naming conventions for change orders assigned by Facility

Planning and Control.

### **7.3 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES**

7.3.3 In the first sentence after following methods add: “, but not to exceed a specified amount.”

7.3.7 Delete the following from .1 of the list: “fringe benefits required by agreement or custom,”

Delete the following from .4 of the list: “permit fees,”

Delete the following from .5 of the list: “and field office personnel”

7.3.9 Delete Subparagraph 7.3.9 and substitute the following:

Pending final determination of the total costs of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, amounts not in dispute for such changes in the Work shall be included in Applications for Payment accompanied by a Change Order indicating the parties’ agreement with part or all of such costs.

## **ARTICLE 8**

### **TIME**

#### **8.1 DEFINITIONS**

Add the following:

8.1.5 The Contract Time shall not be changed by the submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date unless specifically authorized by change order.

#### **8.2 PROGRESS AND COMPLETION**

Add to Subparagraph 8.2.1 the following:

Completion of the Work must be within the Time for Completion stated in the Agreement, subject to such extensions as may be granted under Section 8.3. The Contractor agrees to commence Work not later than fourteen (14) days after the transmittal date of Written Notice to Proceed from the Owner and to substantially complete the project within the time stated in the Contract. The Owner will suffer financial loss if the project is not substantially complete in the time set forth in the Contract Documents. The Contractor and the Contractor’s Surety shall be liable for and shall pay to the Owner the sum stated in the Contract Documents as fixed, agreed and liquidated damages for each consecutive calendar day (Saturdays, Sundays and holidays included) of delay until the Work is substantially complete. The Owner shall be entitled to the sum stated in the Contract Documents. Such Liquidated Damages shall be withheld by the Owner from the amounts due the Contractor for progress payments.

Delete Subparagraph 8.2.2

### **8.3 DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME**

- 8.3.1 In the first sentence after the words Owner pending delete the words: “mediation and arbitration” and add the word: “litigation” and delete the last word: “determine” and add the following: “recommend, subject to Owner’s approval of Change Order. If the claim is not made within the limits of Article 15, all right for future claims for that month are waived.”

## **ARTICLE 9**

### **PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

#### **9.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

Delete Subparagraph 9.2 and substitute the following:

- 9.2 At the Pre-Construction Conference, the Contractor shall submit to the Owner and the Architect a Schedule of Values prepared as follows:
- 9.2.1 The attached Schedule of Values Format shall be used. If applicable, the cost of Work for each section listed under each division, shall be given. The cost for each section shall include Labor, Materials, Overhead and Profit.
- 9.2.2 The Total of all items shall equal the Total Contract Sum. This schedule, when approved by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for the Contractor’s Applications for Payment and it may be used for determining the cost of the Work in deductive change orders, when a specific item of Work listed on the Schedule of Values is to be removed. Once the Schedule of Values is submitted at the Pre-Construction Conference, the schedule may not be modified without approval from the Owner and Architect.

#### **9.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT**

Delete Subparagraph 9.3.1 and clause 9.3.1.1 and 9.3.1.2 and substitute the following:

- 9.3.1 Monthly, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an Application & Certificate for Payment on the AIA Document G702-1992, accompanied by AIA Document G703-1992, and supported by any additional data substantiating the Contractor’s right to payment as the Owner or the Architect may require. Application for Payment shall be submitted on or about the first of each month for the value of labor and materials incorporated into the Work and of materials, suitably stored, at the site as of the twenty-fifth day of the preceding month, less normal retainage as follows, per R.S. 38:2248:
- 9.3.1.1 Projects with Contract price up to \$500,000.00 – 10% of the Contract price.
- 9.3.1.2 Projects with Contract price of \$500,000.00, or more – 5% of the Contract price.

9.3.1.3 No payment will be made until the revised schedule required by Section 3.10.1 is received.

The normal retainage shall not be due the Contractor until after substantial completion and expiration of the forty-five day lien period and submission to the Architect of a clear lien certificate, consent of surety and invoice for retainage.

Delete Subparagraph 9.3.2 and substitute the following:

9.3.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. Payments for materials or equipment stored on the site shall be conditioned upon submission by the Contractor of bills of sale or such other procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, including applicable insurance.

## **9.5 DECISIONS TO WITHHOLD CERTIFICATION**

Subparagraph 9.5.1.7: Delete the word "repeated".

Delete Subparagraph 9.5.3

## **9.6 PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

Delete Subparagraph 9.6.1 and substitute the following:

9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment within twenty days except for projects funded fully or in part by a Federal reimbursement program. For such projects the Owner will make payment in a timely manner consistent with reimbursement.

9.6.2 Delete the phrase: "no later than seven days" from the first sentence.

After the end of the second sentence, add the following:

R.S. 9:2784 (A) and (C) require a Contractor or Subcontractor to make payment due to each Subcontractor and supplier within fourteen (14) consecutive days of the receipt of payment from the Owner. If not paid, a penalty in the amount of ½ of 1% per day is due, up to a maximum of 15% from the expiration date until paid. The contractor or subcontractor, whichever is applicable, is solely responsible for payment of a penalty.

9.6.4 Delete the first two sentences of Subparagraph 9.6.4 and add the following to the end of the Subparagraph:

Pursuant to La. R.S. 38:2242, when the Owner receives any claim of nonpayment arising out of the Contract, the Owner shall deduct 125% of such claim from the Contract Sum. The Contractor, or any interested party, may deposit security, in accordance with La. R.S. 38:2242.2, guaranteeing payment of the claim with the recorder of mortgages of the parish where the Work has been done. When the Owner receives original proof of such

guarantee from the recorder of mortgages, the claim deduction will be added back to the Contract Sum.

## **9.7 FAILURE OF PAYMENT**

Delete Subparagraph 9.7

## **9.8 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION: Delete this section and substitute the following:**

### **9.8 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

9.8.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use. The Architect shall determine if the project is substantially complete in accordance with this Subparagraph.

9.8.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work is Substantially Complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

9.8.3 Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work is substantially complete. A prerequisite to the Work being considered as substantially complete is the Owner's receipt of the executed Roofing Contractor's and Roofing Manufacturer's guarantees, where roofing Work is part of the Contract. Prior to inspection by the Architect, the Contractor shall notify the Architect that the project is ready for inspection by the State Fire Marshal's office. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before the Work can be considered as Substantially Complete, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

9.8.4 When the Architect determines that the project is Substantially Complete, he shall prepare a punch list of exceptions and the dollar value related thereto. The monetary value assigned to this list will be the sum of the cost estimate for each particular item of Work the Architect develops based on the mobilization, labor, material and equipment costs of correcting the item and shall be retained from the monies owed the contractor, above and beyond the standard lien retainage. The cost of these items shall be prepared in the same format as the schedule of values. At the end of the 45 day lien period payment shall be approved for all punch list items completed up to that time. After that payment, none of the remaining funds shall be due the contractor until all punch list items are completed and are accepted by the Architect. If the dollar value of the punch list exceeds the amount of funds, less the retainage amount, in the remaining balance of the Contract, then the Project shall not be considered as substantially complete. If funds remaining are less than that required to complete the Work, the Contractor shall pay the difference.

- 9.8.5 When the preparation of the punch list is complete the Architect shall prepare a Recommendation of Acceptance incorporating the punch list and submit it to the Owner. Upon approval of the Recommendation of Acceptance, the Owner may issue a Notice of Acceptance of Building Contract which shall establish the Date of Substantial Completion. The Contractor will record the Notice of Acceptance with the Clerk of Court in the Parish in which the Work has been performed. If the Notice of Acceptance has not been recorded seven (7) days after issuance, the Owner may record the Acceptance at the Contractor's expense. All additive change orders must be processed before issuance of the Recommendation of Acceptance. The Owner will not be responsible for payment for any Work associated with change orders that is not incorporated into the contract at the time of the Recommendation of Acceptance.
- 9.8.6 Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Acceptance of the Work unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the Owner and Contractor. Unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the Owner and Contractor, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work not covered by the punch list and insurance shall become the Owner's responsibility on the Date of Substantial Completion.
- 9.8.7 If all punch list items have not been completed by the end of the forty-five (45) day lien period, through no fault of the Architect or Owner, the Owner may hold the Contractor in default. If the Owner finds the Contractor is in default, the Surety shall be notified. If within forty-five (45) days after notification, the Surety has not completed the punch list, through no fault of the Architect or Owner, the Owner may, at his option, contract to have the balance of the Work completed and pay for such Work with the unpaid funds remaining in the Contract sum. Finding the Contractor in default shall constitute a reason for disqualification of the Contractor from bidding on future state contracts. If the surety fails to complete the punch list within the stipulated time period, the Owner may not accept bonds submitted, in the future, by the surety.

## **9.9 PARTIAL OCCUPANCY OR USE**

- 9.9.1 Delete paragraph and substitute the following:

Partial Occupancy is that stage in the progress of the Work when a designated portion of the Work is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so the Owner can occupy or utilize the designated portion of the Work for its intended use. The Owner may occupy or use any substantially completed portion of the Work so designated by separate agreement with the Contractor and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work. Such occupancy or use may commence provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers the designated portion substantially complete the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Subparagraph 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonable withheld.

## **9.10 FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT**



9.10.1 After the first sentence, add the following:

If the Architect does not find the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents, the Architect shall make one additional inspection; if the Work is still not acceptable, the Architect, and each of the Architect's principal consultants, shall be paid \$175.00/hour for their time at the project site, for each additional inspection, to be withheld from the unpaid funds remaining in the Contract sum. The payment shall be made by the Owner and deducted from the construction contract funds.

9.10.4 Replace with the following:

The making of final payment shall not constitute a waiver of claims by the Owner for the following:

- 9.10.4.1 Claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- 9.10.4.2 Failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents irrespective of when such failure is discovered; or
- 9.10.4.3 Terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents.

## **ARTICLE 10**

### **PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

#### **10.2 SAFETY OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

10.2.2 In the first sentence, between the words: "bearing on and safety", add the words: "the health and,"

#### **10.3 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS**

10.3.1 In the first sentence after (PCB) add: "or lead"

10.3.2 After the first sentence, delete all remaining sentences.

Add at the end: "The Contract time shall be extended appropriately."

#### **10.4 EMERGENCIES**

Delete Subparagraph 10.4 and substitute the following:

10.4 In an emergency affecting the safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall notify the Owner and Architect immediately of the emergency, simultaneously acting at his discretion to prevent damage, injury or loss. Any additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of emergency Work shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

**ARTICLE 11**

**INSURANCE AND BONDS**

**Delete all of Paragraphs 11.1, 11.2 and 11.3 and substitute the following:**

**INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR  
NEW CONSTRUCTION, ADDITIONS AND RENOVATIONS**

**11.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain without interruption for the duration of the contract insurance against claims for injuries to persons or damages to property which may arise from or in connection with the performance of the Work hereunder by the Contractor, its agents, representatives, employees or subcontractors. The duration of the contract shall be from the inception of the contract until the date of final payment.

**11.2 MINIMUM SCOPE AND LIMITS OF INSURANCE**

**11.2.1 Worker’s Compensation**

Worker’s Compensation insurance shall be in compliance with the Worker’s Compensation law of the State of Louisiana. Employers Liability is included with a minimum limit of \$500,000 per accident/per disease/per employee. If Work is to be performed over water and involves maritime exposure, applicable LHWCA, Jones Act or other maritime law coverage shall be included and the Employers Liability limit increased to a minimum of \$1,000,000. A.M. Best’s insurance company rating requirement may be waived for Worker’s compensation coverage only.

**11.2.2 Commercial General Liability**

Commercial General Liability insurance, including Personal and Advertising Injury Liability and Products and Completed Operations Liability, shall have a minimum limit per occurrence based on the project value. The Insurance Services Office (ISO) Commercial General Liability occurrence coverage form CG 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. Claims-made form is unacceptable.

The aggregate loss limit must apply to each project. ISO form CG 25 03 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, shall also be submitted. The State project number, including part number, and project name shall be included on this endorsement.

**COMBINED SINGLE LIMIT (CSL) PER OCCURRENCE**

<u>Type of Construction</u>	<u>Projects up to \$1,000,000</u>	<u>Projects over \$1,000,000 up to \$10,000,000</u>	<u>Projects over \$10,000,000</u>
<b>New Buildings:</b>			
Each Occurrence			
Minimum Limit	\$1,000,000	\$2,000,000	\$4,000,000



with Interstate 10 to the Louisiana – Mississippi border. If flood is included in the builder’s risk insurance policy, then the sub-limit shall not be less than ten percent (10%) of the total contract cost per occurrence. If flood is purchased as a separate policy, the limit shall be ten percent (10%) of the total contract cost per occurrence (with a max of \$500,000 if NFIP). Coverage for roofing projects shall **not** require flood coverage.

On projects South of this corridor, flood coverage shall be provided by the State of Louisiana as the Owner. The Contractor will be liable for the \$5,000 policy deductible from the Notice to Proceed date through the date of final payment of the project in the event of a flood loss.

A Specialty Contractor may provide an installation floater in lieu of a Builder’s Risk policy, with the similar coverage as the Builder’s Risk policy, upon the system to be installed in an amount equal to the greater of the fully-completed project value or the amount of the contract including any amendments. Flood coverage is not required.

The policy must include coverage for the Owner, Contractor and any subcontractors as their interests may appear.

11.2.6 Pollution Liability (*required when asbestos or other hazardous material abatement is included in the contract*)

Pollution Liability insurance, including gradual release as well as sudden and accidental, shall have a minimum limit of not less than \$1,000,000 per claim. A claims-made form will be acceptable. A policy period inception date of no later than the first day of anticipated Work under this contract and an expiration date of no earlier than 30 days after anticipated completion of all Work under the contract shall be provided. There shall be an extended reporting period of at least 24 months, with full reinstatement of limits, from the expiration date of the policy. The policy shall not be cancelled for any reason, except non-payment of premium.

11.2.7 Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions

Any deductibles or self-insured retentions must be declared to and accepted by the Owner. The Contractor shall be responsible for all deductibles and self-insured retentions.

**11.3 OTHER INSURANCE PROVISIONS**

11.3.1 The policies are to contain, or be endorsed to contain, the following provisions:

11.3.1.1 Worker’s Compensation and Employers Liability Coverage

11.3.1.1.1 The insurer shall agree to waive all rights of subrogation against the Owner, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers for losses arising from Work performed by the Contractor for the Owner.

11.3.1.2 General Liability Coverage

- 11.3.1.2.1 The Owner, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers are to be added as additional insureds as respects liability arising out of activities performed by or on behalf of the Contractor; products and completed operations of the Contractor, premises owned, occupied or used by the Contractor. ISO Form CG 20 10 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used.
- 11.3.1.2.2 The Contractor's insurance shall be primary as respects the Owner, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers. The coverage shall contain no special limitations on the scope of protection afforded to the Owner, its officers, officials, employees or volunteers. Any insurance or self-insurance maintained by the Owner shall be excess and non-contributory of the Contractor's insurance.
- 11.3.1.2.3 The Contractor's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whom claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the policy limits.

11.3.1.3 Builder's Risk

The policy must include an endorsement providing the following:  
In the event of a disagreement regarding a loss covered by this policy which may also be covered by a State of Louisiana self-insurance or commercial property policy through the Office of Risk Management (ORM), Contractor and its insurer agree to follow the following procedure to establish coverage and/or the amount of loss:

Any party to a loss may make written demand for an appraisal of the matter in disagreement. Within 20 days of receipt of written demand, the Contractor's insurer and either ORM or its commercial insurance company shall each select a competent and impartial appraiser and notify the other of the appraiser selected. The two appraisers will select a competent and impartial umpire. The appraisers will then identify the policy or policies under which the loss is insured and, if necessary, state separately the value of the property and the amount of the loss that must be borne by each policy. If the two appraisers fail to agree, they shall submit their differences to the umpire. A written decision by any two shall determine the policy or policies and the amount of the loss. Each insurance company agrees that the decision of the appraisers and the umpire if involved will be binding and final and that neither party will resort to litigation. Each of the two parties shall pay its chosen appraiser and bear the cost of the umpire equally.

11.3.1.4 All Coverages

- 11.3.1.4.1 Coverage shall not be canceled, suspended, or voided by either party (the Contractor or the insurer) or reduced in coverage or in limits except after 30 days written notice has been given to the Owner. Ten-day written notice of cancellation is acceptable for non-payment of premium. Notifications shall comply with the standard cancellation provisions in the Contractor's policy.
- 11.3.1.4.2 Neither the acceptance of the completed Work nor the payment thereof shall release the Contractor from the obligations of the insurance requirements or indemnification agreement.
- 11.3.1.4.3 The insurance companies issuing the policies shall have no recourse against the Owner for payment of premiums or for assessments under any form of the policies.
- 11.3.1.4.4 Any failure of the Contractor to comply with reporting provisions of the policy shall not affect coverage provided to the Owner, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers.

11.3.2 ACCEPTABILITY OF INSURERS

All required insurance shall be provided by a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located. Insurance shall be placed with insurers with an A.M. Best's rating of **A-:VI or higher**. This rating requirement may be waived for Worker's compensation coverage only.

If at any time an insurer issuing any such policy does not meet the minimum A.M. Best rating, the Contractor shall obtain a policy with an insurer that meets the A.M. Best rating and shall submit another certificate of insurance as required in the contract.

11.3.3 VERIFICATION OF COVERAGE

Contractor shall furnish the Owner with Certificates of Insurance reflecting proof of required coverage. The Certificates for each insurance policy are to be signed by a person authorized by that insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. The Certificates are to be received and approved by the Owner before Work commences and upon any contract renewal thereafter. The Certificate Holder must be listed as follows:

State of Louisiana  
 Name of Owner  
 Owner Address  
 City, State, Zip  
 Attn: Project # \_\_\_\_\_

In addition to the Certificates, Contractor shall submit the declarations page and the cancellation provision endorsement for each insurance policy. The Owner reserves the right to request complete certified copies of all required insurance policies at any time.

Upon failure of the Contractor to furnish, deliver and maintain such insurance as above provided, this contract, at the election of the Owner, may be suspended, discontinued or terminated. Failure of the Contractor to purchase and/or maintain any required insurance shall not relieve the Contractor from any liability or indemnification under the contract.

If the Contractor does not meet the insurance requirements at policy renewal, at the option of the Owner, payment to the Contractor may be withheld until the requirements have been met, OR the Owner may pay the renewal premium and withhold such payment from any monies due the Contractor, OR the contract may be suspended or terminated for cause.

#### 11.3.4 SUBCONTRACTORS

Contractor shall include all subcontractors as insureds under its policies OR shall be responsible for verifying and maintaining the certificates provided by each subcontractor. Subcontractors shall be subject to all of the requirements stated herein. The Owner reserves the right to request copies of subcontractor's certificates at any time.

If Contractor does not verify subcontractors' insurance as described above, Owner has the right to withhold payments to the Contractor until the requirements have been met.

#### 11.3.5 WORKER'S COMPENSATION INDEMNITY

In the event Contractor is not required to provide or elects not to provide Worker's compensation coverage, the parties hereby agree the Contractor, its Owners, agents and employees will have no cause of action against, and will not assert a claim against, the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees as an employer, whether pursuant to the Louisiana Worker's Compensation Act or otherwise, under any circumstance. The parties also hereby agree that the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees shall in no circumstance be, or considered as, the employer or statutory employer of Contractor, its Owners, agents and employees. The parties further agree that Contractor is a wholly independent Contractor and is exclusively responsible for its employees, Owners, and agents. Contractor hereby agrees to protect, defend, indemnify and hold the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees harmless from any such assertion or claim that may arise from the performance of this contract.

#### 11.3.6 INDEMNIFICATION/HOLD HARMLESS AGREEMENT

Contractor agrees to protect, defend, indemnify, save, and hold harmless, the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards and Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees and volunteers, from and against any and all claims, damages, expenses and liability arising out of injury or death to any person or the damage, loss or destruction of any property which may occur, or in any way grow out of, any act or omission of Contractor, its agents, servants and employees, or any and all costs, expenses and/or attorney fees incurred by Contractor as a result of any claims, demands, suits or causes of action, except those claims, demands, suits or causes of action arising out of the negligence of the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards, Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees and volunteers.

Contractor agrees to investigate, handle, respond to, provide defense for and defend any such claims, demands, suits or causes of action at its sole expense and agrees to bear all other costs and expenses related thereto, even if the claims, demands, suits, or causes of action are groundless, false or fraudulent.

#### 11.4 PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND

Add the following Subparagraph 11.4.3:

##### 11.4.3 RECORDATION OF CONTRACT AND BOND [38:2241A(2)]

The Owner shall record within thirty (30) days the Contract Between Owner and Contractor and Performance and Payment Bond with the Clerk of Court in the Parish in which the Work is to be performed.

## ARTICLE 12

### UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

#### 12.2.1 BEFORE OR AFTER SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

At the end of the paragraph, add the following sentences: “If the Contractor fails to correct Work identified as defective within a thirty (30) day period, through no fault of the Designer, the Owner may hold the Contractor in default. If the Owner finds the Contractor in default, the Surety shall be notified. If within thirty (30) days after notification, the Surety has not corrected the nonconforming Work, through no fault of the Architect or Owner, the Owner may contract to have nonconforming Work corrected and hold the Surety and Contractor responsible for the cost, including architectural fees and other indirect costs. If the Surety fails to correct the Work within the stipulated time period and fails to meet its obligation to pay the costs, the Owner may elect not to accept bonds submitted in the future by the Surety. Finding the Contractor in default shall constitute a reason for disqualification of the Contractor from bidding on future state contracts.

#### 12.2.2 AFTER SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

12.2.2.1 At the end of the paragraph delete the last sentence and add the following sentences: If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a thirty (30) day period, through no fault of the Architect or Owner, the Owner may hold the Contractor in default. If the Owner finds the Contractor is in default, the Surety shall be notified. If within thirty (30) days after notification, the Surety has not corrected the nonconforming Work, through no fault of the Architect or Owner, the Owner may contract to have the nonconforming Work corrected and hold the Surety responsible for the cost including architects fees and other indirect costs. Corrections by the Owner shall be in accordance with Section 2.4. If the Surety fails to correct the nonconforming Work within the stipulated time period and fails to meet its obligation to pay the costs, the Owner may not accept bonds submitted, in the future, by the Surety.



- 12.2.2.1 At the end of the paragraph delete the last sentence and add the following sentences: If the Contractor fails to correct Work covered by warranties within a thirty (30) day period, through no fault of the Architect or Owner, the Owner may hold the Contractor in default. If the Owner finds the Contractor is in default, the Surety shall be notified. If within thirty (30) days after notification, the Surety has not corrected the warranty Work, through no fault of the Architect or Owner, the Owner may contract to have the warranty Work corrected and hold the Surety responsible for the cost including architects fees and other indirect costs. Corrections by the Owner shall be in accordance with Section 2.4. If the Surety fails to correct the warranty Work within the stipulated time period and fails to meet its obligation to pay the costs, the Owner may not accept bonds submitted, in the future, by the Surety.

## **ARTICLE 13**

### **MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

#### **13.1 GOVERNING LAW**

Delete all after the word "located".

#### **13.2 SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS**

13.2.1 In the second sentence, delete "Except as ... 13.2.2"

Delete paragraph 13.2.2

#### **13.4 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES**

Add the following clause 13.4.3

13.4.3 The Nineteenth Judicial Court in and for the Parish of East Baton Rouge, State of Louisiana shall have sole jurisdiction and venue in any action brought under this contract.

#### **13.5 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS**

In Subparagraph 13.5.1, delete the second sentence and substitute the following:

The Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections and approvals with the Testing Laboratory provided by the Owner, and the Owner shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections and approvals.

Delete the last sentence of Subparagraph 13.5.1

#### **13.6 INTEREST**

Delete Paragraph 13.6

### **13.7 TIME LIMITS ON CLAIMS**

Delete Paragraph 13.7 (See L.R.S. 38:2189).

## **ARTICLE 14**

### **TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

#### **14.1 TERMINATION BY THE CONTRACTOR**

Delete clause 14.1.1.4

In Subparagraph 14.1.3, after the word “profit” add the following: “for Work completed prior to stoppage”.

#### **14.2 TERMINATION BY THE OWNER FOR CAUSE**

Add the following clause:

14.2.1.5 Failure to complete the punch list within the lien period as provided in 9.8.7.

14.2.3 Add the following sentence:

Termination by the Owner shall not suspend assessment of liquidated damages against the Surety.

14.2.5 Add the following Subparagraph:

If an agreed sum of liquidated damages has been established, termination by the Owner under this Article will not relieve the Contractor and/or surety of his obligations under the liquidated damages provisions and the Contractor and/or surety shall be liable to the Owner for per diem liquidated damages.

## **ARTICLE 15**

### **CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

#### **15.1 CLAIMS**

In the first sentence of Subparagraph 15.1.1, after the word “money”, add the phrase: “extension of time,”

15.1.2 Add the following to the end of the paragraph: A Reservation of Rights and similar stipulations shall not be recognized under this contract as having any effect. A party must make a claim as defined herein within the time limits provided.

15.1.3 In the second sentence of the Subparagraph, delete “the decisions of the Initial Decision Maker” and replace with: “his/her decision”.

Delete Paragraph 15.1.5.2 and substitute the following:

If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a claim for additional time, the Contractor shall document that weather conditions had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction. An increase in the contract time due to weather shall not be cause for an increase in the contract sum. At the end of each month, the Contractor shall make one Claim for any adverse weather days occurring within the month. The Claim must be accompanied by sufficient documentation evidencing the adverse days and the impact on construction. Failure to make such Claim within twenty-one (21) days from the last day of the month shall prohibit any future claims for adverse days for that month.

15.1.5.3 Add the following Subparagraph:

The following are considered reasonably anticipated days of adverse weather on a monthly basis:

January	<u>11</u> days	July	<u>6</u> days
February	<u>10</u> days	August	<u>5</u> days
March	<u>8</u> days	September	<u>4</u> days
April	<u>7</u> days	October	<u>3</u> days
May	<u>5</u> days	November	<u>5</u> days
June	<u>6</u> days	December	<u>8</u> days

The Contractor shall ask for total adverse weather days. The Contractor's request shall be considered only for days over the allowable number of days stated above.

*Note: Contract is on a calendar day basis.*

## 15.2 INITIAL DECISION

15.2.1 In the second sentence, delete the word "will" and replace with: "shall always".

In the second sentence, delete the phrase: "unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement."

In the third sentence, delete the word "mediation" and replace with: "litigation".

In the third sentence, delete: "unless 30 days have passed after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker with no decision having been rendered."

15.2.5 In the middle of the first sentence, delete all after the phrase: "rejecting the Claim".

In the second sentence, delete the phrase: "and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker."

In the third sentence, delete all after: "binding on the parties" and add the following: "except that the Owner may reject the solution or suggest a compromise or both."

15.2.6 Delete Paragraph.

Delete Subparagraph 15.2.6.1

**15.3 MEDIATION**

Delete Article 15.3

**15.4 ARBITRATION**

Delete Article 15.4



State Of  
*Louisiana*  
OFFICE OF  
RISK MANAGEMENT

**Procedures Manual  
For  
Insurance Requirements In Contracts  
And  
Indemnification Agreements**

*REVISED JANUARY 2011*

## PREFACE

This manual has been developed to provide useful information on insurance language to use in agency contracts with outside vendors, contractors or lessees. This manual is only to be used as a guideline and to provide recommendations of limits and coverages. The limits and coverages recommended in this manual are not mandatory. The ultimate decision as to what limits and coverages will be required in a contract is to be made by each State Department, Agency, Board or Commission entering into the contract. This manual is advisory recommendations only. The manual also does not supersede higher insurance limits required by state statute for certain types of contracts.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface .....	i
Introduction to the Manual.....	3
Chapter 1 - The Basics .....	4
Chapter 2 – Considerations for Drafting Insurance Specifications for Contracts.....	5
Chapter 3 – Guidelines for Determining the Correct Specifications and Special Language .....	6
Chapter 4 – Insurance Terminology .....	9
Chapter 5 – Which Exhibit to Use.....	17
Chapter 6 – Insurance and Indemnification .....	18
Chapter 7 – Obtaining Proof of Compliance .....	20
Exhibits and Supplements.....	25
Exhibit A – Insurance Requirements for Contractors .....	26
Exhibit B – Insurance Requirements for Lessees (No Auto Risks) .....	29
Exhibit C – Insurance Requirements for Joint Ventures.....	32
Exhibit D – Insurance Requirements for New Construction, Additions and Large Renovations .....	35
Exhibit E – Indemnification Agreement.....	40

## INTRODUCTION TO THE MANUAL

### **DISTRIBUTION**

This manual should be distributed to agency personnel who

- (1) Prepare Bid Documents
- (2) Negotiate Contracts
- (3) Review Certificates of Insurance
- (4) Prepare Indemnification/Hold Harmless Agreements

### **PURPOSE**

The State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards and Commissions (herein after referred to as "Agency") must require suppliers, contractors, subcontractors and tenants (herein after referred to as the "Other Party" to the Agency contract) to maintain insurance covering the Other Party against claims or judgments arising from their products, operations, actions or activities while under contract for the Agency. The Agency must also require that the Other Party add the Agency as an "additional insured" to their insurance policies to protect the Agency, its officers, officials, employees and volunteers against any negligence of the Other Party. A Certificate of Insurance submitted from the Other Party to the Agency is a practical way to confirm that appropriate coverages and additional insured terms are in force.

This manual explains how to establish insurance requirements for contracts with contractors, tenants and vendors and how to monitor their compliance with those requirements. It will provide guidelines and specific wording as to the types of insurance coverages and minimum limits that should be required. These insurance requirements should be made part of all Agency bid specifications and should be included in the contract between the Agency and the Other Party.



## CHAPTER 1

### THE BASICS

The first level of protection for the Agency is the requirement that the Other Party must maintain insurance coverage and must name the Agency as an additional insured on those policies. The Other Party is required to comply with the insurance terms described in the bid and/or contract. There should be a separate section of the bid and/or contract that outlines the specific insurance requirements of which the Other Party must comply. In many cases, this section also indicates the insurance coverages and limits to be provided by the Agency. It is necessary that the correct insurance specifications and forms are used as outlined in Chapter 6 of this manual.

The Agency should also require proof that these insurance requirements have been fulfilled. The required insurance in a bid document does not take effect automatically. The Other Party's insurance company must first issue the required insurance policies or endorse existing policies to conform to the Agency's requirements. A Certificate of Insurance is required from the Other Party to confirm that appropriate coverages and endorsements are in force.

A second source of protection for the Agency is a signed and executed indemnification or hold-harmless agreement. This agreement states that the Other Party will hold harmless, defend and indemnify the Agency when the Agency is named in a claim or lawsuit due to the actions or products of the Other Party. It provides protection in addition to insurance purchased by the Other Party and is particularly important when the Other Party has a large deductible. The indemnification/hold harmless agreement automatically takes effect when a contract is negotiated and signed if it is addressed in the contract. (Note: This may not be true when a contract is awarded through the bid process as required by Louisiana Revised Statute 39:1551 et seq. Please review the statute and seek legal advice when needed.) These signed documents are necessary since court decisions have often invalidated or adversely affected the enforceability of Certificates of Insurance, when Certificates alone were used. It is necessary that the correct forms are used as outlined in Chapter 6 and the Exhibits sections of this manual.

This manual provides an example Certificate of Insurance and recommended wording for both the insurance requirements and the indemnification/hold harmless agreement. Correct insurance requirements and forms should be sent with the bid specifications up front, so that the bidder understands the nature of the required insurance and forms and can send them to their insurer for approval before the bid is submitted, thus eliminating delay after the bid is awarded. Often, the Certificate is required to be submitted with the bid quotation, so that they can be reviewed before an award is made.

Once the Agency reviews the bid quotations and makes the award, the contract containing the appropriate indemnification/hold harmless wording should be signed by the awarded Other Party.

Certificates of Insurance should always be promptly reviewed by appropriate agency personnel for accuracy. The contract can be accepted, from an insurance standpoint, once it has been confirmed that the insurance requirements have been met.

## CHAPTER 2

### **CONSIDERATIONS FOR DRAFTING INSURANCE SPECIFICATIONS FOR CONTRACTS**

Review the language as shown in Chapter 6, Insurance and Indemnification found in this manual.

1. Determine the maximum deductibles or self-insured retention levels that the Other Party may maintain. The Other Party must disclose and the Agency accept such deductibles and levels of retention. An alternative to substantial deductibles and retention levels is to request the Other Party to post a surety bond guaranteeing payment of losses and defense costs within the deductible or retained layer. If the Other Party is financially unable to pay the deductible or self-insured retention, or if the court sets aside contract terms describing Other Party's responsibilities, the Agency could be subject to the amount of the loss up to the deductible or retention level.
2. Require the Other Party's insurer to add the Agency, its officers, officials, employees and volunteers as additional insureds to all required liability coverages, except workers compensation policies.
3. Policies must be endorsed to give the Agency 30 days notification if the Other Party's insurance coverage is cancelled. The Certificate may or may not reflect the cancellation days requested. If it does not, then request a copy of the Cancellation Provision endorsement from the policy to confirm.
4. Insurance must be placed with commercial insurance companies which possess a minimum of A.M. Best Company rating of **A-VI** or higher. The letter indicates the insurer's financial strength rating and the Roman numeral indicates financial size. The rating A- indicates excellent and the VI indicates a company with a policyholder surplus of at least \$25,000,000. This requirement may be waived for Workers Compensation coverage only.
5. This manual provides minimum insurance limits for normal, frequent situations. Higher limits should be required for hazardous activities, such as blasting, or where the activity has a severe loss potential, as in construction on or close to highways, utility lines or high-valued property.

Most insurers have forms that impose "aggregate limits" or maximum amount paid on all losses during the coverage term. Coverage provided by the Other Party containing aggregates could have the total aggregate limit reduced by losses arising out of projects for parties other than the Agency. Consequently, the Agency should require of the Other Party one of the following:

- a. A higher aggregate limit which is at least a 2 times multiple of the occurrence limit. For example, a \$1 million per occurrence limit with a \$2 million aggregate, OR
- b. A separate aggregate for the Agency's project.

Note: There are limitations on the requirement in b. above. The Other Party's insurer may decline to amend or to write coverage to fit your requirements.

## CHAPTER 3

### **GUIDELINES FOR DETERMINING THE CORRECT SPECIFICATIONS OR IF SPECIAL LANGUAGE IS NEEDED**

Although the Agency may enter into a variety of contracts each year, most of these contracts may be grouped into a few categories for insurance purposes. The Exhibits at the end of this manual provide standardized forms suitable for most contracts. This chapter provides guidelines for the exhibits.

The first three (3) sets of insurance specifications at the end of the manual have been developed for the most common situations that the Agency will encounter:

- Exhibit A - Insurance Requirements for Contractors
- Exhibit B - Insurance Requirements for Lessee
- Exhibit C - Insurance Requirements for Joint Ventures

When the agency is entering a joint venture (Exhibit C), contact your Agency's legal counsel and/or the Underwriting Unit at the Office of Risk Management (ORM) for special wording during the preparation of the joint venture contract or any bid specifications related to it. Exhibit D is to be used when a bid involves a large construction or renovation project. Exhibit E is a stand-alone indemnification-hold harmless agreement.

Exhibit A is the broadest set of requirements. While its requirements are broader than needed for tenant or other similar contracts, it can be used in those situations also. For example: Exhibit A requires Automobile insurance. Automobile insurance is not customarily required in some contracts. Exhibit B is identical to Exhibit A, but deletes the Automobile requirement.

If the scope of the contract fits into more than one category, use the broadest applicable language. For example, if a vendor will install and maintain the product or perform other services for the Agency, the vendor should be considered as a contractor for the purpose of insurance requirements and the broader language of Exhibit A should be used.

**Please remember that this contract manual is intended for standard contracts. It does not fit all situations. Any questions regarding the increase or decrease in limits of insurance suggested in this manual should be referred to your Agency's legal counsel and/or ORM. Remember, these guidelines are recommendations only and are alterable at the discretion of each agency or department issuing the contract or bid document.**

Following are some guidelines for deciding which set of specifications to use or if special language is needed:

#### **1. Construction and Services Contracts**

- a. Includes most construction and remodeling, janitorial service, movers, on-site equipment maintenance agreements, tow service, tree maintenance, road maintenance, welding, plumbing, painting, electrical work and fireworks exhibits. \$1,000,000 minimum limit for general liability.

#### **2. Professional Services and Environmental Risks, including asbestos, hazardous chemicals or waste, and nuclear risks**

- a. Includes architects, engineers, consultants, attorneys and accountants, and also any activity involving asbestos, hazardous wastes, or nuclear fuels, facilities or wastes.



this type of property risk.

If the Other Party's property might be considered as being in the custody of the Agency, such as storage of tools and equipment on Agency-owned or controlled premises, this risk may be mitigated by a properly worded hold harmless agreement. If Agency property is to be in the custody of a supplier, for example, a shipment sent F.O.B. to the supplier's warehouse, the Agency may arrange for transit insurance or request the supplier to do so. This situation could occur, for example, if ownership transfers at the warehouse and the Agency takes the risk of loss in transit.

**8. Wrap-Ups for Major Construction Projects**

The specifications in this manual are intended for routine projects. Major construction projects, especially those that involve many subcontractors, will call for special insurance requirements. Wrap-ups are very complicated and require special attention. Typically, wrap-ups are only financially feasible for projects over \$10,000,000. Contact ORM prior to consideration of a project that includes the use of a wrap-up.

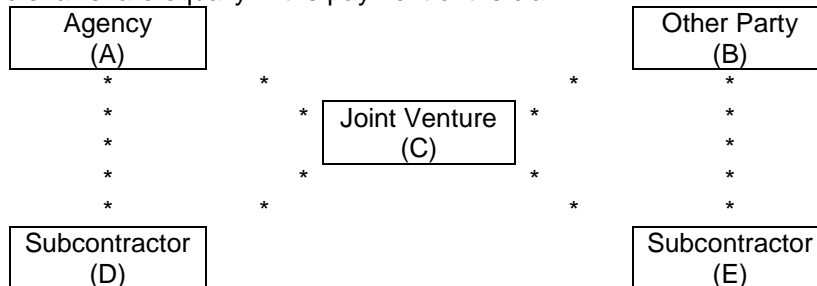
**9. Fidelity (or Dishonesty) Bond**

This is purchased by private employers to cover loss caused by dishonesty of their employees. The employer also has the option to cover himself/herself.

**10. Joint Ventures**

Joint ventures are usually between the Agency and another governmental entity. The diagram below may help in the explanation of the different contractual relationships between Agency (A) and the Other Party (B) which makes up the joint venture (C). When A joins with B, the joint venture is a result of the contract. When the joint venture (C) subcontracts with either Subcontractor D or E, then the Subcontractor should provide insurance coverage(s) as in any standard contract in favor of the Joint Venture (C). A problem arises when the Other Party (B) enters into a contract with Subcontractor (E) that has nothing to do with the Joint Venture (C). The Other Party (B) should hold harmless the joint venture for its contractual relationships directly with Subcontractor (E) for operations which do not arise out of the Joint Venture (C). Any work done by a contractor/subcontractor on behalf of the joint venture should be contracted for/by the joint venture and not the individual parties.

With respect to the Joint Venture, if it can be determined that the claim or occurrence was a direct result of a negligence of the Other Party (B) then the Other Party's insurance coverage shall be primary insurance as respects the Agency (A). Any insurance or self-insurance maintained by Agency (A) shall be excess over the Other Party's insurance and shall not contribute to it. If it is determined that the claim or occurrence is the direct result of Agency (A), then the Agency's insurance coverage shall be primary. If it is not clear who the negligent party was that caused the occurrence that resulted in a loss or claim, both the Agency (A) and the Other Party's (B) insurance shall share equally in the payment of the claim.



## CHAPTER 4

### INSURANCE TERMINOLOGY

The following chapter defines certain commonly used insurance terms and describes key types of coverage:

#### A. OCCURRENCE VERSUS CLAIMS-MADE POLICY FORMS

Most liability insurance policies sold by the commercial insurance market have traditionally been written on an "occurrence" basis, meaning that they insure accidents or events that happen during the policy term, even if a formal claim is not made until months or years later. For example, a child injured in an accident may, under certain circumstances, be allowed to make a formal claim for damages after reaching age eighteen, many years after the actual loss occurred. The insured would be protected against this claim by the policy in effect at the time of the accident. Thus, it is important to maintain, on a long-term basis, records of coverage even after the policies expire.

Some insurers use a "claims-made" coverage form for certain types of insurance (professional liability being one) which imposes strict deadlines regarding the reporting of claims to the insurer. In its most fundamental form, claims-made coverage responds to claims made during the policy term, regardless of when the triggering accident or event happened. Using the example of the injured child, the policy in effect at the point in time that a formal claim is made would be the one to respond, even if it is years after the actual loss occurred.

While the restrictions may vary between insurers, the forms do allow for some exceptions. One common claims-made coverage form is written to apply only to claims that are submitted to the insurer during the policy term or within sixty (60) days thereafter. In this case, if the Agency's protection is to be preserved under this policy form, claims made against the Agency, either orally or in writing, must be reported immediately to the insurer within that 60-day window. In most cases, the Other Party will require that they be notified first and then they will send notice to their insurer on the Agency's behalf. It is important to follow up with the Other Party to make sure they have done so in a timely manner.

Another common policy provision in a claims-made form is that it will honor claims reported within five years after policy expiration, but only arising out of incidents that have been reported to the insurer during the policy term or within 60 days thereafter. In other words, if an incident is reported to the insurer that may generate a future claim, coverage is "locked in" for five years. If the incident is not reported (even if you didn't know about it) during the policy term and then the formal claim is submitted after the policy expiration, the policy will not cover it. Therefore, the Agency should also report incidents to the Other Party so that they can be reported to the insurer during the policy term in case of a future claim.

Although the occurrence form is preferred, you can expect to encounter some of the Other Party's insurance to be written on claims-made forms. Professional liability risks are almost always written on a claims-made basis, especially professional liability for architects, engineers, medical professionals and consultants. Also, hazardous products or activities, such as asbestos removal contracting, may be written on a claims-made form. However, most types of standard commercial business insurance are usually written on an occurrence form, including Commercial General Liability and Automobile Liability.

#### B. COMMONLY ENCOUNTERED INSURANCE COVERAGES

##### 1. Commercial General Liability Insurance

This coverage provides protection against bodily injury and property damage claims arising from the operations of a contractor, supplier or tenant. Coverage applies to premises operations, use of independent contractors, products and completed operations, personal injury, and contractual liability. Major exclusions include liability arising out of the ownership, maintenance or use of watercraft, aircraft and automobiles. Other insurance policies normally cover these exposures.

The policy limits all loss payments to two aggregate limits, one for products and completed operations and one for all other losses. The aggregate limit is the total amount the policy will pay in one year. Prior claims can exhaust the amount of insurance available to pay on a current claim. It is important to ask if there are any claims pending if the policy has an aggregate. If prior claims paid or filed exceed the policy annual aggregate, you are not receiving any coverage at all. In some cases, some policies may eliminate the aggregate limit. This form can be written on either a claims-made or an occurrence basis.

The Agency should require a Commercial General Liability insurance policy from all contractors and tenants. The older form titled Comprehensive General Liability has been phased out and replaced by this newer form.

## **2. Business Automobile Liability Insurance**

This coverage provides protection against liability claims arising out of the use of automobiles in the course of the Other Party's operations. The symbol used in the policy defines the scope of coverage. Below are the descriptions of automobile designation symbols from the standard Business Automobile Liability policy. Generally, you should require Code #1, which is the single broadest code, or #2 (owned), #8 (hired) and #9 (non-owned).

### **CODES USED IN BUSINESS AUTO POLICIES**

- 1 = ANY AUTO
- 2 = OWNED AUTOS ONLY  
Only those autos you own (and for liability coverage any trailers you don't own while attached to autos you own). This includes those autos you acquire ownership of after the policy begins.
- 3 = OWNED PRIVATE PASSENGER AUTOS ONLY  
Only the private passenger autos you own. This includes those private passenger autos you acquire ownership of after the policy begins.
- 4 = OWNED AUTOS OTHER THAN PRIVATE PASSENGER AUTOS  
Only those autos you own that are not of the private passenger type (and for liability coverage, any trailers you don't own while attached to autos you own). This includes those autos not of the private passenger type you acquire ownership of after the policy begins.
- 5 = OWNED AUTOS SUBJECT TO NO-FAULT  
Only those autos you own that are required to have No-Fault benefits in the state where they are licensed or principally garaged. This includes those autos you acquire ownership of after the policy begins.
- 6 = OWNED AUTOS SUBJECT TO A COMPULSORY UNINSURED MOTORISTS LAW  
Only those autos you own that because of the law in the state where they are

licensed or principally garaged are required to have and cannot reject uninsured motorists insurance. This includes autos you acquire ownership of after the policy begins.

- 7 = SPECIFICALLY DESCRIBED AUTOS  
Only those autos described for which a premium charge is shown (and for liability coverage any trailers you don't own while attached to autos specifically described).
- 8 = HIRED AUTOS ONLY  
Only those autos you lease, hire, rent or borrow. This does not include any auto you lease, hire, rent, or borrow from any of your employees or partners or members of their households.
- 9 = NON-OWNED AUTOS ONLY  
Only those autos you do not own, lease, hire, rent, or borrow that are used in connection with your business. This includes autos owned by your employees, partners, or board members or members of their households but only while used in your business or your personal affairs.

Automobile coverage requirements should be waived only when the Other Party's work clearly does not involve the use of an automobile. If any doubts exist, this coverage should be required.

**3. Workers Compensation and Employers Liability Insurance**

Workers compensation insurance provides statutory protection against bodily injury, sickness or disease sustained by employees of the Other Party in the scope of their employment. It should be required of any Other Party performing work for the Agency.

In Louisiana, the current Workers Compensation Statute 23:1035 exempts officers of a corporation, partners in a partnership, members of a limited liability company, and sole proprietors from electing Workers compensation coverage on themselves. If any of these types of employees of the Other Party will be doing any of the work or will be on the Agency's site performing services at any time, they must elect to carry Workers Compensation coverage on themselves and provide proof thereof.

Employers' liability coverage is usually included in workers compensation policies. It insures against claims of injured employees made in lieu of or in addition to a workers compensation claim. The policy should provide a waiver of subrogation in favor of the State as described in C. 10. below.

In addition, if the Other Party's employees may have an exposure under the U.S. Longshore and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act (LHWCA), Jones Act, or other maritime laws, then coverage should be included for those injuries or claims.

**C. OTHER TERMS AND TYPES OF INSURANCE**

**1. Contractual Liability**

This coverage provides protection for liability assumed by the insured in a contract or agreement.

This coverage should be required from all contractors and suppliers. It technically is not needed from tenants of Agency properties, as Commercial General Liability insurance includes contractual liability assumed in insured contracts, such as leases. An insured



contract is an agreement involving the insured's business, including construction, demolition and maintenance work, leases, and licenses. Indemnification of others because of tort liability, liability that is imposed by the law, is covered. Contractual liability insurance is usually included in the Commercial General Liability policy or it can be written as a separate coverage.

**2. Personal Injury and Advertising Liability**

This coverage insures liability for certain non-physical injuries, such as:

- a. False arrest, detention or imprisonment,
- b. Libel, slander or defamation, and
- c. Wrongful entry or eviction.

Personal injury liability insurance should be required of anyone dealing with the public, such as contract security guards. It is typically included in the Commercial General Liability policy or it can be written as a separate coverage.

**3. Broad Form Property Damage Liability**

This coverage provides important additional protection to contractors for liability arising out of damage they may cause to property they are working on. Agencies should require this coverage from the Other Party working on Agency premises.

It is typically included in the Commercial General Liability policy or it can be written as a separate coverage.

**4. Products and Completed Operations Liability**

This coverage insures liability for bodily injury or property damage resulting from:

- a. A product that is sold, handled or distributed by a supplier,
- b. Work completed by a contractor that is found to be faulty.

The Agency should require products and completed operations liability coverage from all contractors and suppliers, especially for products of a hazardous nature, such as guns and ammunition. Keep in mind that a distributor is not the same as a supplier and may not carry this coverage. Typically, this coverage is included in the Commercial General Liability policy.

**5. Liquor Liability**

If the tenant is not in the liquor-selling business, but is serving liquor for a single event, the Commercial General Liability policy is appropriate. If the tenant is in the business of manufacturing, distributing, selling, serving or giving alcoholic beverages to the public or is a landlord of such a business, special liquor liability coverage may be needed.

The Agency should require liquor liability coverage from every tenant that sells or serves alcoholic beverages on Agency property.

**6. Professional Liability**

This coverage insures the errors and omissions of specific professionals, including physicians, accountants, attorneys, engineers, etc. Medical malpractice is a specific term for physicians' professional liability coverage. Claims-made policies are the standard in this line of coverage.

The Agency should require professional liability when any of these types of professionals will be providing services.

**7. Aircraft Liability and Watercraft Liability Insurance**

These coverages protect the Other Party against liability for injury to other people and their property arising out of the ownership and/or use of aircraft or watercraft.

This coverage should be required of any contractor using aircraft or watercraft. Aircraft liability coverage should be extended to include passenger liability. Watercraft liability coverage should include Protection and Indemnity coverage for third-parties.

**8. Property Insurance**

This type of insurance protects against financial loss resulting from destruction of the insured's property by perils such as fire, wind, theft, etc. This is a different type of coverage than property damage liability insurance which covers the insured's legal liability for damage to others' property.

The Agency is responsible for property insurance on their own property and when it has a financial interest in property leased to others. The Agency will purchase the property insurance when it owns the building, rather than requiring the tenant to purchase coverage on behalf of the Agency. The advantages of the Agency purchasing the property insurance on their own property are that it

- a. Ensures that the right amount of coverage is purchased for the value of the property, and
- b. Ensures that premiums will be paid, thus avoiding cancellation for non-payment of premium.

***Case #1 – Agency Owns Building and Leases It to Other Party***

The Agency will require that the Other Party provide Commercial General Liability insurance and an indemnification/hold harmless agreement. If the Other Party is a residential tenant, they may provide a renters policy, which is commonly referred to in the insurance industry as an HO-4 policy, along with the indemnification/hold harmless agreement.

***Case #2 – Other Party Owns Building and Leases It to Agency***

If the Agency leases a building from an Other Party, the Other Party (owner of the building) shall provide coverage on the building structure and all of the non-state owned contents. The Agency shall provide coverage for State-owned contents only. Again, an indemnification/hold harmless agreement should be required from the Other Party to protect the Agency from the negligent actions of the Other Party.

***Case #3 – Other Party Owns Building on Agency Land***

The Other Party shall provide proof of insurance as follows:

- a. Property coverage using, at least, the Causes of Loss-Basic Form (sometimes referred to as fire and extended coverage) with the covered perils defined as fire, lightning, explosion, windstorm, hail, smoke, aircraft or vehicles, smoke, riot or civil commotion, vandalism, sprinkler leakage, sinkhole collapse, and volcanic

action, and

- b. Insure the building and contents to at least 90% of the replacement cost.
- c. The Agency should also be added as an additional insured on the Other Party's general liability policy and the Other Party shall issue an indemnification/hold harmless agreement protecting the Agency from the negligent actions of the Other Party.

#### ***Case #4 – Agency Owns Building on Other Party's Land***

The Agency should request an indemnification/hold harmless agreement from the owner of the land (Other Party) for the negligent actions of the Other Party not relating to occurrences which are the negligence of the State.

#### **9. Builders Risk**

This provides property coverage for buildings under construction. It protects both the owner and the contractor because both have a financial investment in the project until it is completed. Once completed and turned over to the owner, the builders risk coverage ends and a regular property policy then insures the building. Builders risk has nearly identical wording of a property policy and covers the same types of perils.

This coverage should be required of any general contractor constructing a new building, adding an addition to an existing structure, or renovating a building where the majority of the building is under the contractor's control. Demolition of a building is not considered construction and this coverage is not needed.

In the case of a specialized contractor providing installation services, such as roofing, drywall, or carpet installation or an HVAC equipment contractor, an "Installation Floater" is needed in lieu of a Builders Risk policy. An installation floater provides many of the same coverages but is tailored for specialty contractors.

#### **10. Bonds**

Surety: Guarantees that the Other Party will meet its financial obligations during the term of the contract

Fidelity (Dishonesty): Protects the Agency from dishonest acts of the Other Party's employees

Performance: Guarantees Other Party's satisfactory completion of the contracted project

The type of work being done will dictate which bonds are applicable. L.R.S. 38:2241(A)(2) requires that a surety bond be provided by the contractor for all public construction contracts over \$25,000.

#### **11. Crime Coverage**

This protects the Other Party from the loss of property or money due to the criminal actions of a third party. Examples include break-ins where there is obvious forced entry and hijacking of armored cars transporting money. Policy limits are determined based on the estimated maximum amount of property/funds that would be targeted for theft at any one time.

#### **12. Pollution Liability**

This provides specialized coverage for hazardous operations and activities that could damage the environment. Contractors working with any type of potential pollutant, such as oil, gasoline, asbestos, hazardous waste, lead, etc. must carry this coverage for both gradual release and sudden and accidental release. Claims-made policies are the standard in this line of coverage.

The Agency should require pollution liability when a contractor will be remediating, transporting, or maintaining hazardous materials, even incidentally, during the course of its work for the Agency.

**13. X, C, U Hazard Liability**

X = Explosion

C = Collapse

U = Damage to underground property

Commercial General Liability policies automatically insure liability for these risks, as they are NOT excluded in the policy. However, they may be excluded by endorsement. Certain types of contractors may have to pay additional premiums to buy back these coverages because of their high exposure.

**14. Waiver of Subrogation**

Waiver of subrogation means that one party relinquishes the right to seek reimbursement for a loss they have paid from the party responsible for that loss. It is often required that a waiver of subrogation be added to a Contractor's workers compensation policy to prevent the workers compensation insurer from paying the claim of the Contractor's injured employee and then seeking reimbursement from the Agency (for example, if a defect in the Agency's premises caused the injury).

**15. Owners Protective Liability (OPL) – formerly known as Owners and Contractors Protective Liability (OCP)**

An Agency may be exposed to vicarious liability for the actions of independent contractors. Even if an Agency exercises no control over the way in which work is performed by its independent contractor, the Agency can still be held liable for injury or damage arising out of the independent contractor's work in certain circumstances.

The OPL policy is usually purchased by the contractor in the name of the party for whom the work is to be done (owner). The contractor or subcontractor purchasing it has limited coverage under this type of policy.

Per R.S. 9:2780.1 of the Regular Session 2010, specific contracts, most importantly construction contracts, cannot require the contractor to purchase liability insurance to cover the acts or omissions of the project owner when an indemnification agreement is present in the contract. Therefore, an OPL policy is not required as part of these insurance recommendations. If an OPL is needed for a specific project, consult the Underwriting unit at ORM for further guidance.

**C. Hold Harmless Versus Indemnification Agreements**

Although they are often used interchangeably, there are subtle but distinct differences between hold harmless agreements and indemnification agreements.

A hold harmless agreement is a legal arrangement in which one party agrees to hold the other party free from responsibility for any liability or damage caused to the first party that might arise out of the other party's implementation of the contract. Simple hold harmless agreements can also be called "waivers of liability". For example, many leases include a hold harmless clause in which the tenant agrees not to sue the landlord if the tenant is injured due to the landlord's failure to maintain the premises.

An indemnification agreement is a legal arrangement where one party agrees to make the other party "whole" by paying for loss the first party may suffer due to the other party's implementation of the contract. For example, a tenant may agree in a lease to indemnify the landlord for any damages incurred by the landlord due to the tenant's actions. The term "indemnify" means to compensate or pay on behalf of. Indemnity will include, not only payment for damages, but also the cost of legal defense if a third-party files a lawsuit against both parties to the contract for damages that they incurred. The person who pays for another is called the indemnitor and the person who receives the payment from another is called the indemnitee.

Most often you will see a combination of hold harmless and indemnification wording together in one agreement. One party desires to have the other party hold them harmless for any liability AND pay for their losses and/or defense. The most advantageous wording for the Agency's protection includes all three terms: "The Other Party agrees to hold harmless, defend, and indemnify the Agency..."

L. R. S. 38:2195 limits the State from assuming liability for injuries or damages caused by the negligence or fault of any other party besides the State itself. The hold harmless/indemnification agreements found in this manual are worded carefully to comply with this law as not to provide intent for the State to assume and pay for another's negligence.

## CHAPTER 5

### WHICH EXHIBIT TO USE

The following describes which insurance wording is needed for different types of contracts. The insurance wording found in Exhibits A, B, or C should be made part of all Agency bid specifications and should be included in the contract between the Agency and the Other Party.

If it is determined that Exhibit C is to be used, then the Indemnification Agreement for joint ventures needs to be drafted separately because of the complexity of issues of joint ventures as described in Chapter 3. Contact your Agency's legal counsel or the Underwriting Unit at ORM for guidance.

If the contract involves a large construction project, use Exhibit D in its entirety ONLY.

Examples of contracts which fall under the Exhibits are as follows:

<u>EXHIBIT A</u>	<u>EXHIBIT B</u>	<u>EXHIBIT D</u>
Janitorial Services	Leases	Large New Construction
Movers	Tenants	Building Additions
Equipment Maintenance	Renters	Building-wide Renovations
Towing Services	<i>Use of Premises for:</i>	
Tree/Landscape Services	Weddings	
Welding	Club Functions	
Plumbing	Meetings	
Painting	Dances	
Electrical	Craft Exhibits	
Fireworks	Classes	
Engineers	Animal Shows	
Architects	<i>Use of Property for Recreational Activities:</i>	
Consultants	Sporting Events	
Concessionaires	Picnics	
Supplies (Installation required)	Camping	

## CHAPTER 6

### **INSURANCE AND INDEMNIFICATION** **ADDITIONAL EXPLANATION OF EXHIBITS A - D**

Before commencing work, the Other Party shall obtain at its own cost and expense the following insurance placed with insurance companies authorized to do business in the State of Louisiana with A.M. Best ratings of **A-:VI or higher**. The Other Party shall provide evidence of such insurance as required by the Agency. The Certificates of insurance shall confirm that a thirty-day policy cancellation notice has been provided to the Agency for all of the following stated insurance policies. All cancellation notices shall name the Other Party and identify the agreement or contract number.

A. **Workers Compensation**

Workers Compensation insurance shall be in compliance with the Workers Compensation law of the State of the Other Party's headquarters. Employers Liability is included with a minimum limit of \$500,000 per accident/per person/per disease. If work is to be performed over water and involves maritime exposure, applicable LHWCA, Jones Act, or other maritime law coverage shall be included and the Employers Liability limit increased to a minimum of \$1,000,000. If A.M. Best's insurance company rating requirement may be waived for workers compensation coverage only.

B. **Commercial General Liability**

Commercial General Liability insurance, including Personal and Advertising Injury Liability, shall have a minimum limit per occurrence of \$1,000,000 and a minimum general aggregate of \$2,000,000. The Insurance Services Office (ISO) Commercial General Liability occurrence coverage form CG 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. Claims-made form is unacceptable.

C. **Automobile Liability**

Automobile Liability Insurance shall have a minimum combined single limit per occurrence of \$1,000,000. The ISO form number CA 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. This insurance shall include third-party bodily injury and property damage liability for the following automobile coverage classes:

1. Owned automobiles
2. Hired automobiles
3. Non-owned automobiles

Location of operations shall be "All Locations".

Note: If the vendor/contractor does not own an automobile and an automobile is utilized in the execution of the contract, then only hired and non-owned coverage is acceptable. If an automobile is not utilized in the execution of the contract, then automobile coverage is not required.

D. **Professional Liability**

Professional Liability shall have minimum limit of \$1,000,000. Claims-made coverage is acceptable. This coverage may be listed in the "Special Conditions" of the bid/contract.

- E. If at any time an insurer issuing any such policy does not meet the minimum A.M. Best rating, the Other Party shall obtain a policy with an insurer that meets the A.M. Best rating and shall submit another Certificate of Insurance as required in the contract. Upon failure of the Other Party to furnish, deliver and maintain such insurance as above provided, this contract, at the election of the Agency, may be suspended, discontinued or terminated. Failure of the Other Party to purchase and/or maintain any required insurance shall not relieve the Other Party from any

liability or indemnification under the contract.

F. All Certificates of Insurance of the Other Party shall reflect the following:

- 1) The Other Party's insurer will have no right of recovery or subrogation against the Agency. It is the intention of the parties that the Other Party's insurance policies shall protect both parties and shall be the primary coverage for any and all losses that occur under the contract.
- 2) The Agency shall be named as an additional insured as regards negligence by the contractor. The ISO Form CG 20 10 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used when applicable.
- 3) The insurance companies issuing the policy or policies shall have no recourse against the Agency for payment of any premiums or for assessments under any form of the policy or policies.

G. The following Indemnification Agreement shall be a provision of the contract:

The Other Party agrees to save and hold harmless, protect, defend, and indemnify the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards and Commissions, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers, from and against any and all claims, demands, expenses and liability arising out of injury or death to any person or the damage, loss or destruction of any property which may occur or in any way grow out of any act or omission of the Other Party, its agents, servants and employees, or any and all costs, expenses and/or attorney fees incurred by the Other Party as a result of any claim, demands, and/or causes of action, except those claims, demands, and/or causes of action arising out of the negligence of the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards, Commissions, its agents, representatives, employees and volunteers. The Other Party agrees to investigate, handle, respond to, provide defense for and defend any such claims, demands or suits at its sole expense and agrees to bear all other costs and expenses related thereto, even if the claim, demand or suit is groundless, false or fraudulent.

- H. Any deductibles or self-insured retentions must be declared to and accepted by the Agency. Any and all deductibles shall be assumed in their entirety by the Other Party.
- I. All property losses caused by the actions of the Other Party shall be adjusted with and made payable to the Agency.
- J. Neither the acceptance of the completed work nor payment shall release the Other Party from the insurance requirements and indemnification agreement obligations.
- K. Additional insurance may be required on an individual basis for hazardous activities and specific service agreements. If such additional insurance is required for a specific contract, that requirement should be added to the list of required coverages found in the appropriate Exhibit.
- L. If the Other Party does not continue to comply with all of the insurance requirements at any time during the contract or at contract renewal, the Agency has the following options:
1. Payments to the Other Party may be withheld until the requirements have been met;
  2. The Agency may pay any renewal policy premiums and withhold such payments from any monies due the Other Party;
  3. The Agency may suspend, discontinue or terminate the contract.



## CHAPTER 7

### OBTAINING PROOF OF COMPLIANCE

It is standard practice for the Other Party to submit a Certificate of Insurance as proof of compliance with insurance requirements contained in any bid or contract. The Acord™ Certificate Form is the most widely accepted form in the insurance industry. The Certificate must be signed by an authorized representative of the Other Party's insurer and sent to the Agency before work can begin.

The Certificate is for informational purposes and it imparts no rights upon the Certificate Holder that have not already been provided in the actual insurance policy. The insurance codes of some states limit Certificate Holder's rights and various court decisions may affect a Certificate Holder's rights; consequently, the Agency should also obtain a signed Indemnification/Hold Harmless Agreement in addition to Certificates.

Items that must be added by endorsement to the Other Party's insurance are not automatic, including naming the Agency as an additional insured, providing a waiver of subrogation in favor of the Agency, and any specific notification requirements. The Other Party's insurance agent should obtain all necessary endorsements first and then issue the Certificate of Insurance describing the coverage that has already been put in place.

LA R.S. 22:890 and the Louisiana Department of Insurance (LDI) Regulation 99 specifically govern the issuance of Certificates of Insurance. Certificate forms and the verbiage that can be written on them are heavily regulated through the LDI. Actual policies of insurance may have to be obtained from the Other Party to completely confirm that all insurance requirements have been met.

Problems can be eliminated by properly reviewing the Certificate of Insurance and/or insurance policies either during bid evaluations or before the contract is signed. It is important that the Agency assess the financial stability of the Other Party's insurers. Using the A.M. Best rating system ([www.ambest.com](http://www.ambest.com)), this is more easily accomplished. If the insurer meets or exceeds the rating in the insurance requirements, then the insurance company is acceptable. If an insurer does not meet the minimum A.M. Best rating, the Other Party shall obtain a policy with an insurer that does meet the A.M. Best rating at the Agency's request.

Keep in mind that if the contract is longer than one year or the policy period of the insurance expires during the contract period, then the Agency must make sure the insurance has been renewed by requesting an updated Certificate of Insurance. It may be helpful to place a coverage check on a 30 day diary prior to the insurance expiration date of policies expiring during the project. If, at diary date, coverage renewal or replacement hasn't taken place, the Other Party should be informed that a new Certificate of Insurance needs to be completed. The Agency should request confirmation of continued coverage immediately and the Certificates of Insurance and/or insurance policies returned promptly before the coverage expiration date.

All Certificates of Insurance associated with a particular contract must be kept for a minimum of five years, since this may be the only record of coverage available. The Other Party's insurer must be notified in writing immediately of any incidents or claims arising out of the Other Party's actions or products. Because some policies impose strict deadlines on claims reporting, immediate notification is always essential to avoid coverage problems in this area.

The following pages include a basic Certificate review checklist. The Agency can modify it to include their exact standard insurance requirements.

Also, an example of a standard Certificate of Insurance is included to illustrate the recommended insurance coverages and limits.

### Certificate Review Checklist

No**	Yes	
		<b>Date</b> of issue is current
		<b>Producer:</b> Name and contact information of the insurance broker/agency is listed
		<b>Insured:</b> EXACT name and address of Other Party that is under contract with the Agency
		<b>Insurers Affording Coverage:</b> Each insurance company has an A.M. Best Rating of A-: VI, EXCEPT the Workers Compensation insurer ( <a href="http://www.ambest.com">www.ambest.com</a> ),
		<b>Coverages: General Liability</b>
		Occurrence box is marked
		General Aggregate Limit Applies Per Project is marked
		“ADDL INSR” box is checked or has a “Y”
		“SUBR WVD” box is checked or has a “Y”
		Policy Number is listed
		Policy Effective and Expiration Dates are listed AND the contract start date falls within the dates listed
		Each Occurrence limit is at least \$1,000,000
		Personal Injury Limit is at least \$1,000,000
		General Aggregate Limit is at least \$2,000,000
		Products-Completed Operations Aggregate (if applicable) is at least \$2,000,000
		<b>Coverages: Automobile Liability</b>
		Any Auto is marked OR All Owned, Hired and Non-Owned Autos are marked
		“ADDL INSR” box is checked or has a “Y”
		“SUBR WVD” box is checked or has a “Y”
		Policy Number is listed
		Policy Effective and Expiration Dates are listed AND the contract start date falls within the dates listed
		Combined Single Limit is at least \$1,000,000

No**	Yes	
		<b>Coverages: Excess/Umbrella Liability (if listed)</b>
		Occurrence box is marked
		“ADDL INSR” box is checked or has a “Y”
		“SUBR WVD” box is checked or has a “Y”
		Policy Number is listed
		Policy Effective and Expiration Dates are listed AND the contract start date falls within the dates listed
		Each Occurrence and Aggregate Limit is listed AND, if the CGL and AL limits above do NOT meet the insurance requirements, by adding this excess/umbrella limit to each now make CGL and AL meet the requirements
		<b>Coverages: Workers Compensation and Employers Liability</b>
		Any Proprietor/Partner/Executive Officer/Member Excluded? is marked No. If it is Yes, then names should be listed in Special Provisions section. Make sure those names are NOT working on site under the Agency contract. If they will be, then their Workers Comp is out of compliance.
		“SUBR WVD” box is checked or has a “Y”
		Policy Number is listed
		Policy Effective and Expiration Dates are listed AND the contract start date falls within the dates listed
		Employers Liability Each Accident/Disease Each Employee/Disease Policy Limit is at least \$500,00 (\$1,000,000 if work is over water)
		LHWCA, Jones Act, or other maritime law coverage is listed, if applicable
		<b>Coverages: Other (if listed)</b> ( May be listed as Professional Liability, Pollution Liability, Aircraft Liability, Watercraft Liability, etc.)
		“ADDL INSR” box is checked or has a “Y”, if applicable to the coverage listed
		“SUBR WVD” box is checked or has a “Y”, if applicable to the coverage listed
		Policy Number is listed
		Policy Effective and Expiration Dates are listed AND the contract start date falls within the dates listed
		Each Occurrence liability limit is at least \$1,000,000
		<b>Coverages: Description of Operations/Locations/Etc.</b>
		<b>Certificate Holder</b> is the name and address of your Agency
		<b>Authorized Representative</b> section is signed

\*\*If any of the above are marked “No”, then reviewer must contact the Other Party for further explanation. If the explanation is reasonable and will not affect the Agency’s protection under the Other Party’s insurance and/or cause increased liability to the State, then it can be accepted. Please contact the

Underwriting Unit at ORM for assistance if needed.

**Certificate listing all required coverages**

[Click here for Example Certificate in pdf format](#)

## **EXHIBITS AND SUPPLEMENTS**

Exhibit A - Insurance Requirements for Contractors

Exhibit B - Insurance Requirements for Lessee  
(No Auto Risks)

Exhibit C - Insurance Requirements for Joint Ventures

Exhibit D - Insurance Requirements for New Construction, Additions and  
Large Renovations

Exhibit E - Indemnification/Hold Harmless Agreement

## EXHIBIT A

### **INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR CONTRACTORS**

The Contractor shall purchase and maintain for the duration of the contract insurance against claims for injuries to persons or damages to property which may arise from or in connection with the performance of the work hereunder by the Contractor, its agents, representatives, employees or subcontractors.

#### **A. MINIMUM SCOPE AND LIMITS OF INSURANCE**

1. **Workers Compensation**

Workers Compensation insurance shall be in compliance with the Workers Compensation law of the State of the Contractor's headquarters. Employers Liability is included with a minimum limit of \$500,000 per accident/per disease/per employee. If work is to be performed over water and involves maritime exposure, applicable LHWCA, Jones Act, or other maritime law coverage shall be included and the Employers Liability limit increased to a minimum of \$1,000,000. A.M. Best's insurance company rating requirement may be waived for workers compensation coverage only.

2. **Commercial General Liability**

Commercial General Liability insurance, including Personal and Advertising Injury Liability, shall have a minimum limit per occurrence of \$1,000,000 and a minimum general aggregate of \$2,000,000. The Insurance Services Office (ISO) Commercial General Liability occurrence coverage form CG 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. Claims-made form is unacceptable.

3. **Automobile Liability**

Automobile Liability Insurance shall have a minimum combined single limit per occurrence of \$1,000,000. ISO form number CA 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. This insurance shall include third-party bodily injury and property damage liability for owned, hired and non-owned automobiles.

#### **B. DEDUCTIBLES AND SELF-INSURED RETENTIONS**

Any deductibles or self-insured retentions must be declared to and accepted by the Agency. The Contractor shall be responsible for all deductibles and self-insured retentions.

#### **C. OTHER INSURANCE PROVISIONS**

The policies are to contain, or be endorsed to contain, the following provisions:

1. General Liability and Automobile Liability Coverages

- a. The Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers shall be named as an additional insured as regards negligence by the contractor. ISO Form CG 20 10 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used when applicable. The coverage shall contain no special limitations on the scope of protection afforded to the Agency.
- b. The Contractor's insurance shall be primary as respects the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers. Any insurance or self-insurance maintained by the Agency shall be excess and non-contributory of the Contractor's insurance.
- c. Any failure of the Contractor to comply with reporting provisions of the policy shall not affect coverage provided to the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers.
- d. The Contractor's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whom claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the policy limits.

## 2. Workers Compensation and Employers Liability Coverage

The insurer shall agree to waive all rights of subrogation against the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers for losses arising from work performed by the Contractor for the Agency.

## 3. All Coverages

- a. Coverage shall not be canceled, suspended, or voided by either party (the Contractor or the insurer) or reduced in coverage or in limits except after 30 days written notice has been given to the Agency. Ten-day written notice of cancellation is acceptable for non-payment of premium. Notifications shall comply with the standard cancellation provisions in the Contractor's policy.
- b. Neither the acceptance of the completed work nor the payment thereof shall release the Contractor from the obligations of the insurance requirements or indemnification agreement.
- c. The insurance companies issuing the policies shall have no recourse against the Agency for payment of premiums or for assessments under any form of the policies.
- d. Any failure of the Contractor to comply with reporting provisions of the policy shall not affect coverage provided to the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers.

## **D. ACCEPTABILITY OF INSURERS**

All required insurance shall be provided by a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located. Insurance shall be placed with insurers with a A.M. Best's rating of **A-:VI or higher**. This rating requirement may be waived for workers compensation coverage only.

If at any time an insurer issuing any such policy does not meet the minimum A.M. Best rating, the Contractor shall obtain a policy with an insurer that meets the A.M. Best rating and shall submit another Certificate of Insurance as required in the contract.

## **E. VERIFICATION OF COVERAGE**

Contractor shall furnish the Agency with Certificates of insurance reflecting proof of required coverage. The Certificates for each insurance policy are to be signed by a person authorized by that insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. The Certificates are to be received and approved by the Agency before work commences and upon any contract renewal thereafter.

In addition to the Certificates, Contractor shall submit the declarations page and the cancellation provision endorsement for each insurance policy. The Agency reserves the right to request complete certified copies of all required insurance policies at any time.

Upon failure of the Contractor to furnish, deliver and maintain such insurance as above provided, this contract, at the election of the Agency, may be suspended, discontinued or terminated. Failure of the Contractor to purchase and/or maintain any required insurance shall not relieve the Contractor from any liability or indemnification under the contract.

## **F. SUBCONTRACTORS**

Contractor shall include all subcontractors as insureds under its policies OR shall be responsible for verifying and maintaining the Certificates provided by each subcontractor. Subcontractors shall be subject to all of the requirements stated herein. The Agency reserves the right to request copies of



subcontractor's Certificates at any time.

**G. WORKERS COMPENSATION INDEMNITY**

In the event Contractor is not required to provide or elects not to provide workers compensation coverage, the parties hereby agree that Contractor, its owners, agents and employees will have no cause of action against, and will not assert a claim against, the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees as an employer, whether pursuant to the Louisiana Workers Compensation Act or otherwise, under any circumstance. The parties also hereby agree that the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees shall in no circumstance be, or considered as, the employer or statutory employer of Contractor, its owners, agents and employees. The parties further agree that Contractor is a wholly independent contractor and is exclusively responsible for its employees, owners, and agents. Contractor hereby agrees to protect, defend, indemnify and hold the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees harmless from any such assertion or claim that may arise from the performance of this contract.

**H. INDEMNIFICATION/HOLD HARMLESS AGREEMENT**

Contractor agrees to protect, defend, indemnify, save, and hold harmless, the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards and Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees, and volunteers, from and against any and all claims, damages, expenses, and liability arising out of injury or death to any person or the damage, loss or destruction of any property which may occur, or in any way grow out of, any act or omission of Contractor, its agents, servants, and employees, or any and all costs, expenses and/or attorney fees incurred by Contractor as a result of any claims, demands, suits or causes of action, except those claims, demands, suits, or causes of action arising out of the negligence of the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards, Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees and volunteers.

Contractor agrees to investigate, handle, respond to, provide defense for and defend any such claims, demands, suits, or causes of action at its sole expense and agrees to bear all other costs and expenses related thereto, even if the claims, demands, suits, or causes of action are groundless, false or fraudulent.

## EXHIBIT B

### **INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR LESSEES (NO AUTO RISKS)**

Lessee shall purchase and maintain for the duration of the contract insurance against claims for injuries to persons or damages to property which may arise from or in connection with the Lessee's operation and use of the leased premises. The cost of such insurance shall be borne by the Lessee.

#### **A. MINIMUM SCOPE AND LIMITS OF INSURANCE**

##### **1. Workers Compensation**

Workers Compensation insurance shall be in compliance with the Workers Compensation law of the State of the Contractor's headquarters. Employers Liability is included with a minimum limit of \$500,000 per accident/per disease/per employee. If work is to be performed over water and involves maritime exposure, applicable LHWCA, Jones Act, or other maritime law coverage shall be included and the Employers Liability limit increased to a minimum of \$1,000,000. A.M. Best's insurance company rating requirement may be waived for workers compensation coverage only.

##### **2. Commercial General Liability**

Commercial General Liability insurance, including Personal and Advertising Injury Liability, shall have a minimum limit per occurrence of \$1,000,000 and a minimum general aggregate of \$2,000,000. The Insurance Services Office (ISO) Commercial General Liability occurrence coverage form CG 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. Claims-made form is unacceptable.

#### **B. DEDUCTIBLES AND SELF-INSURED RETENTIONS**

Any deductibles or self-insured retentions must be declared to and accepted by the Agency. The Contractor shall be responsible for all deductibles and self-insured retentions.

#### **C. OTHER INSURANCE PROVISIONS**

The policies are to contain, or be endorsed to contain, the following provisions:

##### **1. General Liability Coverage**

- a. The Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers shall be named as an additional insured as regards negligence by the contractor. ISO Form CG 20 10 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used when applicable. The coverage shall contain no special limitations on the scope of protection afforded to the Agency.
- b. The Lessee's insurance shall be primary as respects the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers. Any insurance or self-insurance maintained by the Agency shall be excess and non-contributory of the Lessee's insurance.
- c. Any failure of the Lessee to comply with reporting provisions of the policy shall not affect coverage provided to the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers.
- d. The Lessee's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whom claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the policy limits.

##### **2. Workers Compensation and Employers Liability Coverage**

The insurer shall agree to waive all rights of subrogation against the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers for losses arising from or in connection with the Lessee's operation and use of the leased premises.

### 3. **All Coverages**

- a. Coverage shall not be canceled, suspended, or voided by either party (the Lessee or the insurer) or reduced in coverage or in limits except after 30 days written notice has been given to the Agency. Ten-day written notice of cancellation is acceptable for non-payment of premium. Notifications shall comply with the standard cancellation provisions in the Lessee's policy.
- b. The insurance companies issuing the policies shall have no recourse against the Agency for payment of premiums or for assessments under any form of the policies.
- c. Any failure of the Lessee to comply with reporting provisions of the policy shall not affect coverage provided to the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers.

### **D. ACCEPTABILITY OF INSURERS**

All required insurance shall be provided by a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in Louisiana. Insurance shall be placed with insurers with a A.M. Best's rating of **A-:VI or higher**. This rating requirement may be waived for workers compensation coverage only.

If at any time an insurer issuing any such policy does not meet the minimum A.M. Best rating, the Lessee shall obtain a policy with an insurer that meets the A.M. Best rating and shall submit another Certificate of Insurance as required in the contract.

### **E. VERIFICATION OF COVERAGE**

Lessee shall furnish the Agency with Certificates of insurance reflecting proof of required coverage. The Certificates for each insurance policy are to be signed by a person authorized by that insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. The Certificates are to be received and approved by the Agency before work commences and upon any contract renewal thereafter.

In addition to the Certificates, Contractor shall submit the declarations page and the cancellation provision endorsement for each insurance policy. The Agency reserves the right to request complete certified copies of all required insurance policies at any time.

Upon failure of the Lessee to furnish, deliver and maintain such insurance as above provided, this contract, at the election of the Agency, may be suspended, discontinued or terminated. Failure of the Lessee to purchase and/or maintain any required insurance shall not relieve the Lessee from any liability or indemnification under the contract.

### **F. SUB-LEASES**

If sub-leases are acceptable to the Agency, primary Lessee shall be responsible for verifying and maintaining the Certificates provided by each sub-lessee. Sub-lessees shall be subject to all of the requirements stated herein. The Agency reserves the right to request copies of sublessees' Certificates at any time.

### **G. WORKERS COMPENSATION INDEMNITY**

In the event Lessee is not required to provide or elects not to provide workers compensation coverage, the parties hereby agree that Lessee, its owners, agents and employees will have no cause of action against, and will not assert a claim against, the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees as an employer, whether pursuant to the Louisiana Workers Compensation Act or otherwise, under any circumstance. The parties also hereby agree that the

State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees shall in no circumstance be, or considered as, the employer or statutory employer of Lessee, its owners, agents and employees. The parties further agree that Lessee is a wholly independent contractor and is exclusively responsible for its employees, owners, and agents. Lessee hereby agrees to protect, defend, indemnify and hold the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees harmless from any such assertion or claim that may arise from the performance of this contract.

**H. INDEMNIFICATION/HOLD HARMLESS AGREEMENT**

Lessee agrees to protect, defend, indemnify, save, and hold harmless, the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards and Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees, and volunteers, from and against any and all claims, damages, expenses, and liability arising out of injury or death to any person or the damage, loss or destruction of any property which may occur, or in any way grow out of, any act or omission of Lessee, its agents, servants, and employees, or any and all costs, expenses and/or attorney fees incurred by Lessee as a result of any claims, demands, suits or causes of action, except those claims, demands, suits, or causes of action arising out of the negligence of the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards, Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees and volunteers.

Lessee agrees to investigate, handle, respond to, provide defense for and defend any such claims, demands, suits, or causes of action at its sole expense and agrees to bear all other costs and expenses related thereto, even if the claims, demands, suits, or causes of action are groundless, false or fraudulent.

## EXHIBIT C

### INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR JOINT VENTURES

The Contractor which enters into a joint venture with the Agency shall purchase and maintain for the duration of the joint venture insurance against claims for injuries to persons or damages to property which may arise from or in connection with the performance of the work hereunder by the Contractor, his agents, representatives, employees or subcontractors.

#### **A. MINIMUM SCOPE AND LIMITS OF INSURANCE**

##### **1. Workers Compensation**

Workers Compensation insurance shall be in compliance with the Workers Compensation law of the State of the Contractor's headquarters. Employers Liability is included with a minimum limit of \$500,000 per accident/per disease/per employee. If work is to be performed over water and involves maritime exposure, applicable LHWCA, Jones Act, or other maritime law coverage shall be included and the Employers Liability limit increased to a minimum of \$1,000,000. A.M. Best's insurance company rating requirement may be waived for workers compensation coverage only.

##### **2. Commercial General Liability**

Commercial General Liability insurance, including Personal and Advertising Injury Liability, shall have a minimum limit per occurrence of \$1,000,000 and a minimum general aggregate of \$2,000,000. The Insurance Services Office (ISO) Commercial General Liability occurrence coverage form CG 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. Claims-made form is unacceptable.

##### **3. Automobile Liability**

Automobile Liability Insurance shall have a minimum combined single limit per occurrence of \$1,000,000. ISO form number CA 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. This insurance shall include third-party bodily injury and property damage liability for owned, hired and non-owned automobiles.

#### **B. DEDUCTIBLES AND SELF-INSURED RETENTIONS**

Any deductibles or self-insured retentions must be declared to and accepted by the Agency. The Contractor shall be responsible for all deductibles and self-insured retentions.

#### **D. OTHER INSURANCE PROVISIONS**

The policies are to contain, or be endorsed to contain, the following provisions:

##### **1. General Liability and Automobile Liability Coverages**

- a. The Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers shall be named as an additional insured as regards negligence by the contractor. ISO Form CG 20 10 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used when applicable. The coverage shall contain no special limitations on the scope of protection afforded to the Agency.
- b. If it can be determined that the claim or occurrence was a direct result of the negligence of the Contractor, the Contractor's insurance coverage shall be primary insurance as respects the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers. Any insurance or self-insurance maintained by the Agency, its officers, agents, employees or volunteers shall be excess of the Contractor's insurance and shall not contribute with it. If it is determined that the claim or occurrence is the direct result of the Agency, then the Agency's insurance coverage shall be

primary. If it is not clear as to the negligent party in the event of a loss or both party's contributed to the negligent act that caused the loss, both the Contractor's and the Agency's insurance shall share equally in the payment of the claim.

- c. Any failure of the Contractor to comply with reporting provisions of the policy shall not affect coverage provided to the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers.
- d. The Contractor's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whom claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the policy limits.

## 2. **Workers Compensation and Employers Liability Coverage**

The insurer shall agree to waive all rights of subrogation against the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers for losses arising from work performed by the Contractor in conjunction with the Joint Venture.

## 3. **All Coverages**

- d. Coverage shall not be canceled, suspended, or voided by either party (the Contractor or the insurer) or reduced in coverage or in limits except after 30 days written notice has been given to the Agency. Ten-day written notice of cancellation is acceptable for non-payment of premium. Notifications shall comply with the standard cancellation provisions in the Contractor's policy.
- e. Neither the acceptance of the completed work nor the payment thereof shall release the Contractor from the obligations of the insurance requirements or indemnification agreement.
- f. The insurance companies issuing the policies shall have no recourse against the Agency for payment of premiums or for assessments under any form of the policies.
- g. Any failure of the Contractor to comply with reporting provisions of the policy shall not affect coverage provided to the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers.

## **D. ACCEPTABILITY OF INSURERS**

All required insurance shall be provided by a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located. Insurance shall be placed with insurers with a A.M. Best's rating of **A-:VI or higher**. This rating requirement may be waived for workers compensation coverage only.

If at any time an insurer issuing any such policy does not meet the minimum A.M. Best rating, the Contractor shall obtain a policy with an insurer that meets the A.M. Best rating and shall submit another Certificate of Insurance as required in the contract.

## **E. VERIFICATION OF COVERAGE**

Contractor shall furnish the Agency with Certificates of Insurance reflecting proof of required coverage. The Certificates for each insurance policy are to be signed by a person authorized by that insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. The Certificates are to be received and approved by the Agency before work commences and upon any contract renewal thereafter.

Contractor shall furnish the Agency with Certificates of Insurance reflecting proof of required coverage. The Certificates for each insurance policy are to be signed by a person authorized by that insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. The Certificates are to be received and approved by the Agency before work commences and upon any contract renewal thereafter.

In addition to the Certificates, Contractor shall submit the declarations page and the cancellation provision endorsement for each insurance policy. The Agency reserves the right to request complete certified copies of all required insurance policies at any time.

Upon failure of the Contractor to furnish, deliver and maintain such insurance as above provided, this contract, at the election of the Agency, may be suspended, discontinued or terminated. Failure of the Contractor to purchase and/or maintain any required insurance shall not relieve the Contractor from any liability or indemnification under the contract.

**F. SUBCONTRACTORS**

Contractor shall include all subcontractors as insureds under its policies OR shall be responsible for verifying and maintaining the Certificates provided by each subcontractor. Subcontractors shall be subject to all of the requirements stated herein. The Agency reserves the right to request copies of subcontractor's Certificates at any time.

**G. WORKERS COMPENSATION INDEMNITY**

In the event Contractor is not required to provide or elects not to provide workers compensation coverage, the parties hereby agree that Contractor, its owners, agents and employees will have no cause of action against, and will not assert a claim against, the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees as an employer, whether pursuant to the Louisiana Workers Compensation Act or otherwise, under any circumstance. The parties also hereby agree that the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees shall in no circumstance be, or considered as, the employer or statutory employer of Contractor, its owners, agents and employees. The parties further agree that Contractor is a wholly independent contractor and is exclusively responsible for its employees, owners, and agents. Contractor hereby agrees to protect, defend, indemnify and hold the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees harmless from any such assertion or claim that may arise from the performance of this contract.

**H. INDEMNIFICATION/HOLD HARMLESS AGREEMENT**

Contractor agrees to protect, defend, indemnify, save, and hold harmless, the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards and Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees, and volunteers, from and against any and all claims, damages, expenses, and liability arising out of injury or death to any person or the damage, loss or destruction of any property which may occur, or in any way grow out of, any act or omission of Contractor, its agents, servants, and employees, or any and all costs, expenses and/or attorney fees incurred by Contractor as a result of any claims, demands, suits or causes of action, except those claims, demands, suits, or causes of action arising out of the negligence of the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards, Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees and volunteers.

Contractor agrees to investigate, handle, respond to, provide defense for and defend any such claims, demands, suits, or causes of action at its sole expense and agrees to bear all other costs and expenses related thereto, even if the claims, demands, suits, or causes of action are groundless, false or fraudulent.

**EXHIBIT D**

**INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS**  
**FOR NEW CONSTRUCTION, ADDITIONS AND LARGE RENOVATIONS**

The Contractor shall purchase and maintain without interruption for the duration of the contract insurance against claims for injuries to persons or damages to property which may arise from or in connection with the performance of the work hereunder by the Contractor, its agents, representatives, employees or subcontractors, or anyone employed directly or indirectly by any of them. The duration of the contract shall be from the inception of the contract until the date of final payment.

**A. MINIMUM SCOPE AND LIMITS OF INSURANCE**

1. **Workers Compensation**

Workers Compensation insurance shall be in compliance with the Workers Compensation law of the State of Louisiana. Employers Liability is included with a minimum limit of \$500,000 per accident/per disease/per employee. If work is to be performed over water and involves maritime exposure, applicable LHWCA, Jones Act, or other maritime law coverage shall be included and the Employers Liability limit increased to a minimum of \$1,000,000. A.M. Best's insurance company rating requirement may be waived for workers compensation coverage only.

2. **Commercial General Liability**

Commercial General Liability insurance, including Personal and Advertising Injury Liability and Products and Completed Operations Liability, shall have a minimum limit per occurrence based on the project value. The Insurance Services Office (ISO) Commercial General Liability occurrence coverage form CG 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. Claims-made form is unacceptable.

The aggregate loss limit must apply to each project. ISO form CG 25 03 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, shall also be submitted. The State project number, including part number, and project name shall be included on this endorsement.

**COMBINED SINGLE LIMIT (CSL) PER OCCURRENCE**

<b><u>Type of Construction</u></b>	<b><u>Projects up to \$1,000,000</u></b>	<b><u>Projects over \$1,000,000 up to \$10,000,000</u></b>	<b><u>Projects over \$10,000,000</u></b>
<b>New Buildings:</b>			
Each Occurrence Minimum Limit	\$1,000,000	\$2,000,000	\$4,000,000
Per Project Aggregate	\$2,000,000	\$4,000,000	\$8,000,000
<b>Renovations:</b>			
	The building(s) value for the Project is \$_____.		
Each Occurrence Minimum Limit	\$1,000,000**	\$2,000,000**	\$4,000,000**
Per Project Aggregate	2 times per occur limit**	2 times per occur limit**	2 times per occur limit**

\*\* While the minimum Combined Single Limit of \$1,000,000 is required for any renovation, the



limit is calculated by taking 10% of the building value and rounding it to the nearest \$1,000,000 to get the insurance limit. Example: Renovation on a \$33,000,000 building would have a calculated \$3,000,000 combined single limit of coverage (33,000,000 times .10 = 3,300,000 and then rounding down to \$3,000,000). If the calculated limit is less than the minimum limit listed in the above chart, then the amount needed is the minimum listed in the chart. Maximum per occurrence limit required is \$10,000,000 regardless of building value. The per project aggregate limit is then calculated as twice the per occurrence limit.

3. **Automobile Liability**

Automobile Liability Insurance shall have a minimum combined single limit per occurrence of \$1,000,000. ISO form number CA 00 01 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used in the policy. This insurance shall include third-party bodily injury and property damage liability for owned, hired and non-owned automobiles.

4. **Excess Umbrella**

Excess Umbrella insurance may be used to meet the minimum requirements for General Liability and Automobile Liability only.

5. **Builder's Risk**

Builder's Risk Insurance shall be in an amount equal to the greater of the fully-completed project value or the amount of the construction contract including any amendments and shall be upon the entire work included in the contract. The policy shall provide coverage equivalent to the ISO form number CP 10 20, Broad Form Causes of Loss (extended, if necessary, to include the perils of wind, earthquake, collapse, vandalism/malicious mischief, and theft, including theft of materials whether or not attached to any structure). The policy must include architects' and engineers' fees necessary to provide plans, specifications and supervision of work for the repair and/or replacement of property damage caused by a covered peril, not to exceed 10% of the cost of the repair and/or replacement.

Flood coverage shall be provided by the Contractor on the first floor and below for projects North of the Interstate Corridor beginning at the Texas - Louisiana border at Interstate 10 East to the Baton Rouge junction of Interstate 12, East to Slidell junction with Interstate 10 to the Louisiana - Mississippi border. If flood is included in the builder's risk insurance policy, then the sub-limit shall not be less than ten percent (10%) of the total contract cost per occurrence. If flood is purchased as a separate policy, the limit shall be ten percent (10%) of the total contract cost per occurrence ( with a max of \$500,000 if NFIP). Coverage for roofing projects shall **not** require flood coverage.

On projects South of this corridor, flood coverage shall be provided by the State of Louisiana as the owner. The Contractor will be liable for the \$5,000 policy deductible from the Notice to Proceed date through the date of final payment of the project in the event of a flood loss.

A Specialty Contractor may provide an installation floater in lieu of a Builders Risk policy, with the similar coverage as the Builder's Risk policy, upon the system to be installed in an amount equal to the greater of the fully-completed project value or the amount of the contract including any amendments. Flood coverage is not required.

The policy must include coverage for the Owner, Contractor and any subcontractors as their interests may appear.

6. **Pollution Liability** *(required when asbestos or other hazardous material abatement is included in the contract)*

Pollution Liability insurance, including gradual release as well as sudden and accidental, shall have a minimum limit of not less than \$1,000,000 per claim. A claims-made form will be acceptable.

A policy period inception date of no later than the first day of anticipated work under this contract and an expiration date of no earlier than 30 days after anticipated completion of all work under the contract shall be provided. There shall be an extended reporting period of at least 24 months, with full reinstatement of limits, from the expiration date of the policy. The policy shall not be cancelled for any reason, except non-payment of premium.

**B. DEDUCTIBLES AND SELF-INSURED RETENTIONS**

Any deductibles or self-insured retentions must be declared to and accepted by the Agency. The Contractor shall be responsible for all deductibles and self-insured retentions.

**C. OTHER INSURANCE PROVISIONS**

The policies are to contain, or be endorsed to contain, the following provisions:

1. Workers Compensation and Employers Liability Coverage

The insurer shall agree to waive all rights of subrogation against the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers for losses arising from work performed by the Contractor for the Agency.

2. General Liability Coverage

- a. The Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers are to be added as additional insureds as respects liability arising out of activities performed by or on behalf of the Contractor; products and completed operations of the Contractor, premises owned, occupied or used by the Contractor. ISO Form CG 20 10 (current form approved for use in Louisiana), or equivalent, is to be used.
- b. The Contractor's insurance shall be primary as respects the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers. The coverage shall contain no special limitations on the scope of protection afforded to the Agency, its officers, officials, employees or volunteers. Any insurance or self-insurance maintained by the Agency shall be excess and non-contributory of the Contractor's insurance.
- c. The Contractor's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whom claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the policy limits.

3. Builder's Risk

The policy must include an endorsement providing the following:

In the event of a disagreement regarding a loss covered by this policy which may also be covered by a State of Louisiana self-insurance or commercial property policy through the Office of Risk Management (ORM), Contractor and its insurer agree to follow the following procedure to establish coverage and/or the amount of loss:

Any party to a loss may make written demand for an appraisal of the matter in disagreement. Within 20 days of receipt of written demand, the Contractor's insurer and either ORM or its commercial insurance company shall each select a competent and impartial appraiser and notify the other of the appraiser selected. The two appraisers will select a competent and impartial umpire. The appraisers will then identify the policy or policies under which the loss is insured and, if necessary, state separately the value of the property and the amount of the loss that must be borne by each policy. If the two appraisers fail to agree, they shall submit their differences to the umpire. A written decision by any two shall determine the policy or policies and the amount of the loss. Each insurance company agree that the decision of the

appraisers and the umpire if involved will be binding and final and that neither party will resort to litigation. Each of the two parties shall pay its chosen appraiser and bear the cost of the umpire equally.

4. All Coverages

- h. Coverage shall not be canceled, suspended, or voided by either party (the Contractor or the insurer) or reduced in coverage or in limits except after 30 days written notice has been given to the Agency. Ten-day written notice of cancellation is acceptable for non-payment of premium. Notifications shall comply with the standard cancellation provisions in the Contractor's policy.
- i. Neither the acceptance of the completed work nor the payment thereof shall release the Contractor from the obligations of the insurance requirements or indemnification agreement.
- j. The insurance companies issuing the policies shall have no recourse against the Agency for payment of premiums or for assessments under any form of the policies.
- k. Any failure of the Contractor to comply with reporting provisions of the policy shall not affect coverage provided to the Agency, its officers, agents, employees and volunteers.

**D. ACCEPTABILITY OF INSURERS**

All required insurance shall be provided by a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located. Insurance shall be placed with insurers with a A.M. Best's rating of **A-:VI or higher**. This rating requirement may be waived for workers compensation coverage only.

If at any time an insurer issuing any such policy does not meet the minimum A.M. Best rating, the Contractor shall obtain a policy with an insurer that meets the A.M. Best rating and shall submit another Certificate of Insurance as required in the contract.

**E. VERIFICATION OF COVERAGE**

Contractor shall furnish the Agency with Certificates of Insurance reflecting proof of required coverage. The Certificates for each insurance policy are to be signed by a person authorized by that insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. The Certificates are to be received and approved by the Agency before work commences and upon any contract renewal thereafter. The Certificate Holder must be listed as follows:

State of Louisiana  
Name of Agency  
Agency Address  
City, State Zip  
Attn: Project # \_\_\_\_\_

In addition to the Certificates, Contractor shall submit the declarations page and the cancellation provision endorsement for each insurance policy. The Agency reserves the right to request complete certified copies of all required insurance policies at any time.

Upon failure of the Contractor to furnish, deliver and maintain such insurance as above provided, this contract, at the election of the Agency, may be suspended, discontinued or terminated. Failure of the Contractor to purchase and/or maintain any required insurance shall not relieve the Contractor from any liability or indemnification under the contract.

If the Contractor does not meet the insurance requirements at policy renewal, at the option of the Agency, payment to the Contractor may be withheld until the requirements have been met, OR the Agency may pay the renewal premium and withhold such payment from any monies due the Contractor, OR the contract may be suspended or terminated for cause.

**F. SUBCONTRACTORS**

Contractor shall include all subcontractors as insureds under its policies OR shall be responsible for verifying and maintaining the Certificates provided by each subcontractor. Subcontractors shall be subject to all of the requirements stated herein. The Agency reserves the right to request copies of subcontractor's Certificates at any time.

If Contractor does not verify subcontractors' insurance as described above, Agency has the right to withhold payments to the Contractor until the requirements have been met.

**G. WORKERS COMPENSATION INDEMNITY**

In the event Contractor is not required to provide or elects not to provide workers compensation coverage, the parties hereby agree that Contractor, its owners, agents and employees will have no cause of action against, and will not assert a claim against, the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees as an employer, whether pursuant to the Louisiana Workers Compensation Act or otherwise, under any circumstance. The parties also hereby agree that the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees shall in no circumstance be, or considered as, the employer or statutory employer of Contractor, its owners, agents and employees. The parties further agree that Contractor is a wholly independent Contractor and is exclusively responsible for its employees, owners, and agents. Contractor hereby agrees to protect, defend, indemnify and hold the State of Louisiana, its departments, agencies, agents and employees harmless from any such assertion or claim that may arise from the performance of this contract.

**H. INDEMNIFICATION/HOLD HARMLESS AGREEMENT**

Contractor agrees to protect, defend, indemnify, save, and hold harmless, the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards and Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees, and volunteers, from and against any and all claims, damages, expenses, and liability arising out of injury or death to any person or the damage, loss or destruction of any property which may occur, or in any way grow out of, any act or omission of Contractor, its agents, servants, and employees, or any and all costs, expenses and/or attorney fees incurred by Contractor as a result of any claims, demands, suits or causes of action, except those claims, demands, suits, or causes of action arising out of the negligence of the State of Louisiana, all State Departments, Agencies, Boards, Commissions, its officers, agents, servants, employees and volunteers.

Contractor agrees to investigate, handle, respond to, provide defense for and defend any such claims, demands, suits, or causes of action at its sole expense and agrees to bear all other costs and expenses related thereto, even if the claims, demands, suits, or causes of action are groundless, false or fraudulent.

## SCHEDULE OF VALUES

*The Contractor is to use the following format. The total Contract Cost is to be itemized in each Subsection listed (as applicable)*

	Quantity	Cost
DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS		
01 00 00 General Requirements	_____	_____
01 33 00 Record Drawings, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and other submittals.	_____	_____
	TOTAL	_____
DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS		
DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE		
03 01 00 Maintenance of Concrete	_____	_____
03 11 00 Concrete Forming	_____	_____
03 15 00 Concrete Accessories	_____	_____
03 20 00 Concrete Reinforcing	_____	_____
03 30 00 Cast-in-place Concrete	_____	_____
03 40 00 Precast Concrete	_____	_____
03 50 00 Cast Decks & Underlayment	TOTAL	_____
DIVISION 04 – MASONRY		
DIVISION 05 – METALS		
DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTICS, & COMPOSITES		
06 05 60 Laminate	_____	_____
06 10 00 Rough Carpentry	_____	_____
06 15 33 Wood & Patio Decking	_____	_____
06 16 00 Sheathing	_____	_____
06 20 23 Interior Finish Carpentry	SUB-TOTAL	_____

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE  
PROTECTION

- 07 31 13 Asphalt Shingles
- 07 46 61 Fiber Cement Siding & Trim
- 07 46 16 Aluminum Siding
- 07 25 00 Weather Barriers

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS

TOTAL

- 08 11 00 Metal Doors and Frames
- 08 14 00 Wood Doors
- 08 51 00 Vinyl Windows
- 08 90 00 Hardware
- 08 83 00 Mirrors

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

TOTAL

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

- 09 29 00 Gypsum Board
- 09 30 00 Tile
- 09 30 01 Solid Vinyl Floor Tile
- 09 68 16 Sheet Carpeting
- 09 91 13 Exterior Painting
- 09 91 23 Interior Painting

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

SUB-TOTAL

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

12 20 00 Window Treatments  
12 30 00 Casework  
12 40 00 Furnishings and Accessories  
12 50 00 Furniture

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
TOTAL	_____

DIVISION 13 –SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

22 07 00 Plumbing Insulation	_____	_____
22 11 00 Facility Water Distribution	_____	_____
22 13 00 Facility Sanitary Sewerage	_____	_____
22 14 00 Facility Storm Drainage	_____	_____
22 30 00 Plumbing Equipment	_____	_____
22 40 00 Plumbing Fixtures	_____	_____
	TOTAL	_____

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, & AIR-  
CONDITIONING

23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting, & Balancing for HVAC	_____	_____
23 07 00 HVAC Insulation	_____	_____
23 09 00 Instrumentation & Control for HVAC	_____	_____
23 13 00 Facility Fuel-Storage Tanks	_____	_____
23 20 00 HVAC Piping and Pumps	_____	_____
23 30 00 HVAC Air Distribution	_____	_____
23 40 00 HVAC Air Cleaning Devices	_____	_____
23 50 00 Central Heating Equipment	_____	_____
23 60 00 Central Cooling Equipment	_____	_____
23 70 00 Central HVAC Equipment	_____	_____
	TOTAL	_____

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

26 09 00 Instrumentation & Control for Electrical Systems	_____	_____
26 10 00 Medium-Voltage Electrical Distribution	_____	_____
26 20 00 Low-Voltage Electrical Transmission	_____	_____
26 27 00 Low-Voltage Distribution Equipment	_____	_____
26 30 00 Facility Electrical Power Generating & Storage Equipment	_____	_____
26 40 00 Electrical and Cathodic Protection	_____	_____
26 50 00 Lighting	_____	_____



DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS

DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

31 10 00 Site Clearing	_____	_____
31 20 00 Earth Moving	_____	_____
31 31 00 Soil Treatment	_____	_____
31 32 00 Soil Stabilization	_____	_____
31 40 00 Shoring and Underpinning	_____	_____
31 50 00 Excavation Support and Protection	_____	_____
31 60 00 Special Foundations and Load-Bearing Elements	_____	_____
	TOTAL	_____

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

32 10 00 Bases, Ballasts, and Paving	_____	_____
32 30 00 Site Improvements	_____	_____
32 90 00 Planting	_____	_____
	TOTAL	_____

DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES

33 10 00 Water Utilities	_____	_____
33 30 00 Sanitary Sewerage Utilities	_____	_____
33 40 00 Storm Drainage Utilities	_____	_____
33 50 00 Fuel Distribution Utilities	_____	_____
33 60 00 Hydronic & Steam Energy Utilities	_____	_____
33 70 00 Electrical Utilities	_____	_____
33 80 00 Communications Utilities	_____	_____
	TOTAL	_____

DIVISION 34 – TRANSPORTATION

34 00 00 Transportation	_____	_____
	TOTAL	_____

DIVISION 35 – WATERWAY AND MARINE CONSTRUCTIONS

35 00 00 Waterway and Marine construction	_____	_____
	TOTAL	_____

DIVISION 40-43 – PROCESS EQUIPMENT

DIVISION 44 – POLLUTION CONTROL  
EQUIPMENT

44 40 00 Water Treatment Equipment

44 41 00 Packaged Water Treatment Plants

44 50 00 Solid Waste Control

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

TOTAL

\_\_\_\_\_

DIVISION 45 – INDUSTRY SPECIFIC  
MANUFACTURING  
EQUIPMENT

DIVISION 48 – ELECTRICAL POWER  
GENERATION

48 10 00 Electrical Power Generation Equipment

48 70 00 Electrical Power Generation Testing

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

TOTAL

\_\_\_\_\_

Louisiana Military Department-Contracting  
**CHANGE ORDER**

PROJECT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ CHANGE ORDER NO: \_\_\_\_\_  
 PROJECT NUMBER: \_\_\_\_\_ CONTRACT DATE: \_\_\_\_\_  
 CONTRACTOR: \_\_\_\_\_ CFMS No. \_\_\_\_\_  
 SITE CODE: \_\_\_\_\_ STATE ID: \_\_\_\_\_

Request your proposal to make the following change(s) in this contract. Attach SUMMARY, BREAKDOWN and/or UNIT PRICE BREAKDOWN forms as required and give a brief description of the change(s) below.

The Original Contract Sum \_\_\_\_\_  
 Total Changes by Previous Change Order(s) \_\_\_\_\_  
 Current Contract Sum \_\_\_\_\_  
 Contract Sum will be (increased) (decreased) (unchanged) by this Change Order \_\_\_\_\_  
**New Contract Sum** \_\_\_\_\_

The Original Contract Completion Date and Contract Time. Date: \_\_\_\_\_ DAYS  
 Total Time extended by Previous Change Order(s) \_\_\_\_\_ DAYS  
 Contract Time will be (increased) (decreased) (unchanged) by this Change Order \_\_\_\_\_ DAYS  
**New Contract Completion Date & Revised Contract Time** Date: \_\_\_\_\_ DAYS

**Added Building Area** \_\_\_\_\_ (Sq. Ft.)

**NOTE:** No additional increase in time or money will be considered for a Change Order item after it has been executed.

<b>RECOMMENDED</b>	<b>PROPOSER</b>	<b>REVIEWER</b>
Designer's Name: _____	Contractor's Name: _____	Project Manager: _____
Address: _____	Address: _____	Louisiana Military Department Louisiana National Guard
By: _____	By: _____	By: _____
Date: _____	Date: _____	Date: _____

**LOUISIANA MILITARY DEPARTMENT-CONTRACTING USE ONLY**

Classification	Amount	Classification	Amount
Omission (Type "O")*	_____	Miscellaneous (Type "M")	_____
Error (Type "E")*	_____	Owner Requested (Type "R")	_____

\*See Section 5.4.3 of the Louisiana Capital Improvement Projects Procedure Manual for Design and Construction, 2006 Edition

Senior Manager/Assistant Director approval: \_\_\_\_\_

COMMENTS: \_\_\_\_\_

# Construction Contract Change Order SUMMARY

Louisiana Military Department-Contracting

Item No. \_\_\_\_\_

RFI No. (or COR, CPR, etc.) \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

State Project No. \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Description of Work: \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Direct Costs - Breakdown No. \_\_\_\_\_

(See attached breakdown)

Total General Contractor Cost

(General Contract Direct Cost plus OH&P)

\_\_\_\_\_ %  
(Max: 15%)

Subcontractor Cost Breakdowns

(See attached.)

Subcontractor Direct Costs Total

(Sum column A)

\$ -

Subcontractor Direct Costs + Subcontractor OH&P

(Sum column C)

General Contractor OH&P on Subcontractor Direct Cost at

(Sum column A times General Contractor OH&P rate. )

\_\_\_\_\_ %  
(Max: 10%)

Total Subcontractor Costs

(Subcontractor Direct Costs + OH&P + General Contractor OH&P)

Change Order Subtotal

(Sum of Total General Contractor Costs and Total Subcontractor Costs)

Performance and Payment Bond at

(Change Order Subtotal times Performance and Payment Bond rate)

\_\_\_\_\_ %

Amount will be

increased  decreased  unchanged by

(Sum of Change Order Subtotal and Performance and Payment Bond)

Days will be

increased  decreased  unchanged by

(Attach supporting data such as meteorological reports)

# Construction Contract Change Order Request BREAKDOWN

Louisiana Military Department-Contracting

Breakdown No. \_\_\_\_\_

Item No. \_\_\_\_\_

RFI No. (or COR, CPR, etc.) \_\_\_\_\_

Project No.: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor/Subcontractor Name: \_\_\_\_\_

**Direct Cost of Work :**

<b>A. Labor</b>	Check here if explained on the Comment Sheet		Hourly Wage Rate	Hours	Total Cost
1	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____
4	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____
5	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____
6	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____
7	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____
			Add Labor Burden @ _____ %		_____

**LABOR TOTAL**

<b>B. Material</b>			Unit Price	Unit	Units	Total Cost
1	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
4	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
5	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
6	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
7	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
(Copies of invoices may be required.)			Add Tax @ _____ %			_____

**MATERIAL TOTAL**

<b>C. Equipment</b>			Unit Rate	Unit	Units	Total Cost
1	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
4	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
5	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
6	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
7	_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____	_____	_____	_____
(Copies of invoices may be required.)			Add Tax @ _____ %			_____

**EQUIPMENT TOTAL**

**TOTAL DIRECT COST FOR THIS BREAKDOWN:**   
(Sum A, B & C)

Construction Contract Change Order Request  
**BREAKDOWN COMMENT SHEET**

Louisiana Military Department-Contracting

Breakdown No. \_\_\_\_\_

Item No. \_\_\_\_\_

RFI No. (or COR, CPR, etc.) \_\_\_\_\_

Project No.: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor/Subcontractor Name: \_\_\_\_\_

**A. Labor**

No. (From BREAKDOWN Sheet)

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**B. Material**

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**C. Equipment**

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



---

# Louisiana Military Department-Contracting

## Instructions for Change Order Request Back Up Forms

April 7, 2015

The General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and any additional contract documents giving information on change orders provide for changes in the contract in the form of change orders. The costs of such changes must be carefully, clearly and accurately documented. Louisiana Military Department (LMD) has prepared a set of forms to be used to provide this documentation in a consistent format that is in accordance with the Contract Documents.

Change orders will typically contain one or more items of work. Each item of work will typically include work by the general contractor and/or one or more subcontractors. The documentation begins with a breakdown of the work of the contractor and each subcontractor. This is prepared using the form entitled "BREAKDOWN." One form for the General Contractor and one for each subcontractor. Each breakdown will be summarized on the form entitled "SUMMARY." Each item of work will, in turn, be summarized on the change order itself. This should be on the face of the change order.

The forms are available as a Microsoft Excel worksheet for ease of preparation, with formulas established for mark-ups and other basic mathematical operations.

These forms are to be used as provided. Any alteration to the forms may cause the change order to be rejected.

### **GENERAL:** (Refer to Article 7, Sections 7.2.2 and 7.2.8)

**Forms** - There are five forms to be used for all LMD change orders: CHANGE ORDER form, SUMMARY, BREAKDOWN, BREAKDOWN COMMENT SHEET and UNIT PRICE BREAKDOWN. The CHANGE ORDER form is the highest level and is the official, signed document. A CHANGE ORDER form may include one or more items of work, each of which is backed up by a SUMMARY. Each SUMMARY will be backed up with one or more BREAKDOWNS. Any unusual rates, unit costs or quantities may be explained on the COMMENT SHEET. It's simple. The BREAKDOWN form must be used for the general contractor and any subcontractor, at any level, that is to get OH&P. Use as many as needed.

**Unit Pricing** - Labor, material and equipment breakdown is a standard method of pricing change orders for LMD. However, unit pricing may be considered in some circumstances if the unit prices are clearly established such as by unit prices that were included in the bid. These prices may also be derived from a construction industry standard reference such as R.S. Means. If unit prices were included in the bid they are acceptable for pricing change order work and, in fact, must be used for any work that is included in the change order for which they were established. The UNIT PRICE BREAKDOWN is provided for this purpose.

### **CHANGE ORDER:**

**Project identification information:** Complete as required. The Site Code, State ID and CFMS No. can be obtained from the Military Project Manager.

**Description:** This will include a list of each attached SUMMARY that makes up this change order and a brief statement of the work included in each.

**New Contract Sum:** Calculate the new contract amount using the original contract amount, previous change orders and the new change order. Circle the appropriate word for increase, decrease or unchanged.

**New Contract Completion Date and Revised Time:** Calculate the new contract time using the original Contract Completion Date and Contract Time, previous changes in time and the change in time by this change order. Circle the appropriate word for increase, decrease or unchanged. Show days in the main column and the date in the blank indicated.



**Added Building Area:** Show any building area added by this change order. If none, enter "None."

**RECOMMENDED:** Show the Designer's name and address, sign on the line indicated as "By:" and date on the indicated line.

**PROPOSER:** Show the Contractor's name and address, sign on the line indicated as "By:" and date on the indicated line.

**REVIEWER:** For approval by the Military Project Manager approval: All change order approvals will be from LMD-Contracting in the form of a State Change Order (see example Change Order).

**SUMMARY:** (Refer to Article 7, Sections 7.2.2 and 7.2.8)

**Item No.:** Show the Item number as it will appear on the CHANGE ORDER Form. Note: This may be one of several items included in one CHANGE ORDER form.

**RFI No.:** Show the number of the request for information. This may be known by another name such as COR (Change Order Request,) CPR (Change Proposal Request,) etc.

**Project No., Date, Project Name.** Complete as appropriate.

**Contractor:** Name of General Contractor.

**Description of Work:** Give a brief description of the work included in this **Item**. Clearly state if the work is or is not within the scope of the project.

**General Contractor Direct Costs:** Show the total General Contractor Cost from the BREAKDOWN and show the Breakdown No. in the space provided.

**General Contractor Total Cost:** Show the total General Contractor Cost plus the General Contractor's overhead and profit. The overhead and profit shall not exceed 15% of the Direct Cost.

**Subcontractor Cost Breakdowns:** List each subcontractor, Breakdown No. and Total Direct Cost (in column "A") from the attached BREAKDOWN sheets. Show the subcontractor's overhead and profit percentage in column "B" and show the calculated total of the direct cost plus the percentage of the direct cost in column "C." If the electronic version of the form is being used, column "C" will be automatically calculated. The overhead and profit shall not exceed 15% of the Total Direct Cost.

**Subcontractor Direct Costs Total:** Sum of column "A." This will be used to calculate the General Contractor's overhead and profit on the subcontractors' work. If the electronic version is being used, this will be an automatic calculation.

**Subcontractor Direct Costs + Subcontractor OH&P:** Sum of column "C." This represents the total amount that subcontractors will be paid. Automatic calculation.

**General Contractor OH&P on Subcontractor Direct Cost at \_\_\_%.** The contractor's overhead and profit on the subcontractors' direct cost (without subcontractor OH&P.) Enter the percentage of the contractor's OH&P on the subcontractors' work (not to exceed 10%) and show the calculated total of the subcontractors' direct cost plus the percentage of the direct cost in the space. Automatic calculation.

**Total Subcontractor Costs:** Total of the last two spaces.

**Change Order Subtotal:** Total of change order except bond.

**Performance and Payment Bond at \_\_\_%:** Enter bond percentage (from amount provided by the contractor at the Pre-Construction Conference) and calculate the amount for the bond.

**Amount will be  increased  decreased  unchanged by:** Add bond and calculate total change order amount. Indicate "increase," "decrease" or "unchanged."

**Days will be  increased  decreased  unchanged by:** Show the number of days to be added or deleted from the contract, if any, due to changes in scope, adverse weather, unusual delays or other factors. Note that a change in scope does not necessarily indicate a change in time. Indicate "increased," "decreased" or "unchanged."

**Item No.** Show the Item number as it will appear on the CHANGE ORDER Form and the SUMMARY.  
Note: This may be one of several items included in one CHANGE ORDER form.

**RFI No.:** Show the number of the request for information. This may be known by another name such as COR (Change Order Request,) CPR (Change Proposal Request,) etc.

**Project No., Date, Project Name.** Complete as appropriate.

**Contractor:** Name of General Contractor or Subcontractor.

**Direct Cost of Work:**

**Check here if explained on the Comment Sheet:** If rates, unit costs or quantities may appear unreasonable compared to standard costs or quantities the reasons may be explained on the attached comment sheet and the box checked to indicate that there is an explanation.

**A. Labor:** Include the “wages paid” hourly direct labor and/or foreman necessary to perform the required change. “Wages paid” is the amount actually paid the employee, not the fully burdened charge rate used in the bid, etc. Supervisory personnel in district or home office shall not be included. Do not include the project superintendent. Supervisory personnel on the job-site, but with broad supervisory responsibility shall not be included as Direct Labor. Typically there will be only one superintendent on the job and his/her time shall not be included. Typically all other employees are eligible for inclusion. List by job title each person employed on the work, his/her hourly rate, the number hours work and the extended Total Cost. Do not list crews unless the rates for them are readily available in standard cost estimating references such as R. S. Means. Add the labor burden that was provided at the Pre-Construction conference and total the amounts in LABOR TOTAL.

**B. Material:** Include the acquisition cost of all materials directly required to perform the required change. List each material used in the work, the price per unit, name of the unit, the number of units used and the extended Total Cost. Add the tax rate and tax and total the amounts in MATERIAL TOTAL.

**C. Equipment:** Include the rental cost of equipment items necessary to perform the change. For company-owned equipment items, include documentation of internal rental rates submitted at the pre-construction conference. Charges for small tools, and craft specific tools are not allowed. List each piece of equipment used in the work, the rate by units of time (hour, day, week, etc.,) number of units of time the piece was in service on the work and the extended total cost. Add the tax rate, calculate the tax and total the amounts in EQUIPMENT TOTAL.

**TOTAL DIRECT COST FOR THIS BREAKDOWN:** Total of A. Labor, B. Material and C. Equipment. This is the amount that will be carried forward to the SUMMARY Sheet. This amount does **NOT** include Overhead and Profit. This will be added on the SUMMARY Sheet.

## COMMENTS SHEET:

The COMMENTS SHEET uses the same heading as the SUMMARY and BREAKDOWN.

The COMMENTS SHEET includes three sections, one each for A. Labor, B. Materials and C. Equipment. These correspond to the sections in the BREAKDOWN. Each comment should be entered in the section to which it corresponds on the BREAKDOWN and numbered to correspond to the appropriate line. Comments are to be used only to explain unusual rates, costs or quantities.

## UNIT PRICE BREAKDOWN:

The UNIT PRICE BREAKDOWN uses the same heading as the BREAKDOWN.

The UNIT PRICE BREAKDOWN is similar to the BREAKDOWN.

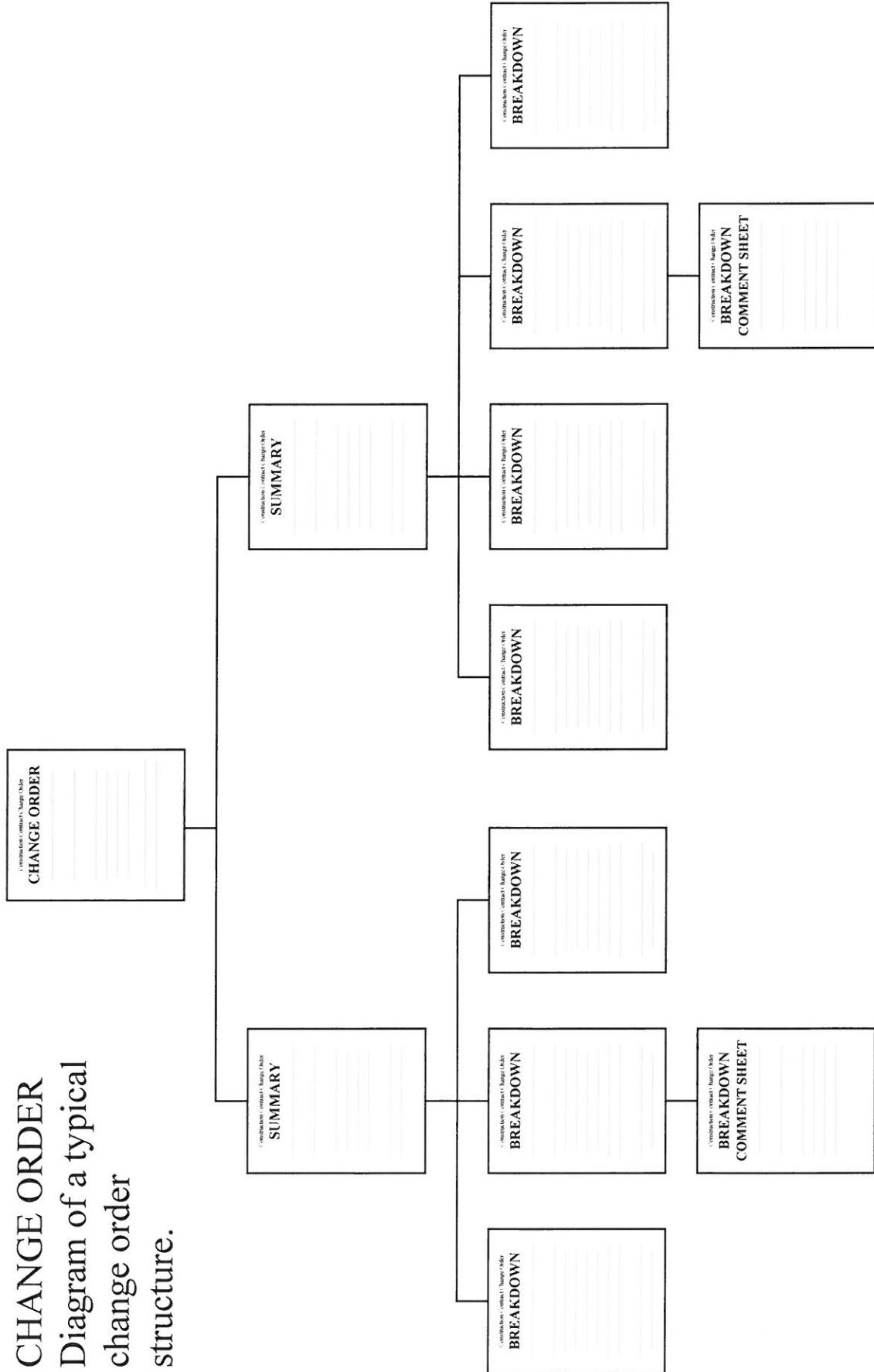
**Unit Price Tabulation:** Each unit price is listed along with its corresponding price and the number of units used in the work. The price and number of units are multiplied to provide the total cost of each unit price item. The pricing reference, such as the bid form for the project or a construction industry standard reference, must be cited for each unit price. This may be more fully described in "Reference Legend,"

**Unit Price Total:** Sum the unit prices to obtain the total cost for unit prices.



# CHANGE ORDER

Diagram of a typical change order structure.





Contract # \_\_\_\_\_

Amendment # \_\_\_\_\_

**AMENDMENT # \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_ BETWEEN  
LOUISIANA MILITARY DEPARTMENT**

**AND**

**CONTRACTOR NAME GOES HERE  
ADDRESS GOES HERE  
CITY, STATE & ZIP CODE GOES HERE**

---

**Amendment Provisions:** This Amendment is made and entered into between the Louisiana Military Department, hereafter referred to as **LMD**, and Contractor Company Name, represented by Contractor Name – Title Goes Here, herein referred to as **Contractor**.

In consideration of the mutual promises contained herein, the parties hereby agree to the following Amendment and, intended to be mutually bound, the parties hereby agree as indicated below:

**INCREASE** total amount of the contract to read \$ \_\_\_\_\_ due to the following: 1) \_\_\_\_\_; 2) \_\_\_\_\_ etc.

Total cost of this Amendment is \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Amendment becomes effective: Date Goes Here.

AMENDMENT # [redacted] to Contract [redacted] Continued

**Justification for Amendment Increase;** 1) [redacted]; 2) [redacted].

This Amendment contains or has attached hereto all revised terms and conditions agreed upon by contracting parties. All other terms and conditions contained in the basic Agreement remain the same and remain unchanged.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, this amendment is signed and entered into on the date indicated below:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature) (Date)

Contractor's Name: Name of Contractor Goes Here  
Contractor's Title: Title Goes Here

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature) (Date)

Agency's Name [redacted]

Louisiana Military Department

Agency's Title: Contracting & Purchasing



❖ NOT FOR RECORDATION PURPOSES ❖

Facility Planning & Control  
**PARTIAL OCCUPANCY**

PROJECT NAME  
AND NUMBER:

CMFS No.

CONTRACTOR:

USER AGENCY:

The below described portion of subject project is, to the best of my knowledge and belief, complete to a point where the User desires to use in according with the Contract Documents.

DATE OCCUPIED: \_\_\_\_\_ .

WARRANTY items covered by Occupancy:

Designer	Date
Contractor	Date
Facility Planning and Control	Date

Punch List: Attached

None

c: User Agency

❖ NOT FOR RECORDATION PURPOSES ❖



CSI Form 13.1A

SUBSTITUTION
REQUEST FOR CAUSE

Project: Substitution Request Number:
From:
To: Date:
A/E Project Number:
Re: Contract For:

Specification Title: Description:
Section: Page: Article/Paragraph:

Proposed Substitution:
Manufacturer: Address: Phone:
Trade Name: Model No.:
Installer: Address: Phone:
History: New product 1-4 years old 5-10 years old More than 10 years old

Differences between proposed substitution and specified product:

Point-by-point comparative data attached — REQUIRED BY A/E

Reason for not providing specified item:

Similar Installation:
Project: Architect:
Address: Owner:
Date Installed:

Proposed substitution affects other parts of Work: No Yes; explain

Savings to Owner for accepting substitution: (\$ )

Proposed substitution changes Contract Time: No Yes [Add] [Deduct] days.

Supporting Data Attached: Drawings Product Data Samples Tests Reports

This is not an official CSI Construction Contract Administration (CCA) Form. Please use CSI's official CCA Forms if required by your project needs.

# SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FOR CAUSE (Continued)

The Undersigned certifies:

- Proposed substitution has been fully investigated and determined to be equal or superior in all respects to specified product.
- Same warranty will be furnished for proposed substitution as for specified product.
- Same maintenance service and source of replacement parts, as applicable, is available.
- Proposed substitution will have no adverse effect on other trades and will not affect or delay progress schedule.
- Cost data as stated above is complete. Claims for additional costs related to accepted substitution which may subsequently become apparent are to be waived.
- Proposed substitution does not affect dimensions and functional clearances.
- Payment will be made for changes to building design, including A/E design, detailing, and construction costs caused by the substitution.
- Coordination, installation, and changes in the Work as necessary for accepted substitution will be complete in all respects.

Submitted by: \_\_\_\_\_

Signed by: \_\_\_\_\_

Firm: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_

Attachments:

---

### A/E's REVIEW AND ACTION

- Substitution approved - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01 25 00 Substitution Procedures.
- Substitution approved as noted - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01 25 00 Substitution Procedures.
- Substitution rejected - Use specified materials.
- Substitution Request received too late - Use specified materials.

Signed by: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Additional Comments:  Contractor  Subcontractor  Supplier  Manufacturer  A/E  
 Other:

# ***DIVISION 1***

---

## **GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com





SECTION 011000

SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Coordination with occupants.
4. Work restrictions.
5. Specification and drawing conventions.
6. Miscellaneous provisions.

1.2 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: **Camp Villere New Home Construction  
Camp Villere, Louisiana  
LA14-A-037**
- B. Project Location: **Camp Villere, Louisiana  
Slidell, LA 70460**
- C. Owner: **Louisiana National Guard  
6400 St. Claude Ave.  
New Orleans, Louisiana, 70117**
1. Owner's Representative: **BG(R) Owen W. Monconduit  
Deputy Director, Contracting and Purchasing**
- D. Architect: **Dammon Engineering, Inc.  
Kevin Kinchen, Chief Architect  
554 Old Spanish Trail  
Slidell, LA 70458**
1. Contact: **David Dammon  
(985) 649-5832**

1.3 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:

1. This project is to construct a raised, 1,400 s.f. single-family residence with a timber pile foundation and of wood construction.

B. Type of Contract.

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.4 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy site and existing and adjacent building(s) during entire construction period. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's day-to-day operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.

1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and approval of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. All contractor, vendors and sub-contractors' employees entering the BCCY site will be subject to and must pass a background check prior to gaining access to the secure grounds. Personnel information must be submitted to BCCY five (5) working days in advance for processing.

- B. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.

1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

- C. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work at the facility to normal business working hours of 7:00 a.m. to 5:30 p.m., Monday through Friday except Holidays or as otherwise directed.

- D. Existing Utility Interruptions: Provide temporary utility services before interrupting utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others.

- E. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.

- F. Controlled Substances: Use of tobacco products and other controlled substances is not permitted on Project site.

1.6 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:



1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings.
  3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000



## SECTION 012600

### CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

##### 1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

##### 1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within the time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
    - e. Quotation Form: Use forms provided by Owner.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Work Change Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Work Change Proposal Request Form: Use form provided by Designer.

#### 1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Designer will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on form included in Project Specification.

#### 1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA form G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 26 00

SECTION 012900

PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

1.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES (See AIA A201 and Supplementary Conditions, Article 9)

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
    - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
    - b. Submittal schedule.
    - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments; provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Specification table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Architect's project number.
    - d. Contractor's name and address.
    - e. Date of submittal.
  - 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format provided.
  - 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Specification table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five (5) percent of the Contract Sum.
    - a. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five (5) percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.

4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
6. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
7. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
  - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
8. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT (See AIA A201 and Supplementary Conditions Article 9)

- A. Each Application for Payment shall be submitted on AIA G702 and G703; each application shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Executed by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  2. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  3. Applications for Payment must be signed in Blue Ink.
- C. Transmittal: Submit three (3) signed original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- D. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
  1. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  2. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  3. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  4. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.

5. Initial progress report.
  6. The following documents are to be provided at the Pre-Construction Conference:
    - a. Schedule of values.
    - b. List of subcontractors and major suppliers.
    - c. Information listed in Paragraph 7.1 of the Supplementary Conditions.
    - d. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) as defined in 3.10.2 of General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions.
  7. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies are to be provided at contract signing.
- E. Application for Payment at Recommendation of Acceptance: After Architect issues the Recommendation of Acceptance, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
- F. Final Payment Application: Refer to Supplementary Conditions for Final Payment Application procedures and requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900





## SECTION 013100

### PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Coordination drawings.
  - 2. Requests for Information (RFIs).
  - 3. Project meetings.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 01 73 00 "Execution".
  - 2. Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures".

##### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

##### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

##### 1.4 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner through Designer and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  5. Project closeout activities.
  6. Startup and adjustment of systems.

#### 1.5 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. Architect will not accept RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor. Any such RFI submittals will be reported to the Contractor by the Architect.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Project number.
  3. Date.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Name of Architect.
  6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  7. RFI subject.
  8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.

11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's solution(s) impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  12. Contractor's signature.
  13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven (7) working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following RFIs will be returned, with Architect informing Contractor of "no action":
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - e. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - f. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within ten (10) days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. On receipt of Architect's action, immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven (7) days if Contractor disagrees with response.
1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  2. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- 1.6 PROJECT MEETING
- A. Preconstruction Conference: Designer will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference at Project site before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Contractor.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned

parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

2. Contractor shall furnish to the Architect and Owner at the Preconstruction Conference:
    - a. The Schedule of Values.
    - b. List of Subcontractors.
    - c. Information listed in Paragraph 7.1 of the Supplementary Conditions.
    - d. The Construction Schedule.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - b. Change Orders.
    - c. Invoice Procedures.
    - d. Prior Approval.
    - e. Testing Lab, Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - f. Project Sign.
    - g. Meetings.
    - h. General Correspondence.
    - i. Shop Drawings.
    - j. Procedure for keeping Record Documents.
    - k. Security.
    - l. User's occupancy requirements.
    - m. Location of staging areas and use of the premises.
    - n. Parking availability.
    - o. Location and type of temporary facilities and utilities.
    - p. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - q. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - r. Equipment deliveries.
    - s. Outages/Interruptions of Services.
    - t. Work restrictions.
    - u. Working hours.
    - v. Progress cleaning.
    - w. Safety and First Aid.
    - x. Use of any Asbestos Containing materials is prohibited.
    - y. Pre-Closeout Conference.
  4. Minutes: Designer will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- B. Preinstallation Conferences: Designer will conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting.
  2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.

- c. Related RFIs.
  - d. Related Change Orders.
  - e. Purchases.
  - f. Deliveries.
  - g. Submittals.
  - h. Review of mockups.
  - i. Possible conflicts.
  - j. Compatibility problems.
  - k. Time schedules.
  - l. Weather limitations.
  - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
  - n. Warranty requirements.
  - o. Compatibility of materials.
  - p. Acceptability of substrates.
  - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
  - r. Space and access limitations.
  - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
  - u. Installation procedures.
  - v. Coordination with other work.
  - w. Required performance results.
  - x. Protection of adjacent work.
  - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
3. Designer will record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  4. Reporting: Designer will distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- C. Progress Meetings: Designer will conduct progress meetings at Project site at monthly intervals.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

- 1) Review schedule for next period.
- b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
  - 1) Interface requirements.
  - 2) Sequence of operations.
  - 3) Status of submittals.
  - 4) Deliveries.
  - 5) Off-site fabrication.
  - 6) Access.
  - 7) Site utilization.
  - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 9) Progress cleaning.
  - 10) Quality and work standards.
  - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
  - 12) Field observations.
  - 13) Status of RFIs.
  - 14) Status of proposal requests.
  - 15) Pending changes.
  - 16) Status of Change Orders.
  - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
  - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- D. Pre-Closeout Conference: Designer will schedule and conduct a pre-closeout conference at the project site when construction is 75% to 85% complete.
  1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

## SECTION 013233

### PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
  - 2. Periodic construction photographs.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as Project Record Documents at Project closeout.

##### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Digital Photographs: Submit to Architect unaltered, original, full-size image files within three (3) days of taking photographs.
  - 1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.
  - 2. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Date photograph was taken.
    - c. Indicating location and direction (by compass point).

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA

- A. Digital Images: Provide images to Architect in JPG format, with minimum size of 8 megapixels.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.

1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- B. Digital Images: Submit to Architect digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
  2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect.
- C. Preconstruction Photographs: Before starting construction take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.
  2. Take photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
  3. Take photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
- D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take photographs weekly, with timing each month adjusted to coincide with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- E. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission to Architect as Project Record Documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.
- F. Additional Photographs: Architect may request photographs in addition to periodic photographs specified. Additional photographs will be paid for by Change Order and are not included in the Contract Sum.
1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
  2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
  3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Special events planned at Project site.
    - b. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
    - c. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
    - d. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.
    - e. Owner's request for special publicity photographs.

END OF SECTION 013233



## SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic copies of digital data files of the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
  - 1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings.
    - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
    - b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106, Digital Data Licensing Agreement.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.

2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
  - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  1. Initial Review: Allow fifteen (15) work days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow fifteen (15) work days for review of each resubmittal.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
  1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
    - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., LNHS-061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., LNHS-061000.01.A).
  3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Architect, containing the following information:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name and address of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
    - f. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
    - g. Category and type of submittal.
    - h. Submittal purpose and description.
    - i. Specification Section number and title.
    - j. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
    - k. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
    - l. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.

- m. Related physical samples submitted directly.
  - n. Indication of full or partial submittal.
  - o. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
  - p. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
  - q. Other necessary identification.
  - r. Remarks.
5. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:
- a. Project name.
  - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  - c. Manufacturer name.
  - d. Product name.
- E. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- F. Deviations: Identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals, deviations will not be allowed if it changes “type.”
- G. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
- 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect’s action stamp.
- H. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- I. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements:
- 1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files, photos shall be submitted under Section 01 32 33 “Photographic Documentation”.
    - a. Architect will return annotated PDF file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file. Digital photographic documentation will not be returned. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.

2. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
  - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically-submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
  6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
    - a. PDF Electronic file.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
  1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.

- e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
  3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
    - a. PDF Electronic file.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
  1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - c. Sample source.
    - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
  3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
  4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit two (2) full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect, will return submittal with options selected.
  6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing

color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.

- a. Number of Samples: Submit three (3) sets of Samples. Architect will retain two (2) Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
  - 1) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three (3) sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Submit product schedule in the following format:
    - a. PDF Electronic file.
- F. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures."
- G. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."
- H. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- I. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- J. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- K. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- L. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project.
- M. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- N. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed

before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

- O. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- P. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

## 2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

### 3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them to Contractor without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.

- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.

END OF SECTION 013300



## SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

#### 1.2 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- B. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire prevention program.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's Recommendation of Acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inches, 9-gauge, galvanized steel or aluminum, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6-feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inches- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inches-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inches-OD top and bottom rails.
  - 1. Provide concrete or galvanized steel bases for supporting posts.
  - 2. Provide protective barriers at bases to prevent tripping by pedestrians.
  
- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inches, 9-gauge, galvanized steel or aluminum, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6-feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inches-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inches-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inches-OD top and bottom rails.
  - 1. Provide concrete or galvanized steel bases for supporting posts.
  - 2. Provide protective barriers at bases to prevent tripping by pedestrians.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, User, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
  
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
  - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  
- C. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Recommendation of Acceptance, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
  
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
  
- E. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.

### 3.2 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:

1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
  2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Recommendation of Acceptance inspection. Remove before Recommendation of Acceptance. Personnel remaining after Recommendation of Acceptance will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Use of Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- D. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."
- E. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

### 3.3 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements of 2003 EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 56 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

- F. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel.
- G. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- H. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities.
- J. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire prevention program.
  - 1. Prohibit smoking on site.

#### 3.4 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
- C. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than date of Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - 2. At time of Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

## SECTION 015636 - TEMPORARY SECURITY ENCLOSURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Construction Drawings, Technical Specifications, Addenda, and general provisions of the Contract, including Contract General Conditions and Supplementary General Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary of Work"
  - 2. Section 01 56 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection"

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Temporary construction barriers, enclosures and passageways.
  - 1. Security barriers.
  - 2. Temporary chain link fencing.
- B. Protection of completed Work.
- C. Removal of construction facilities and temporary controls.

#### 1.3 CODES AND REGULATIONS

- A. Fire Regulations: Comply with requirements of fire authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Safety Regulations: Comply with requirements of all applicable Federal, State and local safety rules and regulations. Contractor shall be solely responsible for jobsite safety.
- C. Contractor shall provide substantial barriers, guard rails, and enclosures around Work areas and adjacent to embankments and excavations for the protection of workers and public. Contractor shall adhere to all governing standards & codes including, but not limited, to the following:
  - 1. 29 CFR 1910.144, Safety Color Code for Marking Physical Hazards
  - 2. 29 CFR 1910.145, Specifications for Accident Prevention Signs and Tags
  - 3. 29 CFR 1926, Safety Standards for Signs, Signals, and Barricades
  - 3. ANSI Z535.1, Safety Color Code
  - 4. ANSI Z535.2, Environmental and Facility Safety Signs
  - 5. ANSI Z535.3, Criteria for Safety Symbols
  - 6. ANSI Z535.4, Product Safety Signs and Labels
  - 7. ANSI Z535.5, Safety Tags and Barricade Tapes (Temporary Hazards)

## 8. Louisiana Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices

### 1.4 PROTECTION OF EXISTING CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Adjacent Facilities: Contractor shall restrict Work to limits indicated on the Drawings and as specified in Section 01 10 00 - Summary of Work: Protect existing, adjacent facilities and trees from damage, including soiling and debris accumulation.

### 1.5 MAINTENANCE OF CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND TEMPORARY CONTROLS

- A. Maintenance: Use all means necessary to maintain temporary barriers and enclosures in proper and safe condition throughout progress of the Work.
- B. Replacement: In the event of loss or damage, promptly restore temporary barriers and enclosures by repair or replacement at no change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

### 1.6 TEMPORARY BARRIERS AND ENCLOSURES

- A. Temporary Barriers, General: Provide temporary fencing, barriers and guardrails as necessary to provide for public safety, to prevent unauthorized entry to construction areas and to protect existing facilities and adjacent properties from damage from construction operations.

1. Refer to temporary fencing and phasing plan in the Drawings. Comply with requirements indicated.
2. Note requirements for continued occupancy and use of existing buildings and site areas during construction.
3. Comply with applicable requirements of Louisiana Building Code and industrial safety regulations. Review requirements with Designer and Owner.
4. Maintain unobstructed access to fire extinguishers, fire hydrants, temporary fire-protection facilities, stairways, and other access routes for firefighting.
5. Paint temporary barriers and enclosures with appropriate colors, graphics, and warning signs to inform personnel and public of possible hazard.
6. Where appropriate and necessary, provide warning lighting, including flashing red or amber lights.

- B. Temporary Chain-Link Fencing: Provide temporary portable chain-link fencing.

1. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inches, 9-gauge, galvanized steel or

aluminum, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6-feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inches- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inches-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inches-OD top and bottom rails.

- a. Provide concrete or galvanized steel bases for supporting posts.
  - b. Provide protective barriers at bases to prevent tripping by pedestrians.
- C. Temporary Partitions: Erect and maintain temporary partitions and temporary closures to limit dust and dirt migration, including migration into existing facilities, to separate areas from fumes and noise and to maintain fire-rated separations.
- D. Landscape Barriers: Provide barriers around trees and plants designated to remain. Coordinate with requirements specified in Section 01 56 39 – Temporary Tree and Plant Protection.
1. Locate barriers as directed outside of drip lines of trees and plants.
  2. Protect entire area under trees against vehicular traffic, stored materials, dumping, chemically injurious materials, and puddling or continuous running water.
  3. Contractor shall pay all costs to restore trees and plants within barriers that are damaged by construction activities. Restoration shall include replacement with plant materials of equal quality and size. Costs shall include all fines, if any, levied by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Barricades, Warning Signs and Lights, General: Comply with standards and code requirements for erection of structurally adequate barricades. Paint barricades with appropriate colors, graphics and warning signs to inform personnel and the public when protecting them against a hazard. Where appropriate and needed provide lighting, including flashing red or amber lights.
- F. Security Closures and Lockup: Provide substantial temporary closures of openings in exterior surfaces and interior areas as appropriate to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft and similar violations of security. Provide doors with self-closing hardware and locks.
1. Storage: Where materials and equipment must be stored, and are of value or attractive for theft, provide a secure lockup. Enforce discipline in connection with the installation and release of material to minimize the opportunity for theft and vandalism.
- G. Temporary Access, Passage and Exit Ways: Construct temporary stairs, ramps, and covered walkways, with related doors, gates, closures, guardrails, handrails, lighting and protective devices, to maintain access and exit ways to existing facilities to remain operational.
1. The design and location of temporary construction shall be by Contractor, subject to review by Designer and authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Provide temporary lighting, illuminated interior exit signage, non-illuminated directional and instructional signage, as required.
3. Temporary measures shall suit and connect to existing building systems, and shall be approved by Owner's Representative and authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK

- A. Protection of Installed Work, General: Provide temporary protection for installed products. Control traffic in immediate area to minimize damage.
- B. Protective Coverings: Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings as necessary to prevent damage from construction activities, such as coatings applications, and as necessary to prevent other than normal atmospheric soiling.
- C. Traffic Protection:
  1. Provide temporary covers of plywood, reinforced kraft paper or temporary rugs and mats, as necessary. Temporary covers shall not slip or tear under normal use nor shall they be a tripping hazard.
  2. Prohibit traffic and storage on landscaped areas.
  3. Protect newly fine graded, seeded and planted areas with barriers and flags to designate such areas as closed to pedestrian and vehicular traffic.

#### 1.8 REMOVAL OF TEMPORARY BARRIERS AND ENCLOSURES

- A. Removal of Temporary Barriers and Enclosures: Unless otherwise mutually agreed by Owner's Representative and Contractor, remove temporary materials, equipment, services, and construction prior to date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Cleaning and Repairs: Clean and repair damage, soiling and marring caused by installation or use of temporary barriers and enclosures.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not applicable to this Section.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not applicable to this Section.

END OF SECTION 015636



## SECTION 015639 – TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1.1 SCOPE OF STANDARDS

- A. This standard provides general guidance concerning the specific preferences of the Owner for Temporary Tree Protection.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section tree includes preservation procedures including:
  1. Establishing adequate tree protection fencing.
  2. Raising low limbs by cabling, trimming or tying to allow access through existing roads and to allow access around the site.
  3. Containing concrete and other chemicals to specific washout areas away from root zones.
  4. Limiting liming of soil to a maximum distance of 10' from any tree drip line.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The work of this section shall be performed by a company which specializes in the type of tree preservation work required for this Project, with successful experience and shall be performed by skilled workmen thoroughly experienced in the necessary crafts.

#### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Comply with General Conditions and Warranties.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 UNAUTHORIZED MATERIALS

- A. Materials and products required for work of this section shall not contain polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB) or other hazardous materials identified by the Louisiana Department of Health.

#### 2.2 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products of the manufacturers specified in this section establish the minimum aesthetic, functional and quality standards required for the work of this section.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TREE PRESERVATION GUIDELINES

#### A. Damaging Conditions:

1. Care shall be taken to preserve the tree root system(s). In the event that root(s) are impacted during construction, care shall be taken to minimize the impact to the root system. The Critical Root Zone (CRZ) of each tree shall be determined by the Designer. Tree protection fencing shall be placed at the extent of the CRZ.
2. It shall be determined by the Designer what pruning will be required to accommodate equipment. Pruning shall be done by a Certified Arborist at the Contractor's expense.
3. Prevent compaction of root zone areas by foot and vehicular traffic and material storage.
  - a. Soil compaction, one of the leading contributors to tree decline and death associated with construction, can be controlled with the use of adequate tree protection fencing and mulching.
  - b. Minimum tree protection fencing shall include the area from the tree trunk out to the canopy drip line or CRZ.
4. Prevent poisoning by pouring or spilling chemicals including gasoline, oil, paint, concrete and other injurious materials on or near root zone areas.
5. Prevent damage by improper pruning techniques or contact from any equipment.
6. Prevent damage from lack of moisture during periods without adequate natural rainfall, or from changing the natural drainage patterns. Supplemental irrigation may be required.
7. Prevent change in soil pH caused by the addition of lime in root zones by direct application or concrete waste. After protection fences are removed, no soil or fill shall be added within root zone.
8. Prevent change in grade. No change in grade within CRZ shall occur. Grade change outside of CRZ shall be limited to a maximum of 3" cut or fill.
9. If damage occurs to protected trees or trees become stressed as a result of the construction process, remediation measures shall be recommended by Certified Arborist and implemented at the Contractor's expense. If pruning is required, this shall be done only by or under the oversight of an Certified Arborist.

#### B. Protection Procedures:

1. Limit construction access by placing temporary tree protection fencing around trees to be preserved (See A1 above). Fence location shall be inspected regularly to maintain integrity of protection.
  - a. Fencing shall be placed as far out from the tree trunk as possible, a minimum distance to include the branch drip line or CRZ. And shall be installed and removed by hand.
  - b. In areas where construction access is required, the natural grade can be protected from compaction by placing a blanket of mulch 6 – 12” deep under  $\frac{3}{4}$ ” plywood over natural grade. This shall be removed by hand, using no equipment after the project is completed.
2. Route underground utility lines around root zone areas as a first priority; second priority, air spade; third priority, bore at a minimum depth of 3’ to eliminate open cuts through root zones.
  - a. When it is not possible to re-route, air spade, or to bore under the root system, hand dig to preserve roots  $\frac{3}{4}$ ” or larger. Air spade is required where applicable.
3. When, excavating with a backhoe or trencher in tree root zone areas is unavoidable, prune any ripped roots in the trench between the dig site and the tree trunk. Pruning shall take place with a chain saw, loppers, hand saw, etc. The cut shall take place behind the ripped area to the extent possible. (Depth of trench shall be limited to the depth of the required excavation for installation of the utility). Keep heavy equipment off of the area between the trench and trunk of the tree. Work from the outside most area of the tree, rather than setting up equipment between the proposed digging site and the trunk of the tree.
5. Cover exposed roots within 48 hours during hot dry periods to protect the roots from drying out.
  - a. Deep root fertilize.
    - 1) Recommended fertilizers – 3-1-1 or 2-1-1 ratio; the nitrogen content shall be no more than 50% water soluble.
    - 2) Remove any mulch by hand without using machinery.
    - 3) Apply approximately one (1) pound nitrogen per 1,000 square foot.
    - 4) Broadcast uniformly under the drip line of the tree and extend out approximately 10’ beyond the drip line.
    - 5) Replace the mulch.
    - 6) Irrigate sufficiently to activate the fertilizer; approximately 1” shall be applied in the absence of rain for three consecutive days.
6. During periods of minimal rainfall, supply supplemental moisture to damaged trees to help eliminate additional stress.
7. Wound dressing must be applied to pruning cuts or damage to trunks or limbs, on all oak trees within 15 minutes of damage.

C. Cautions:

1. The area of soil from the branch drip line to the tree trunk is considered the most important part of the tree feeder root zone area that should be protected from disturbance.
  - a. When possible, 10' beyond the drip line should also be protected.
2. Request consultation with the Designer before any disruption to the campus landscape.

3.2 TREE PRESERVATION PROCEDURES

A. Tree Protection Fencing:

1. Tree protection fencing shall be installed to protect all tree root zone areas adjacent to areas of construction activity as designated on the site plan.
  - a. Tree protection fences shall be installed to protect root zones as well as low growing limbs which exist adjacent to the construction and materials storage areas.
2. Tree protection fencing shall be installed prior to any site activity and shall remain in place in its original location until construction is complete and as authorized by the Owner.
3. Access into protected root zone areas should be prohibited.
  - a. Any necessary access into protected root zone areas should be approved by the Owner.

3.3 TREE SERVICES

A. Tree Limb Trimming:

1. Trees located adjacent to the construction access route to the construction site shall be pruned by ISA Certified Arborist to allow access of vehicles hauling construction materials.
  - a. Raising low limbs temporarily by using ropes to tie limbs up may be an alternative to trimming.

3.4 FAILURE TO PRESERVE TREES

- A. Trees that are designated to remain, which become damaged or die, shall be reviewed by the Designer prior to tree replacement. (NOT INCLUDING SIGNIFICANT TREES.).
- B. If the Contractor damages or destroys an existing tree, shrub and/or groundcover which he/she has been directed to preserve due to failure to comply with

Specifications and Drawings, the Contractor shall replace it with trees at twelve (12) foot height, shrubs at twenty-four (24) inch height and groundcovers at one (1) gallon containers spaced at eighteen (18) inches on center with same plant species, size and grade, with a healthy tree and/or shrub acceptable to the Owner, and the contractor shall guarantee that the tree, shrub and/or groundcover shall live for a period of one (1) year from Owner's Recommendation of Acceptance.

- C. Remove any damaged and destroyed trees from the site. All trees are not to be removed unless evaluated by the Architect prior to being cut down and removed from the site. Grub stumps and repair the ground surface. All costs shall be borne by the Contractor.

END OF SECTION 015639



## SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3. Installation of the Work.
  - 4. Cutting and patching.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 6. Progress cleaning.
  - 7. Starting and adjusting.
  - 8. Protection of installed construction.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
  - 1. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  - 2. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility or Designer that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."



### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
  - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3. Conceal pipes in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that

adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.

- H. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

### 3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
- G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - 3. Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.

- H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
  - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
- I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed.

### 3.6 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- E. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- F. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways.
- G. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- H. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.

- I. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.7 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Operate components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation.

### 3.8 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300

## SECTION 017329 - CUTTING AND PATCHING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- B. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions under which cutting and patching are to be performed.
  - 1. Compatibility: Before patching, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with in-place finishes or primers.
  - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- B. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- C. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
- D. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.

#### 3.3 PERFORMANCE

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.

1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- C. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
  2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
- D. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

END OF SECTION 017329





## SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures preceding the Recommendation of Acceptance.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
  - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures".
  - 2. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation".
  - 3. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents".

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Recommendation of Acceptance.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Contractor to provide four (4) copies of binders containing maintenance and warranty information.

#### 1.5 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES PRECEDING THE RECOMMENDATION OF ACCEPTANCE

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a preliminary list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's Preliminary Punch List).

- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of ten (10) days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Recommendation of Acceptance. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, final certifications, and similar documents.
  4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
    - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
  5. Submit test/adjust records.
  6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of ten (10) days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Recommendation of Acceptance. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Advise Owner through Designer of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  2. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  3. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  4. Instruct User's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.
  5. Advise Owner through Designer of any changeover in utilities.
  6. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with construction tools and similar elements.
  7. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
  8. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Recommendation of Acceptance a minimum of ten (10) days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Recommendation of Acceptance after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

#### 1.6 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance. Designer will verify.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  4. Instruct User's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

#### 1.7 PRELIMINARY LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each item needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Submit preliminary list of incomplete items in PDF electronic file format.
  2. Designer will prepare final punch list.

#### 1.8 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Recommendation of Acceptance is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.

1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
  4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals, to be submitted in triplicate.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for Recommendation of Acceptance for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.

- d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
- e. Clean exposed exterior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
- f. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
- g. Remove labels that are not permanent.
- h. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment if any and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
- i. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
- j. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Recommendation of Acceptance.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
  1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
  2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
  3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

END OF SECTION 017700

## SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
  2. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  3. Product maintenance manuals.
  4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

#### 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
  2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit 4 copies of operations and maintenance manuals in the following format to the Architect:
1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
    - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
    - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
  2. Four (4) paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect will provide a copy to User Agency, Umbrella Agency & FP&C.
- C. Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least fifteen (15) days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.

1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within fifteen (15) days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information.
- B. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- C. Title Page: Include the following information:
  1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  6. Name and contact information for Architect.
  7. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  8. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- D. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
- E. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- F. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.

2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

G. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.

1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
  - a. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents, and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
4. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
  - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
  - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## 2.2 OPERATION MANUALS

A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:

1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
3. Operating standards.
4. Operating procedures.
5. Operating logs.
6. Wiring diagrams.



7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

B. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

### 2.3 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Product name and model number.
  2. Manufacturer's name.

3. Color, pattern, and texture.
4. Material and chemical composition.
5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
5. Repair instructions.

E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

## 2.4 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.

C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:

1. Test and inspection instructions.
2. Troubleshooting guide.
3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.

- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
- C. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
- D. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
  - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
- E. Comply with Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823



## SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.

#### 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Marked up Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Submit one (1) color paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints. Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
  - 2. Submit PDF electronic files of color scanned record prints.
  - 3. Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of mark-ups are acceptable.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy or annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one paper copy or annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised Drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - c. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.

2. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
3. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
4. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

## 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as paper copy or annotated PDF electronic file.

## 2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
  1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Product Data as paper copy, annotated PDF electronic files or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as paper copy, annotated PDF electronic files or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
  
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 017839





## SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing User's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems and subsystems installed.

#### 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for User's use prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with User's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting User's operations and to ensure availability of User's personnel.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system or component:
  - 1. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - 2. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
    - a. Diagnostic instructions.
    - b. Test and inspection procedures.
  - 3. Maintenance: Include the following:

- a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
4. Repairs: Include the following:
- a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

#### 3.2 INSTRUCTION

- A. Engage qualified instructors to instruct User's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  1. User will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- B. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times.
  1. Schedule training with User with at least seven (7) calendar days' advance notice.
- C. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

END OF SECTION 017900

# ***DIVISION 6***

---

## WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com





SECTION 060560  
DECORATIVE PLASTIC LAMINATE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section Includes:

1. Standard decorative laminate surfacing for countertops as indicated, including accessories and trim needed for a complete installation.

1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Work of this section is related to work specified in the following Divisions:

1. Division 6
2. Division 12

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Reference Standards: In addition to requirements, comply with applicable provisions of following for design, materials, fabrication, and installation of component parts:

1. NEMA LD3-2005.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer's technical literature for decorative plastic laminate material, adhesive for bonding plastic laminate, miscellaneous accessories and related components.

B. Samples:

1. Decorative plastic laminates, 5 by 7 inches, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish.

C. Informational Submittals: Submit following packaged separately from other submittals:

1. Manufacturer's written handling, storage and installation instructions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator/Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating and installing decorative plastic laminate finished work with a minimum 3 years experience.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain decorative plastic laminate materials through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample Submittals.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, handle, and protect materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Provide protective coverings of suitable material. Take special precautions at corners.

## 1.7 SEQUENCING

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of plumbing, cut-outs and other related Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Formica Corp. Wilsonart International, Nevamar Decorative Surfaces.

### 2.2 MATERIALS AND COMPONENTS

A. Decorative Plastic Laminate: Manufacturers standard and custom decorative surface papers with melamine resins, bonded under heat and pressure to kraft paper backing sheet with phenolic resins.

B. Standard Decorative Laminate – General Purpose Type [Decorative Laminate] [Cabinet Liner] [Backing Sheet]:

1. Grade: Grade 10, HGS.
2. Thickness: .045 Inches (1.1mm).
3. Surface burning characteristics in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Finish:
5. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

C. Solid Color Decorative Laminate:

1. Grade: Grade CC, HCS
2. Thickness: .040 Inches (1.02 mm).
3. Surface burning characteristics in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Finish:
5. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

D. Edge Molding:

1. Finish:
2. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Contact cement.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Edge Molding: Provide type as specified in manufacturer's written installation instructions

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

- A. Examine surfaces for conditions that would adversely affect decorative plastic laminate surfacing or edge performance.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install decorative plastic laminate in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions, approved Submittals and requirements of Division 6 Section "Finish Carpentry," "Residential Casework".

- 1. Provide templates and rough-in measurements.

- B. Edge Molding: Install in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Cleaning:

- 1. Clean decorative plastic laminate surfaces and edge moldings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Protection:

- 1. Do not permit construction near unprotected surfaces.

END OF SECTION





SECTION 061000  
ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Framing with engineered wood products.
3. Shear wall panels.
4. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
5. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
6. Wood furring and grounds.
7. Wood sleepers.
8. Plywood backing panels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
3. Engineered wood products.
4. Shear panels.
5. Power-driven fasteners.
6. Powder-actuated fasteners.
7. Expansion anchors.
8. Metal framing anchors.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - 3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Engineered Wood Products: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  - 1. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

### 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  1. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  2. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  1. Framing for raised platforms.
  2. Framing for stages.
  3. Concealed blocking.
  4. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.
  5. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
  6. Roof construction.
  7. Plywood backing panels.

## 2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction, No. 3 or Stud grade.
  - 1. Application: Interior partitions not indicated as load-bearing.
  - 2. Species:
    - a. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
    - b. Northern species; NLGA.
    - c. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
    - d. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
  
- B. Framing Other Than Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: No. 2 grade.
  - 1. Application: Framing other than interior partitions not indicated as load-bearing.
  - 2. Species:
    - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
    - b. Southern pine; SPIB.
    - c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
    - d. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
    - e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
    - f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
    - g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
    - h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
    - i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  
- C. Framing Other Than Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,300,000 psi and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 850 psi for 2-inch nominal thickness and 12-inch nominal width for single-member use.
  - 1. Application: Framing other than interior partitions not indicated as load-bearing.
  
- D. Exposed Framing: Provide material hand-selected for uniformity of appearance and freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot-holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
  - 1. Application: Exposed exterior and interior framing indicated to receive a stained or natural finish.
  - 2. Species and Grade: As indicated above for load-bearing construction of same type.

## 2.5 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. Engineered Wood Products, General: Products shall contain no urea formaldehyde.
  
- B. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to

ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.

1. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2900 psi for 12-inch nominal-depth members.
  2. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 1,800,000 psi.
- C. Wood I-Joists: Prefabricated units, I-shaped in cross section, made with solid or structural composite lumber flanges and wood-based structural panel webs, let into and bonded to flanges. Provide units complying with material requirements of and with structural capacities established and monitored according to ASTM D 5055.
1. Web Material: Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 or Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1, Exterior grade.
  2. Structural Properties: Provide units with depths and design values not less than those indicated.
  3. Provide units complying with APA PRI-400, factory marked with APA trademark indicating nominal joist depth, joist class, span ratings, mill identification, and compliance with APA standard.
- D. Rim Boards: Product designed to be used as a load-bearing member and to brace wood I-joists at bearing ends, complying with research/evaluation report for I-joists.
1. Material: glued-laminated wood or product made from any combination solid lumber, wood strands, and veneers.
  2. Thickness: 1-1/8 inches.
  3. Provide performance-rated product complying with APA PRR-401, rim board plus grade, factory marked with APA trademark indicating thickness, grade, and compliance with APA standard.

## 2.6 SHEAR WALL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Shear Transfer Systems.
  2. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  3. Weyerhaeuser Company.
- B. Wood-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of wood perimeter framing, tie downs, and Exposure I, Structural I plywood or OSB sheathing.
1. Products shall contain no urea formaldehyde.
- C. Steel-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of cold-formed galvanized steel panel, steel top and bottom plates, and wood studs.

- D. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, which meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
  - 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 4. Cants.
  - 5. Furring.
  - 6. Grounds.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Standard, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species.
- C. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Mixed southern pine; No. 2 or 3 grade; SPIB.
  - 2. Eastern softwoods; No. 2, 3 or Common grade; NeLMA.
  - 3. Northern species; No. 2, 3 Common grade; NLGA.
  - 4. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

## 2.8 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exterior, AC or Exterior, C-C Plugged in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.

## 2.9 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- C. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

## 2.10 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
  - 2. KC Metals Products, Inc.
  - 3. Phoenix Metal Products, Inc.
  - 4. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - 5. USP Structural Connectors.
- B. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those of products indicated on drawings. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 coating designation.
  - 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
  - 1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.

## 2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; 1-inch nominal thickness, compressible to 1/32 inch; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- C. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.

Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.

- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install fire-retardant treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- E. Shear Wall Panels: Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- G. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
- I. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- J. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

### 3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes sufficiently wet that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000



SECTION 061533  
WOOD PATIO DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Wood decking.
  2. Stairs for elevated decks.
  3. Railings for elevated decks.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products and metal framing anchors.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates:
1. For lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
  2. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
1. Preservative-treated wood products.
  2. Decking fasteners.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMBER, GENERAL

- A. Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
1. Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency.
  2. For items that are exposed to view in the completed Work, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.

3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Maximum Moisture Content:

1. Boards: 19 percent.
2. Dimension Lumber: 19 percent

## 2.2 WOOD DECKING

A. Dimension Lumber Decking: Construction or No. 2 grade and any of the following species:

1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
2. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
3. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.

B. Dimension Lumber Decking: Deck Heart or Construction Heart.

## 2.3 WOOD RAILINGS

A. Dimension Lumber Railing Members: No. 2 grade and any of the following species:

1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
2. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
3. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.

B. Railing Boards: Any of the following species and grades:

1. Douglas fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
2. Hem-fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
3. Southern pine, B & B finish; SPIB.

## 2.4 POSTS

A. Dimension Lumber Posts: No. 2 grade and any of the following species:

1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
2. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
3. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
4. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
5. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
6. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.

B. Timber Posts: Southern pine; No. 2; SPIB.

## 2.5 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Pressure treat boards and dimension lumber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
- B. Pressure treat timber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC4a.
- C. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or chromium, except for timber posts.
- D. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
- E. Use process that does not include water repellents or other substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
- F. After treatment, redry boards and dimension lumber to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- G. Mark treated wood with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
  - 1. For items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that will not be exposed.
- H. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and the following:
  - 1. Framing members less than 18 inches above grade.
  - 2. Sills and ledgers.
  - 3. Members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - 4. Posts.
  - 5. Round wood poles.
  - 6. Decking.
  - 7. Stair treads.

## 2.6 COMPOSITE PLASTIC TREADS

- A. Composite Plastic Lumber: Solid shapes made from a mixture of cellulose fiber and polyethylene or polypropylene.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. AZEK Building Products, Inc.
    - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - c. Crawford Industries, LLC.
    - d. Deceuninck North America.

- e. Fiberon, LLC.
  - f. GAF Decking Systems, LLC.
  - g. GAF Materials Corporation.
  - h. Green Bay Decking.
  - i. Midwest Manufacturing Extrusion.
  - j. Millennium Decking Inc.
  - k. Premium Composites LLC.
  - l. Rhino Deck.
  - m. TAMKO Building Products, Inc.
  - n. Thermal Industries, Inc.
  - o. TimberTech.
  - p. Trex Company, Inc.
  - q. Universal Forest Products, Inc.
  - r. Weyerhaeuser Company.
2. Decking Standard: ICC-ES AC109.
  3. Surface Texture: Selected by Architect from manufacture's full range.
  4. Color: Selected by Architect from manufacture's full range.

## 2.7 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.
  1. Use fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153 or ASTM F 2329 unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless-steel fasteners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit work to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA WCD1 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install wood decking with crown up bark side up.
- D. Install plastic lumber to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Secure decking to framing with deck tracks or screws.
- F. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- G. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Apply copper naphthenate field treatment to comply with AWP4 M4, to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
- I. Securely attach exterior rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. ICC-ES AC70 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. "Fastening Schedule" in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 3. "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members" and "Alternate Attachments" in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

### 3.2 ELEVATED DECK JOIST FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches of bearing on wood or metal. Attach floor joists where framed into wood supporting members by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers. Do not notch joists.
- B. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams or girders not less than 4 inches or securely tie opposing members together.

### 3.3 STAIR INSTALLATION

- A. Provide stair framing with no more than 3/16-inch variation between adjacent treads and risers and no more than 3/8-inch variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.
- B. Treads and Risers: Secure by gluing and screwing to carriages. Countersink fastener heads, fill flush, and sand filler. Extend treads over carriages and finish with bullnose edge.

### 3.4 RAILING INSTALLATION

- A. Balusters: Fit to railings, glue, and screw in place. Countersink fastener heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
- B. Newel Posts: Secure to stringers and risers with through bolts.
- C. Railings: Secure wall rails with metal brackets. Fasten freestanding railings to newel posts and to trim at walls with countersunk-head wood screws or rail bolts.

END OF SECTION 061533



## SECTION 061600

### SHEATHING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

###### A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Roof sheathing.
3. Subflooring.
4. Underlayment.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

###### A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preserved treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements.

##### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

###### A. Evaluation Reports: For following products, from ICC-ES:

1. Preservative-treated plywood.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

###### A. Emissions: Products shall meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

###### B. Certified Wood: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":

1. Plywood.
2. Oriented strand board.

- C. Plywood: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2.

## 2.2 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

## 2.3 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I sheathing.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Wall Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.
- C. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, gypsum sheathing; with water-resistant-treated core and with water-repellent paper bonded to core's face, back, and long edges.
  - 1. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch thick.
- D. Cementitious Backer Units: ASTM C 1325, Type A.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.

## 2.4 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I sheathing.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Roof Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.

## 2.5 SUBFLOORING AND UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Plywood Subflooring: Exterior, Structural I single-floor panels or sheathing.
- B. Plywood Underlayment for Resilient Flooring: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1 Underlayment with fully sanded face.
- C. Plywood Underlayment for Carpet: DOC PS 1, Exterior, C-C Plugged.



## 2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 or ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
  - 3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings."
- D. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

### 3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
  - 1. Combination Subfloor-Underlayment:
    - a. Glue and screw to wood framing.
    - b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
  - 2. Subflooring:
    - a. Glue and screw to wood framing.
    - b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
  - 3. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
    - a. Nail to wood framing. Apply a continuous bead of glue to framing members at edges of wall sheathing panels.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
  - 4. Underlayment:
    - a. Screw to subflooring.
    - b. Space panels 1/32 inch apart at edges and ends.
    - c. Fill and sand edge joints of underlayment receiving resilient flooring immediately before installing flooring.

### 3.3 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to wood framing with screws.
  - 2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
  - 3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
  - 2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant.

Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

#### 3.4 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

END OF SECTION 061600



SECTION 062023  
INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior trim.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.
- B. Samples: For each type of paneling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: DOC PS 20.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of inspection agency indicating grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
  - a. For exposed lumber, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.

2.2 INTERIOR TRIM

A. Softwood Lumber Trim:

1. Species and Grade: Southern pine, C & Btr finish; SPIB.
2. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.

B. Moldings for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish): Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.

1. Softwood Moldings: WMMPA WM 4, P grade.
  - a. Species: Southern Pine C & Btr.
  - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Glue: Aliphatic-resin, polyurethane, or resorcinol wood glue recommended by manufacturer for general carpentry use.
  - 1. Wood glue shall have a VOC content of 30 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
  - 1. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
  - 4. Install stairs with no more than 3/16-inch variation between adjacent treads and risers and with no more than 3/8-inch variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.

### 3.3 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Miter at returns, miter at outside corners, and cope at inside corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.

### 3.4 PANELING INSTALLATION

END OF SECTION 062023

***DIVISION 7***

---

**THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com







SECTION 072100  
THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
  2. Mineral-wool blanket insulation.
  3. Loose-fill insulation.
  4. Spray-applied cellulosic insulation.
  5. Spray polyurethane foam insulation.
  6. Vapor retarders.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Research/evaluation reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  2. Guardian Building Products, Inc.
  3. Johns Manville.
  4. Knauf Insulation.
  5. Owens Corning.
- B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

- C. Polypropylene-Scrim-Kraft-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type II (non-reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier).
- D. Kraft-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type II (non-reflective faced), Class C (faced surface not rated for flame propagation); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier).
- E. Reinforced-Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
- F. Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class B (faced surface with a flame-propagation resistance of 0.12 W/sq. cm); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
- G. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide cross ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.

## 2.2 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Fibrex Insulations Inc.
  - 2. Owens Corning.
  - 3. Roxul Inc.
  - 4. Thermafiber.
- B. Unfaced, Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- C. Reinforced-Foil-Faced, Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.

## 2.3 LOOSE-FILL INSULATION

- A. Cellulosic-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C 739, chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.

- B. Glass-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type I for pneumatic application or Type II for poured application; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.

#### 2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, 10 mils thick, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.

- B. Glass-Fiber or Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  4. Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
  5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
  6. For wood-framed construction, install blankets according to ASTM C 1320 and as follows:
    - a. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, secure insulation by inset, stapling flanges to sides of framing members.
    - b. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
  7. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
    - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward interior of construction.
    - b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward areas of high humidity.
- C. Loose-Fill Insulation: Apply according to ASTM C 1015 and manufacturer's written instructions. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.
1. For cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, comply with CIMA's Bulletin #2, "Standard Practice for Installing Cellulose Insulation."
- D. Spray-Applied Insulation: Apply spray-applied insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- E. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
1. Loose-Fill Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft.

2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Place vapor retarders on side of construction indicated on Drawings. Extend vapor retarders to extremities of areas to protect from vapor transmission. Secure vapor retarders in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarders to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
- B. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping no fewer than two studs.
  1. Fasten vapor retarders to wood framing at top, end, and bottom edges; at perimeter of wall openings; and at lap joints. Space fasteners 16 inches o.c.
  2. Before installing vapor retarders, apply urethane sealant to flanges of metal framing including runner tracks, metal studs, and framing around door and window openings. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Seal butt joints with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
  3. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
- C. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarders.
- D. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarders.

END OF SECTION 072100



SECTION 072500  
WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

BASIS OF DESIGN:

- A. Weather barrier membrane (DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D)
- B. Seam Tape (DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape)
- C. Flashing (DuPont™ FlexWrap™)
- D. Fasteners

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International
  - 1. ASTM C 920; Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
  - 2. ASTM C 1193; Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants
  - 3. ASTM D 882; Test Method for Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting
  - 4. ASTM D 1117; Standard Guide for Evaluating Non-woven Fabrics
  - 5. ASTM E 84; Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
  - 6. ASTM E 96; Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
  - 7. ASTM E 1677; Specification for Air Retarder Material or System for Framed Building Walls
  - 8. ASTM E2178; Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials
  - 9. ASTM E2357; Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies
- B. AATCC – American Association of Textile Chemists & Colorists
  - 1. Test Method 127 Water Resistance: Hydrostatic Pressure Test
- C. TAPPI
  - 1. Test Method T-410; Grams of Paper and Paperboard (Weight per Unit Area)
  - 2. Test Method T-460; Air Resistance of Paper (Gurley Hill Method)

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Refer to Section 013300 Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer current technical literature for each component.
- C. Samples: Weather Barrier Membrane, minimum 8-1/2 inches by 11 inch.
- D. Quality Assurance Submittals
  - 1. Design Data, Test Reports: Provide manufacturer test reports indicating product compliance with indicated requirements.
  - 2. Manufacturer Instructions: Provide manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- E. Closeout Submittals
  - 1. Weather Barrier Warranty: Manufacturer's executed warranty form with authorized signatures and endorsements indicating date of Substantial Completion.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications
  - 1. Installer shall have experience with installation of weather barrier assemblies under similar conditions.
  - 2. Installation shall be in accordance with weather barrier manufacturer's installation guidelines and recommendations.
  - 3. Source Limitations: Provide weather barrier and accessory materials produced by single manufacturer.
- B. Mock-up
  - 1. Install mock-up using approved weather barrier assembly including fasteners, flashing, tape and related accessories per manufacturer's current printed instructions and recommendations.
    - a. Mock-up size: 10 feet by 10 feet.
    - b. Mock-up Substrate: Match wall assembly construction, including window opening.
    - c. Mock-up may remain as part of the work.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver weather barrier materials and components in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- B. Store weather barrier materials as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.



## 1.6 SCHEDULING

- A. Review requirements for sequencing of installation of weather barrier assembly with installation of windows, doors, louvers and flashings to provide a weather-tight barrier assembly.
- B. Schedule installation of weather barrier materials and exterior cladding within nine months of weather barrier assembly installation.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Refer to Warranty Requirements.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN

- A. DuPont Tyvek: homewrap
- B. Substitutions: approved equals.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Basis of Design: spunbonded polyolefin, non-woven, non-perforated, weather barrier is based upon DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D and related assembly components.
- B. Performance Characteristics:
  - 1. Air Penetration: 0.001 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> at 75 Pa when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178. Type 1 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 1677. ≤0.04 cfm/ft @ 75 Pa when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357.
  - 2. Water Vapor Transmission: 30 perms, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96, Method B.
  - 3. Water Penetration Resistance: 235 cm when tested in accordance with AATCC Test Method 127.
  - 4. Basis Weight: 2.4 oz/yd<sup>2</sup>, when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-410.
  - 5. Air Infiltration Resistance: Air infiltration at >750 seconds, when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-460.
  - 6. Tensile Strength: 33/41 lbs/in., when tested in accordance with ASTM D 822 , Method A.
  - 7. Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84 . Flame Spread: 15, Smoke Developed: 25.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Seam Tape: 3" DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape as distributed by DuPont.
- B. Fasteners:
  - 1. DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Caps: [#4 nails with large 1-inch plastic cap fasteners] [1-inch minimum plastic cap staple with leg length sufficient to achieve a minimum penetration of 5/8-inch into the wood stud].
- C. Sealants
  - 1. Provide sealants that comply with ASTM C 920, elastomeric polymer sealant to maintain watertight conditions.
  - 2. Products:
    - a. DuPont™ Residential Sealant
    - b. Sealants recommended by the weather barrier manufacturer.
- D. Flashing
  - 1. DuPont™ FlexWrap™: Flexible membrane flashing materials for window openings and penetrations.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify substrate and surface conditions are in accordance with weather barrier manufacturer recommended tolerances prior to installation of weather barrier and accessories.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION - WEATHER BARRIER

- A. Install weather barrier over exterior face of exterior wall substrate in accordance with manufacturer recommendations
- B. Install weather barrier prior to installation of windows and doors.
- C. Start weather barrier installation at a building corner, leaving 6-12 inches of weather barrier extended beyond corner to overlap.
- D. Install weather barrier in a horizontal manner starting at the lower portion of the wall surface with subsequent layers installed in a shingling manner to overlap lower layers. Maintain weather barrier plumb and level

- E. Sill Plate Interface: Extend lower edge of weather barrier over sill plate interface 3-6 inches. Secure to foundation with elastomeric sealant as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.
- F. Window and Door Openings: Extend weather barrier completely over openings.
- G. Overlap weather barrier
  - 1. Exterior corners: minimum 12 inches.
  - 2. Seams: minimum 6 inches.
- H. Weather Barrier Attachment:
  - 1. (Specifier Note: Steel or Wood Frame Construction) Attach weather barrier to studs through exterior sheathing. Secure using weather barrier manufacturer recommend fasteners, space 6 -18 inches vertically on center along stud line, and 24 inch on center, maximum horizontally.

### 3.3 SEAMING

- A. Seal seams of weather barrier with seam tape at all vertical and horizontal overlapping seams.
- B. Seal any tears or cuts as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

### 3.4 OPENING PREPARATION (for use with flanged windows)

- A. Cut weather barrier in an “I-cut” pattern. A modified “I-cut” is also acceptable
  - 1. Cut weather barrier horizontally along the bottom and top of window opening.
  - 2. From top center of the window opening, cut weather barrier vertically down to the sill.
  - 3. Fold side and bottom weather barrier flaps into window opening and fasten.
- B. Cut a head flap at 45-degree angle in the weather barrier at window head to expose 8 inches of sheathing. Temporarily secure weather barrier flap away from sheathing with tape.

### 3.5 FLASHING (for use with flanged windows)

- A. Cut [7-inch] [9-inch] wide DuPont™ FlexWrap™ a minimum of 12 inches longer than width of sill rough opening.
- B. Cover horizontal sill by aligning DuPont™ FlexWrap™ edge with inside edge of sill. Adhere to rough opening across sill and up jambs a minimum of 6 inches. Secure flashing tightly into corners by working in along the sill before adhering up the jambs.

- C. Fan DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at bottom corners onto face of wall. Firmly press in place. Mechanically fasten fanned edges.
- D. On exterior, apply continuous bead of sealant to wall or backside of window mounting flange across jambs and head. Do not apply sealant across sill.
- E. Install window according to manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Tape head flap in accordance with manufacturer recommendations
- G. On interior, install backer rod in joint between frame of window and flashed rough framing. Apply sealant around entire window to create air seal. Apply sealant in accordance with sealant manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C 1193.

### 3.6 THRU-WALL FLASHING / WEATHER BARRIER INTERFACE AT WINDOW HEAD

- A. Cut flap in weather barrier at window head.
- B. Prime exposed sheathing.
- C. Install lintel as required. Verify end dams extend 4 inches minimum beyond opening.
- D. Install end dams bedded in sealant.
- E. Adhere 2 inches minimum thru-wall flashing to wall sheathing. Overlap lintel with thru-wall flashing and extend ¼ inch minimum beyond outside edge of lintel to form drip edge.
- F. Apply sealant along thru-wall flashing edges.
- G. Fold weather barrier flap back into place and tape bottom edge to thru-wall flashing.
- H. Tape diagonal cuts of weather barrier.
- I. Secure weather barrier flap with fasteners.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Notify manufacturer's designated representative to obtain required periodic observations of weather barrier assembly installation.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed weather barrier from damage.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 073113  
ASPHALT SHINGLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Asphalt shingles.
  - 2. Underlayment.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and blend specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Research/evaluation reports.
- C. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide asphalt shingles and related roofing materials identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per test method below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class A; ASTM E 108 or UL 790, for application and roof slopes indicated.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace asphalt shingles that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Material Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Substantial Completion, prorated, with first five years nonprorated.
  - 2. Algae-Discoloration Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will not discolor 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASPHALT SHINGLES

- A. Laminated Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Owen's Corning Durathon Series or Comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Atlas Roofing Corporation.
    - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - c. GAF Materials Corporation.
  - 3. Standard test method for wind resistance of asphalt shingles ASTM D7158, Class H.
  - 4. Standard wind speed resistance: 132 mph.
  - 5. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 6. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
  - 7. Color and Blends: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles.

### 2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type I, asphalt-saturated organic felts, nonperforated.
- B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied.
  - 1. Apply at all valleys and roof/wall transitions

### 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.



- B. Roofing Nails: ASTM F 1667; aluminum, stainless-steel, copper, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire shingle nails, minimum 0.120-inch- (3-mm-) diameter, barbed shank, sharp-pointed, with a minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter flat head and of sufficient length to penetrate 3/4 inch (19 mm) into solid wood decking or extend at least 1/8 inch (3 mm) through OSB or plywood sheathing.
  - 1. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.
- C. Felt Underlayment Nails: Aluminum, stainless-steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire with low-profile capped heads or disc caps, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum diameter.

## 2.4 METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. General: Comply with requirements in Specification and Drawings.
  - 1. Sheet Metal: Zinc-tin alloy-coated steel or Anodized aluminum.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with underlayment manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Double-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Install a 19-inch- (485-mm-) wide starter course at eaves and completely cover with full-width second course. Install succeeding courses lapping previous courses 19 inches (485 mm) in shingle fashion. Lap ends a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment nails.
  - 1. Apply a continuous layer of asphalt roofing cement over starter course and on felt underlayment surface to be concealed by succeeding courses as each felt course is installed. Apply over entire roof.
  - 2. Lap edges over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water.
  - 3. Terminate felt underlayment flush extended up not less than 4 inches (100 mm)] against sidewalls, curbs, chimneys, and other roof projections.
  - 4. Install fasteners at no more than 36 inch (900 mm)o.c.

### 3.2 METAL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Install metal flashings according to recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual" and asphalt shingle recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."

### 3.3 ASPHALT SHINGLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions, recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual," and asphalt shingle recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
- B. Install starter strip along lowest roof edge, consisting of an asphalt shingle strip at least 7 inches (175 mm) wide with self-sealing strip face up at roof edge.
  - 1. Extend asphalt shingles 1/2 inch (13 mm) over fasciae at eaves and rakes.
  - 2. Install starter strip along rake edge.
- C. Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with manufacturer's recommended offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
- D. Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with manufacturer's recommended offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
- E. Install asphalt shingles by single-strip column or racking method, maintaining uniform exposure. Install full-length first course followed by cut second course, repeating alternating pattern in succeeding courses.
- F. Fasten asphalt shingle strips with a minimum of six roofing nails located according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Where roof slope is less than 4:12, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.
  - 2. When ambient temperature during installation is below 50 deg F (10 deg C), seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.
- G. Open Valleys: Cut and fit asphalt shingles at open valleys, trimming upper concealed corners of shingle strips. Maintain uniform width of exposed open valley from highest to lowest point.

END OF SECTION 07311

## SECTION 074661

### FIBER CEMENT SIDING AND TRIM

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Siding Panels
  - 2. Accessories and Trim

##### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C 920 – Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 1998
- B. ASTM C 1185 – Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Non – Asbestos Fiber Cement Flat Sheet, Roofing and Siding Shingles, and Clapboards; 1999
- C. ASTM C 1186 – Standard Specification for Flat Non – Asbestos Fiber Cement Sheets; 1999
- D. ASTM E 72 - Standard Test Methods of Conducting Strength Tests of Panels for Building Construction; 1998
- E. ASTM E 84 – Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 1999
- F. ASTM E 96 – Standard Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials: 1995
- G. ASTM E 136 – Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace AT 750 Degrees C; 1999
- H. ASTM E 228 – Standard Test Method for Linear Thermal Expansion of Solid Materials With a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer; 1995
- I. ASTM G 26 – Standard Practice for Operating Light – Exposure Apparatus (Xenon-Arc Type) With and Without Water for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials; 1996

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Preparation Instructions and recommendations.
  2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  3. Installation methods, including nailing patterns.
  4. Applicable model code authority evaluation report (ICBO, BOCA, CCMC, etc.)
- B. Siding manufacturer's requirements for vapor retarders, primer, paint, etc., to be installed by others.
- C. Samples: Two 6" x 6" samples of each type of siding and trim and in each texture required.
- D. Maintenance and periodic inspection recommendations.
- 1.4 WARRANTY
- A. Register manufacturer's warranty, made out in Louisiana Army National Guard, with a copy to LANR.
1. Warranty Period: 30 non-pro-rated years on siding and a 15 non-pro-rated year minimum on all trim material from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN

- A. Fiber Cement Siding: Fiber cement siding and accessories complying with ASTM C1185-96, ASTM E72-95 and ASTM E 84.
1. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.  
26300 La Alameda, Suite 400  
Mission Viejo, CA 92691
  2. Color and Texture: Primed ready for paint. Prime all cut edges prior to installation.  
Texture: Smooth.
  3. Or Approved Equal.
  4. Exterior Pattern:
    - a. Plank Smooth
    - b. Hardietrim - Smooth

### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Trim: "Hardie Artisan Accent Trim" rustic fiber-cement trim boards, nominal 2x4 and 2x6 (1-1/2"x3-1/2" and 1-1/2"x5-1/2" actual).
- C. Joint Treatment: Caulk joints per Section 07920.

- D. Siding Nails: Fasteners shall be corrosion resistant, high stainless steel; .092" shank x .225" head x 2" siding nails.
- E. Fiber- cement mount blocks: sturdy mount
  - a. receptacle mount
  - b. universal mount
  - c. split mount
- F. Field Finish Paint: 100 percent acrylic latex as specified in Section 09900.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to commencing installation, verify governing dimensions of building and condition of substrate.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Examine, clean, and repair as necessary any substrate conditions that would be detrimental to proper installation.
- B. Do not begin installation until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and drawing details.
  - 1. Read warranty and comply with all terms necessary to maintain warranty coverage.
  - 2. Use trim details indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Touch up all field cut edges before installing.
  - 4. Pre-drill nail holes if necessary to prevent breakage.
- B. Over Plywood Sheathing: Fasten siding through sheathing into studs.
- C. Position all ends and edges of all interior and exterior panels over framing members, except when butt joints are at right angles to framing members, as in perpendicular application. Install double blocking at panel butt joints.
- D. To minimize end joints, use panels of maximum practical lengths.

- E. Allow space between both ends of siding panels that butt against trim for thermal movement; seal joint between panels and trim with exterior grade sealant.
- F. Do not install siding less than 6 inches from surface of ground nor closer than 1 inch to roofs, patios, porches, and other surfaces where water may collect.
- G. After installation, seal all joints. Seal around all penetrations. Paint all exposed cut edges.
- H. Finish Painting: Specified in Division 9.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. At completion of work, remove debris caused by siding installation from project site.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 074661

SECTION 074616  
ALUMINUM SIDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes aluminum fascia.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For aluminum fascia including related accessories.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificates.
- B. Research/evaluation reports.
- C. Sample warranty.

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ALUMINUM FASCIA

- A. Aluminum Fascia: Formed and coated product complying with AAMA 1402.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Gentek Building Products, Inc.
  - b. Kaycan Ltd.
  - c. Mastic Home Exteriors.
  - d. Norandex; Building Materials Distribution, Inc.
  - e. Rollex Corporation.
- B. Texture: Wood grain.
- C. Nominal Thickness: 0.019 inch.
- D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard three-coat PVDF.
1. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Aluminum Accessories: Where aluminum accessories are indicated, provide accessories complying with AAMA 1402.
1. Texture: Wood grain.
  2. Nominal Thickness: 0.019 inch.
  3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard three-coat PVDF.
- B. Flashing: Provide aluminum flashing complying with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.
1. Finish for Aluminum Flashing: Same as aluminum fascia.
- C. Fasteners:
1. For fastening to wood, use siding nails of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) into substrate.
  2. For fastening to metal, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1/4 inch (6 mm), or three screw-threads, into substrate.
  3. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum fasteners. Where fasteners are exposed to view, use prefinished aluminum fasteners in color to match item being fastened.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
1. Center nails in elongated nailing slots without binding siding to allow for thermal movement.



- B. Install aluminum fascia and related accessories according to AAMA 1402.
  - 1. Install fasteners no more than 12 inches o.c.
- C. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.
- D. Where aluminum siding contacts dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
- B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION 074616



# ***DIVISION 8***

---

## **OPENINGS**

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com





## SECTION 081000 STEEL DOORS

### Part 1: GENERAL

- 1.1 Product Description: Side-hinged door systems meeting specifications.
- 1.2.1 Door system components include: door panel(s), glass inserts, door frame, hinges, weather seals.

### Part 2: PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Door Panel: Steel-edge steel doors shall be fabricated using 4-piece construction that includes primed white 0.0215" (+/-0.0015) hot dipped galvanized strike side and hinge side steel facings, coated with multiple protective chemical layers to promote paint adhesion and deter corrosion. Top rail is finger jointed wood or steel channel. Composite bottom rail is moisture and decay resistant. Lock areas reinforced for single and double bore configurations. Door facings are to be interlocked together utilizing plastic thermal break forming a mechanical bond. Insulated core to be poured-in-place, high performance polyurethane foam (2.0 pcf minimum) forming a secure attachment to all door components.
- 2.1.1 Bottom rail may be machined to accept weather seal. Mounting surface for latching hardware to be reinforced with solid internal blocking. Hinge preparations with 12 gauge reinforcement plate are to be placed per specifications and are to be machined for standard weight full mortise 4" butt hinges. Latch preparations are to be placed per specifications. Face bore(s) for cylindrical lock and deadbolt are to be 2-1/8" diameter at 2-3/4" or 2-3/8" backset and 5-1/2" on center (5-1/2" or 10-1/2" on 8'0" panels).
- 2.2 Glass Insert: glass inserts shall be fabricated in 1/2" double pane construction. Glass frame may be "lip lite" design in rigid plastic or cellular vinyl.
- 2.3 Door Frame: Wood frames shall be fabricated as a single rabbet jamb design. Hinge jamb(s), strike jamb, head jamb, and mullion(s) shall be machined to accept a kerf applied weather seal. Hinge jamb preparations are to be placed per specifications and are to be machined for standard weight full mortise 4" butt hinges. Strike jamb preparations are to be placed per specifications and are to be machined for full lip cylindrical strike plate. Inswing or bumper outswing threshold shall be high-dam design. Low profile threshold shall be required for handicap accessible openings. Double door units shall include a t-astragal attached to the "passive" panel with top and bottom flush bolts that securely strike into the head jamb and threshold.
- 2.4 Hinges: (3) standard weight full mortise 4" butt hinges are required on doors 7'0" height or smaller & (4) on doors greater than 7'0".
- 2.5 Weather Seal: Door frame shall be fabricated featuring a vinyl wrapped foam filled compression design that is kerf installed. Corner seals shall be installed to the rabbet section of the door frame at the bottom of the hinge and lock jamb. Door bottom sweep shall be sealed and securely attached to the operable door

panel(s).

### Part 3: DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING

- 3.1 Delivery: Reasonable care shall be exercised during shipping and handling in keeping with the decorative nature of product.
- 3.2 Storage & Protection: Store upright in a dry, well ventilated building or shelter at a constant temperature. Do not store in damp areas or freshly plastered buildings. Place units on wood blocks at least 2" high to prevent moisture at threshold and/or possible damage. Do not place in non-vented plastic or canvas shelters.

### Part 4: EXECUTION

- 4.1 Examination: Site verification of substrate conditions, which have been previously completed, are acceptable for the product installation instructions in accordance with manufacturer's specifications. Verify that door frame openings are constructed plumb, true and level before beginning installation process. Select fasteners of adequate type, number and quality to perform the intended functions.
- 4.2 Installation: Remove protective packaging just prior to installation. Installer shall be experienced in performing work required and shall be specialized in the installation of work similar to that required for this project. Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions and product packaging instructions for installation.
- 4.3 Flashing, Insulating & Trimming: Exterior of installed unit shall be flashed, trimmed & sealed to prevent air infiltration and/or water penetration. Interior of installed unit shall be insulated & trimmed to prevent thermal and/or acoustical transmission.
- 4.4 Finishes: Various types of materials are used in the construction of the door system; each shall be sealed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications to protect against various environmental conditions. Make sure to seal and inspect all 5-surfaces (top, hinge side, lock side, exterior face and interior face) of the active door panel(s). Finishing and/or re-finishing must be completed within 45-days from the time the protective packaging was removed and/or the installation was performed. Conduct periodic inspections of all coated surfaces to insure that door components are not exposed. Inspections should occur at least once a year. Reseal the surface as needed.

### Part 5: BUILDING CODE & REGULATORY COMPLIANCE

- 5.1 Thermal Performance: Unit scheduled for installation in openings requiring compliance with national, state, or local thermal resistance and/or solar heat gain shall be clearly noted when product is ordered.
- 5.2 General Performance: All door systems are designed to comply with water penetration guidelines in accordance with ASTM.

Part 6: WARRANTY

- 6.1 Manufacturer warrants the panel to be free of manufacturing defects in material and workmanship for 10-years. Please check with manufacturer or distributor for current warranty terms and conditions.

END OF SECTION





## SECTION 081100 HOLLOW CORE INTERIOR DOORS

### PART 1: GENERAL

#### 1.1 Scope

1.2 Product Description: 13/4" or 13/8" sidehinged door systems.

1.2.1 Door system components include: door panel(s), bifold panel(s), door frame, hinges.

### PART 2: BASIC MATERIALS

2.1 Door Panel: Molded Panel doors shall be fabricated using loose lay up assembly that includes molded wood fiber facings, wood or MDF stiles, wood or MDF rails and corrugated cell core. Door facings are to be bonded to stiles, rails and core forming a 3ply structural attachment. Water based latex primer used on door facings (stile and rails per request) unless factory prefinished.

2.1.1 Mounting surface for latching hardware to be reinforced with solid internal support. Hinge preparations for 13/8" thick doors to be machined for standard weight radius mortise 31/2" hinges and 13/4" thick doors to be machined to accept 4" hinges. Latch preparations are to be placed in the area of solid internal supports. Face bore(s) for cylindrical lock and deadbolt are to be 21/8" diameter at 23/4" or 23/8" backset.

2.1.2 Vertical edge of door to be square, beveled both sides or lock stile only. Edge preparation should be clearly noted when the product is ordered.

2.3 Door Frame: Wood jambs shall be fabricated as a flat jamb with doorstop applied or 2-piece split jamb. Hinge jamb preparations for 1-3/8" thick doors to be machined for standard weight radius mortise 31/2" hinges and 1-3/4" thick doors to be machined to accept 4" hinges. Strike jamb preparations are to be machined for full lip cylindrical strike plate. Double door units shall include preparations for ball catch located at the top of door on both door panels designed to strike into the head jamb.

2.4 Hinges: (3) standard weight radius mortise hinges are required on doors 7'0" height or smaller & (4) on doors greater than 7'0".

### PART 3: DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING

3.1 Delivery: Reasonable care shall be exercised during shipping and handling in keeping with the decorative nature of product.

3.2 Storage & Protection: Store upright in a dry, well ventilated build-

ing or shelter at a constant temperature. Do not store in damp, freshly plastered, drywall or concrete areas until materials have completely dried. Doors should be stored at least 10' away from any heat source to help prevent uneven drying. Doors must be sealed with an oilbased sealer or primer if stored for long periods.

#### PART 4: EXECUTION

4.1 Examination: Site verification of substrate conditions, which have been previously completed, are acceptable for the product installation instructions in accordance with manufacturer's specifications. Verify that door frame openings are constructed plumb, true and level before beginning installation process. Select fasteners of adequate type, number and quality to perform the intended functions.

4.2 Installation: Remove protective packaging just prior to installation. Installer shall be experienced in performing work required and shall be specialized in the installation of work similar to that required for this project. Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions and product packaging instructions for installation.

4.3 Finishes: Paint instructions for complete finishing details. Various types of materials are used in the construction of the door system; each shall be sealed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications to protect against various environmental conditions. Make sure to completely seal and inspect all 6surfaces (top, hinge side, bottom, lock side, front face and back face) with two coat minimum on operable panel(s). Finishing and/or refinishing must be completed immediately after door has acclimated to the environment where it is to be installed and within a maximum of 7 days. Avoid finishing after a rain or damp and during periods of higher than average humidity. Conduct periodic inspections of all coated surfaces to insure that door components are not exposed. Inspections should occur at least once a year. Reseal the surface as needed.

#### PART 5: GENERAL PERFORMANCE

5.1 Acoustical Performance: Unit scheduled for installation in opening requiring a specific noise control rating shall be clearly noted when product is ordered. 1-3/8" thick molded panel Series door with corrugated core sound transmission class (STC) rating is 26.

#### PART 6: WARRANTY

6.1 Limited 1 Year Check with manufacturer or distributor for current warranty terms and conditions.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 085313

### VINYL WINDOWS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes vinyl-framed windows.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware, accessories, insect screens, operational clearances, and details of installation, including anchor, flashing, and sealant installation.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color specified, 2 by 4 inches in size.
- D. Product Schedule: For vinyl windows. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

##### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Sample warranties.

##### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace vinyl windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period:
    - a. Window: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Glazing Units: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide[product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  2. Crestline Windows and Doors; SNE Enterprises, Inc.
  3. Fleetwood Windows & Doors.
  4. Gerkin Windows and Doors.
  5. JELD-WEN, Inc.
  6. Kolbe & Kolbe Millwork Co., Inc.
  7. Milgard Windows, Inc.
  8. Pella Corporation.
  9. Quaker Windows Products Co.
  10. Schwinco.
  11. Serious Materials Inc.
  12. Simonton Building Products, Inc.
  13. Thermal Windows, Inc.
  14. Vetter.
  15. Weather Shield Mfg., Inc.
  16. YKK AP America Inc.
  17. MGM Industries.

### 2.2 VINYL WINDOWS

- A. Operating Types: Double Hung
- B. Frames and Sashes: Impact-resistant, UV-stabilized PVC complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
1. Finish: Integral color, white.
  2. Gypsum Board Returns: Provide at interior face of frame.
- C. Insulating-Glass Units: ASTM E 2190.
1. Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
    - a. Tint: Clear.
    - b. Kind: Fully tempered.
  2. Lites: 2/1.
  3. Filling: Fill space between glass lites with argon.
  4. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second or third surface.

- D. Glazing System: Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal.
- E. Hardware, General: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant material sized to accommodate sash weight and dimensions.
  - 1. Exposed Hardware Color and Finish: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- F. Projected Window Hardware:
  - 1. Gear-Type Rotary Operators: Complying with AAMA 901 when tested according to ASTM E 405, Method A. Provide operators that function without requiring the removal of interior screens or using screen wickets.
    - a. Type and Style: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of types and styles.
  - 2. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard type for sash weight and size indicated.
  - 3. Single-Handle Locking System: Operates positive-acting arms that pull sash into locked position. Provide one arm on sashes up to 29 inches tall and two arms on taller sashes.
- G. Hung Window Hardware:
  - 1. Counterbalancing Mechanism: AAMA 902.
  - 2. Locks and Latches: Operated from the inside only.
  - 3. Tilt Hardware: Releasing tilt latch allows sash to pivot about horizontal axis.
- H. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Fasteners: Noncorrosive and compatible with window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
  - 1. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners to the greatest extent possible. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish hardware being fastened.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Dividers (False Muntins): Provide divider grilles in designs indicated for each sash lite.
  - 1. Quantity and Type: permanently located between insulating-glass lites as indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Material: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 3. Pattern: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Profile: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 5. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.4 INSECT SCREENS

- A. General: Fabricate insect screens to fully integrate with window frame. Provide screen for each operable exterior sash. Screen wickets are not permitted.
  - 1. Type and Location: Full, outside for double-hung Half, outside for single-hung sashes.
- B. Aluminum Frames: Complying with SMA 1004 or SMA 1201.
  - 1. Finish for Exterior Screens: Baked-on organic coating in color selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Glass-Fiber Mesh Fabric: mesh complying with ASTM D 3656.
  - 1. Mesh Color: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate vinyl windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
- B. Glaze vinyl windows in the factory.
- C. Weather strip each operable sash to provide weathertight installation.
- D. Provide mullions and cover plates, compatible with window units, complete with anchors for support to structure and installation of window units. Allow for erection tolerances and provide for movement of window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections. Provide mullions and cover plates capable of withstanding design wind loads of window units. Provide manufacturer's standard finish to match window units.
- E. Mount hardware through double walls of vinyl extrusions or provide corrosion-resistant reinforcement.
- F. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Allow for scribing, trimming, and fitting at Project site.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components. For installation procedures and requirements not addressed in manufacturer's written instructions, comply with installation requirements in ASTM E 2112.



- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction to produce weathertight construction.
- C. Adjust operating sashes and hardware for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
- D. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
- E. Remove and replace sashes if glass has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.

END OF SECTION 085313



## SECTION 088300

### MIRRORS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of silvered flat glass mirrors:
  - 1. Annealed monolithic glass mirrors.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include mirror elevations, edge details, mirror hardware, and attachments to other work.

##### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with GANA's "Glazing Manual" and "Mirrors, Handle with Extreme Care: Tips for the Professional on the Care and Handling of Mirrors."
- B. Safety Glazing Products: For tempered mirrors, provide products complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
- C. Preconstruction Mirror Mastic Compatibility Test: Submit mirror mastic products to mirror manufacturer for testing to determine compatibility of mastic with mirror backing and substrates on which mirrors are installed.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 SILVERED FLAT GLASS MIRRORS

- A. Glass Mirrors, General: ASTM C 1503; manufactured using copper-free, low-lead mirror coating process.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.
  - b. Avalon Glass and Mirror Company.
  - c. Binswanger Mirror; a division of Vitro America, Inc.
  - d. D & W Incorporated
  - e. Donisi Mirror Company.
  - f. Gardner Glass, Inc.
  - g. Gilded Mirrors, Inc.
  - h. Guardian Industries.
  - i. Head West.
  - j. Independent Mirror Industries, Inc.
  - k. Lenoir Mirror Company.
  - l. Maran-Wurzell Glass & Mirror.
  - m. National Glass Industries.
  - n. Stroupe Mirror Co., Inc.
  - o. Sunshine Mirror; Westshore Glass Corp.
  - p. Virginia Mirror Company, Inc.
  - q. Walker Glass Co., Ltd.

B. Clear Glass: Mirror Glazing Quality; ultraclear (low-iron) float glass with a minimum 91 percent visible light transmission.

1. Nominal Thickness: 5.0 mm.

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- B. Edge Sealer: Approved by mirror manufacturer.
- C. Mirror Mastic: An adhesive setting compound, asbestos-free, produced specifically for setting mirrors.
  1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of not more than 70 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Film Backing for Safety Mirrors: Film backing and pressure-sensitive adhesive; both compatible with mirror backing paint as certified by mirror manufacturer.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Cutouts: Fabricate cutouts before tempering for notches and holes in mirrors without marring visible surfaces. Locate and size cutouts so they fit closely around penetrations in mirrors.
- B. Mirror Edge Treatment: Rounded polished. Seal edges of mirrors with edge sealer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine substrates, over which mirrors are to be mounted, with Installer present, for compliance with installation tolerances, substrate preparation, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility of mirror mastic with existing finishes or primers.
  - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
- B. Comply with mastic manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparation of substrates, including coating substrates with mastic manufacturer's special bond coating where applicable.
- C. General: Install mirrors to comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions and with referenced GANA publications. Mount mirrors accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.
- D. Wall-Mounted Mirrors: Install mirrors with mastic and mirror hardware. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on backs of mirrors. Apply mastic to comply with mastic manufacturer's written instructions for coverage and to allow air circulation between back of mirrors and face of mounting surface.
- E. Protect mirrors from breakage and contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.
- F. Do not permit edges of mirrors to be exposed to standing water.
- G. Maintain environmental conditions that will prevent mirrors from being exposed to moisture from condensation or other sources for continuous periods of time.
- H. Wash exposed surface of mirrors not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash mirrors as recommended in writing by mirror manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 088300

## SECTION 089000

### HARDWARE

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes items known commercially as finish or door hardware that are required for swing, sliding, and folding doors, except special types of unique hardware specified in the same sections as the doors and door frames on which they are installed.
- B. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Hinges
  - 2. Lock cylinders and keys
  - 3. Lock and latch sets
  - 4. Miscellaneous door control devices
  - 5. Door trim units
  - 6. Weatherstripping for exterior doors by door supplier
  - 7. Thresholds by door supplier

##### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Standards of the following as referenced:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
  - 2. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI)
  - 3. Factory Mutual (FM)
  - 4. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
  - 5. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. (UL)
  - 6. Warnock Hersey

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification sections.
- B. Product data including manufacturers' technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements. For items

other than those scheduled in the Headings of Section 3, provide catalog information for the specified items and for those submitted.

- C. Final hardware schedule coordinated with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
1. Final Hardware Schedule Content: Based on hardware indicated, organize schedule into vertical format "hardware sets" indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening. Use specification Heading numbers with any variations suffixed a, b, etc. Include the following information:
    - a. Type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
    - b. Name and manufacturer of each item.
    - c. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
    - d. Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
    - e. Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
    - f. Mounting locations for hardware.
    - g. Door and frame sizes and materials.
    - h. Keying information.
  2. Submittal Sequence: Submit final schedule at earliest possible date particularly where acceptance of hardware schedule must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in the Project construction schedule. Include with schedule the product data, samples, shop drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of schedule.
  3. Keying Schedule: Submit separate detailed schedule indicating clearly how the Owner's final instructions on keying of locks has been fulfilled.
- D. Samples, if requested, of each type of exposed hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule. Submit samples prior to submission of final hardware schedule.
1. Samples will be returned to the supplier. Units that are acceptable and remain undamaged through submittal, review, and field comparison process may, after final check of operation, be incorporated in the Work, within limitations of keying coordination requirements.
- E. Templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for the installation of door hardware. Check shop drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- F. Contract closeout submittals:
1. Operation and maintenance data: Complete information for installed door hardware.
  2. Warranty: Completed and executed warranty forms.



## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of hardware (latch and locksets, hinges, closers, etc.) from a single manufacturer.
- B. Supplier Qualifications: A recognized architectural door hardware supplier, with warehousing facilities in the Project's vicinity, that has a record of successful in-service performance for supplying door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project and that employs an experienced architectural hardware consultant (AHC) who is available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the course of the Work, for consultation.

## 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to final hardware schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.
- B. Packaging of door hardware is responsibility of supplier. As material is received by hardware supplier from various manufacturers, sort and repackage in containers clearly marked with appropriate hardware set number to match set numbers of approved hardware schedule. Two or more identical sets may be packed in same container.
- C. Inventory door hardware jointly with representatives of hardware supplier and hardware installer until each is satisfied that count is correct.
- D. Deliver individually packaged door hardware items promptly to place of installation (shop or Project site).
- E. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to the Project, but not yet installed. Control handling and installation of hardware items that are not immediately replaceable so that completion of the Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special warranties:
  - 1. Cylindrical Locks – One Year

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

(\* Denotes manufacturer referenced in the Hardware Headings)

### A. Hinges:

1. Furnished by door manufacturer

### B. Cylinders:

1. Acceptable manufacturers:
  - a. Schlage\*
  - b. Sargent
  - c. Best
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Key all locks alike.
  - b. Metals: Construct lock cylinder parts from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.
  - c. Key Material: Provide keys of nickel silver only.
  - e. Key Quantity: Furnish 3 change keys for each lock.

### C. Locksets, Latchsets, Deadbolts:

1. Acceptable manufacturers:
  - a. Schlage – CS Series and F Series\*
  - b. Sargent
  - c. Best
  - d.
2. Standard Duty Cylindrical Locks and Latches: as scheduled.
  - a. Chassis: cylindrical tubular design.
  - b. Lever Trim: accessible design.
  - c. Deadbolt: 1" throw
  - d. Lock Series and Design: Schlage CS Design – Latitude Design  
Schlage F Series – Latitude Design
  - e. Certifications:
    - 1) ANSI A156.2, Series 4000, Grade 2
    - 2) UL listed for A label single doors up to 4 ft x 8 ft when furnished with UL Latch.

### D. Floor Stops and Wall Bumpers:

1. Acceptable manufacturers:
  - a. Ives\*
  - b. Rockwood Manufacturing
  - c. Trimco
2. Characteristics: Refer to Hardware Headings.

### E. Thresholds: - FURNISHED BR DOOR MFG.

1. Acceptable manufacturers:
    - a. National Guard Products, Inc.
    - b. Reese Industries
    - c. Pemko.
  2. Types: Indicated in Hardware Headings.
- F. Door Seals/Gasketing: - FURNISHED BY DOOR MFG
1. Acceptable manufacturers:
    - a. National Guard Products, Inc.
    - b. Reese Industries
    - c. Pemko
  2. Types: Indicated in Hardware Headings.

## 2.2 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Name Plate: Do not use manufacturers' products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location (omit removable nameplates) except in conjunction with required fire-rated labels and as otherwise acceptable to Architect.
1. Manufacturer's identification will be permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
- B. Base Metals: Produce hardware units of basic metal and forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness, but in no case of lesser (commercially recognized) quality than specified for applicable hardware units by applicable ANSI/BHMA A156 series standards for each type of hardware item and with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for finish designations indicated. Do not furnish "optional" materials or forming methods for those indicated, except as otherwise specified.
- C. Fasteners: Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation.
1. Do not provide hardware that has been prepared for self-tapping sheet metal screws, except as specifically indicated.
  2. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Provide Phillips flat-head screws except as otherwise indicated. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work as closely as possible including "prepared for paint" surfaces to receive painted finish.
  3. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units that are exposed when door is closed except to the extent no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners.
  4. Do not use thru-bolts or sex bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless their use is the only means of adequately fastening the hardware, or otherwise found in Headings. Coordinate with wood doors and metal doors and frames where thru-bolts are used as a means of reinforcing the work, provide

sleeves for each thru-bolt or use sex screw fasteners.

## 2.3 HARDWARE FINISHES

- A. Match items to the manufacturer's standard color and texture finish for the latch and lock sets (or push-pull units if no latch or lock sets).
- B. Provide finishes that match those established by ANSI or, if none established, match the Architect's sample.
- C. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware.
- D. Provide protective lacquer coating on all exposed hardware finishes of brass, bronze, and aluminum, except as otherwise indicated. The suffix "-NL" is used with standard finish designations to indicate "no lacquer."
- E. The designations used to indicate hardware finishes are those listed in ANSI/BHMA A156.18, "Materials and Finishes," including coordination with the traditional U.S. finishes shown by certain manufacturers for their products.
  - 1. Hinges 646 (US15) Satin Nickel Plated Steel or 630 (US32D) Satin Stainless Steel as listed in schedule
  - 2. Locks: 619 (US15) Satin Nickel
  - 3. Door Stops: 619 (US15) Satin Nickel
  - 4. Thresholds/Weatherstripping: 627/628 (US27/US28) Aluminum

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Where cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation or application of surface protection with finishing work specified in the Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrates involved.
- B. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- C. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.
- D. Set thresholds for exterior doors in full bed of butyl-rubber or polyisobutylene

mastic sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section Joint Sealers.

- E. Weatherstripping and Seals: Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations to the extent installation requirements are not otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND DEMONSTRATING

- A. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly or as intended for the application made.
  - 1. Where door hardware is installed more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, return to the installation during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy and make final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to function properly with final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation.

### 3.3 HARDWARE SCHEDULE

HW: 01

OPENINGS: 001

EACH TO HAVE:

3	EA	HINGES	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	646
1	EA	LOCK (HANDLESET)	F58 X 59 LAT X PLY	619
1	EA	STOP	60	619
1	EA	DOOR VIEWER	698	626

THRESHOLD AND WEATHERSTRIPPING BY DOOR MFG.

HW: 01A

OPENINGS: 006

EACH TO HAVE:

3	EA	HINGES	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	646
1	EA	ENTRY LOCK	CS210 X LAT	619
1	EA	STOP	60	619
1	EA	DOOR VIEWER	698	626

THRESHOLD AND WEATHERSTRIPPING BY DOOR MFG.

HW: 02

OPENINGS: 010, 011, 012, 016, 017

EACH TO HAVE:

3	EA	HINGES	5PB1 3.5 X 3.5	646
1	EA	PRIVACY	F40 LAT	619
1	EA	STOP	60 OR 70 AS REQUIRED	619

HW: 03

OPENINGS: 002, 005, 007, 016A, 018

EACH TO HAVE:

3	EA	HINGES	5PB1 3.5 X 3.5	646
1	EA	PASSAGE	F10 LAT	619
1	EA	STOP	60 OR 70 AS REQUIRED	619

HW: 04

OPENINGS: 009, 013, 014, 015

EACH TO HAVE:

6	EA	HINGES	5PB1 3.5 X 3.5	646
2	EA	ROLLER LATCHES	RL32	626
2	EA	DUMMY LEVERS	F170 LAT	619
2	EA	HINGE PIN STOPS	70	619

HW: 05

OPENINGS: 008

EACH TO HAVE:

3	EA	HINGES	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	F80 LAT	619
1	EA	CRASH STOP	CS115	626

THRESHOLD AND WEATHERSTRIPPING BY DOOR MFG.

END OF SECTION

# ***DIVISION 9***

---

## **FINISHES**

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com







## SECTION 092900

### GYPSUM BOARD

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

###### A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Tile backing panels.
3. Texture finishes.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

###### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

###### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:

1. American Gypsum.
2. CertainTeed Corp.
3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
4. Lafarge North America Inc.
5. National Gypsum Company.
6. PABCO Gypsum.
7. Temple-Inland.
8. USG Corporation.

###### B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

###### C. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

- D. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
  - 1. Core: 1/2 inch, regular type.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

## 2.2 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or 1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. C-Cure; C-Cure Board 990.
    - b. CertainTeed Corp.; FiberCement BackerBoard.
    - c. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard.
    - d. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.; Hardiebacker.
    - e. National Gypsum Company, Permabase Cement Board.
    - f. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

## 2.3 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
  - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized steel sheet.
- B. Aluminum Trim: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5.

## 2.4 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  - 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

## 2.5 TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.
- B. Non-Aggregate Finish: Pre-mixed, vinyl texture finish for spray application.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; ProRoc Easi-Tex Spray Texture.
    - b. National Gypsum Company; Perfect Spray EM Texture.
    - c. USG Corporation; BEADEX FasTex Wall and Ceiling Spray Texture.
  - 2. Texture: [Orange Peel] [Spatter] [Spatter knock-down] <Insert texture>.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- D. Install trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- F. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- G. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
  - 3. Level 3: In areas to receive heavy texture.
  - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Division 9.
- 5. Level 5: Where indicated on Drawings.
  - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Division 9.
- H. Texture Finish Application: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.
- I. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and texture finishes and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- J. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

END OF SECTION 092900

## SECTION 093000

### TILE

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Tile and Accessories:
  - 1. Glazed Porcelain.

##### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. ANSI A118.7 - Polymer Modified Cement Grouts
- B. Tile Council of North America (TCNA): TCA Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation, 2007.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements.
- B. [ Product Data ]: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation methods.
- C. Selection Samples: Color charts illustrating full range of colors and patterns.
- D. Selection Samples: Samples of actual tiles for selection.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate:
  - 1. Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
  - 2. For each shipment, type and composition of tile provide a Master Grade Certificate signed by the manufacturer and the installer certifying that products meet or exceed the specified requirements of ANSI A137.1.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include recommended cleaning methods, cleaning materials, stain removal methods, and polishes and waxes.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum two years experience.
- B. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type and color of tile from a single source. Obtain each type and color of mortar, adhesive and grout from the same source.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Protect adhesives and liquid additives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Store tile and setting materials on elevated platforms, under cover and in a dry location and protect from contamination, dampness, freezing or overheating.

## 1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install adhesives in an unventilated environment.
- B. Maintain ambient and substrate temperature of 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) during tiling and for a minimum of 7 days after completion.

## 1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide for Owner's use a minimum of 2 percent of the primary sizes and colors of tile specified, boxed and clearly labeled.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Daltile Corporation, which is located at: 7834 C.F. Hawn Fwy. P. O. Box 170130 ; Dallas, TX 75217; Toll Free Tel: 800-933-TILE; Tel: 214-398-1411; Fax: 214-309-4584;
- B. Requests for substitutions shall be submitted on enclosed Request for Substitution Form.

### 2.2 TILE

- A. General: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions and other characteristics indicated. Provide tile in the locations and of the types colors and pattern indicated on the Drawings and identified in the Schedule and the end of this Section. Tile shall also be provided in accordance with the following:
  - 1. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within the ranges selected under Submittal of samples, blend tile in the factory and package so tile taken from one package shows the same range of colors as those taken from other packages.
  - 2. Mounting: For factory mounted tile, provide back or edge mounted tile assemblies as standard with the manufacturer, unless otherwise specified.
  - 3. Factory Applied Temporary Protective Coatings: Where indicated under tile type, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by precoating with a continuous film of petroleum paraffin wax applied hot. Do not coat unexposed tile surfaces.

- B. Wall and Counter Glazed Tile:
  - 1. Product: Rittenhouse Square.
  - 2. Size and Shape: 3 inches by 6 inches, nominal.
  - 3. Surface Finish: Polished.
  - 4. Colors: To be selected from manufacturer's standard range.
  - 5. Trim Units: Cement Bullnose, Cove Base, Cove Base Corner, Fabric Bullnose, Groover Bullnose, Jolly shapes in sizes coordinated with field tile shapes.

## 2.3 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Organic Adhesive: ANSI A136.1, thinset bond type; use Type I in areas subject to prolonged moisture exposure.
- B. Epoxy Adhesive: ANSI A118.3, thinset bond type.
- C. Mortar Bed Materials:
  - 1. Portland cement: ASTM C150, type 1, gray or white.
  - 2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
  - 3. Sand: ASTM C144, fine.
  - 4. Latex additive: As approved.
  - 5. Water: Clean and potable.
- D. Mortar Bond Coat Materials:
  - 1. Dry-Set Portland Cement type: ANSI A118.1.
  - 2. Latex-Portland Cement type: ANSI A118.4.
  - 3. Epoxy: ANSI A118.3, 100 percent solids.
- E. Polymer modified cement grout, sanded or unsanded, as specified in ANSI A118.7; color as selected.
  - 1. Basis of design: Prism Surecolor grout
  - 2. Or Approved Equal
    - a. Color selected from manufacturer's full range of standard colors.
- F. Membrane at Walls: No. 15 (6.9 kg) asphalt saturated felt, ASTM D226, Type 1.
- G. Cementitious Backer Board: ANSI A118.9; High density, cementitious, glass fiber reinforced with 2 inch (50 mm) wide coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners:
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm).

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that wall surfaces are free of substances which would impair bonding of setting materials, smooth and flat within tolerances specified in ANSI A137.1, and are ready to receive tile.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect surrounding work from damage.
- B. Remove any curing compounds or other contaminates.
- C. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.
- D. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.
- E. Install cementitious backer board in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and board manufacturer's instructions. Tape joints and corners, cover with skim coat of dry-set mortar to a feather edge.
- F. Prepare substrate surfaces for adhesive installation in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install tile and grout in accordance with applicable requirements of ANSI A108.1 through A108.13, manufacturer's instructions, and TCA Handbook recommendations.
- B. Lay tile to pattern indicated. Arrange pattern so that a full tile or joint is centered on each wall and that no tile less than 1/2 width is used. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.
- C. Cut and fit tile to penetrations through tile, leaving sealant joint space. Form corners and bases neatly. Align floor joints.
- D. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make joints watertight, without voids, cracks, excess mortar, or excess grout.
- E. Form internal angles square and external angles bullnosed or install extruded aluminum or stainless steel finishing and edge protection profile.
- F. Install non-ceramic trim in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- G. Allow tile to set for a minimum of 48 hours prior to grouting.
- H. Grout tile joints. Use standard grout unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Apply sealant to junction of tile and dissimilar materials and junction of dissimilar planes.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION - SHOWERS AND BATHTUB WALLS

- A. At bathtub walls install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method B412, over cementitious backer units with waterproofing membrane.
- B. Grout with standard grout as specified above.



- C. Seal joints between tile work and other work with sealant specified in Section 07 90 00 - Joint Protection.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION - WALL TILE

- A. Over cementitious backer units install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method W223, organic adhesive.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.

END OF SECTION 093000



## SECTION 093001

### SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SUMMARY

Section Includes: Solid Vinyl Floor Tile.

##### 1.02 REFERENCES

###### A. ASTM International:

1. F 1700 Standard Specification for Solid Vinyl Floor Tile.
2. E 648 Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Flooring Systems Using a Radiant Energy Source.
3. E 662 Standard Test Method for Specific Density of Smoke Generated by Solid Materials.
4. G 21 Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi
5. F 970 Standard Test Method for Static Load Limit.
6. D 2047 Standard Test Method for Static Coefficient of Friction of Polish-Coated Floor Surfaces as Measured by the James Machine.
7. F 1515. Standard Test Method for Measuring Light Stability of Resilient Vinyl Flooring by Color Change
8. F 925 Standard Test Method for Resistance to Chemicals of Resilient Flooring.
9. F1482 Standard Practice for Installation and Preparation of Panel Type Underlayments to Receive Resilient Flooring.
10. F 710 Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring.
11. F1482 Standard Practice for Installation and Preparation of Panel Type Underlayments to Receive Resilient Flooring.

###### B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

1. NFPA 253 Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Energy Source.
2. NFPA 258 Test Method for Specific Density of Smoke Generated by Solid Materials.
3. NFPA 255 Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

###### C. Other test Results

1. EN 425, Castor Chair Test
2. UL 992, Surface Flame Propagation
3. FMVSS 302, Title 49, Part 571, Flammability of Interior Materials
4. Does not contain any of the hazardous chemicals listed in California Proposition 65
5. Collaborative for High Performance Schools 01350 Low-Emitting Material Criteria (SafeTcork Vinyl Tile)
6. FloorScore Certified

##### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data, including manufacturer's specification summary sheet for specified products
- B. Samples: Submit selection and verification samples for finishes, colors, and textures.
- C. Quality Assurance Submittals: Submit the following:
  - 1. Test Reports: Certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties.
  - 2. Manufacturer's Instructions: Manufacturer's installation and maintenance instructions.
- E. Submit the following:
  - 1. Maintenance Data: Maintenance data for installed products in accordance with Division 1 sections. Include methods for maintaining installed products, and precautions against cleaning materials and methods detrimental to finishes and performance.
  - 2. Warranty: Warranty documents specified herein.

#### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installer experienced in performing work of this section who has specialized in installing work similar to that required for this project.
- B. Regulatory Requirements Fire Performance characteristics: Provide Solid Vinyl Floor Tile with the following Fire performance characteristics as determined by testing products in accordance with ASTM method (and NFPA method) indicated below by a certified testing laboratory or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - .a. ASTM E 648 (NFPA 253), Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems: Class 1, Greater than  $.45 \text{ w/cm}^2$
  - .b. ASTM E 662 (NFPA 258), Specific Optical Density of Smoke Generated by Solid Materials: Passes, (45)
- C. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain floor tile and manufacturer's recommended adhesive from a single supplier.
- D. Pre-Installation Meetings: Conduct pre-installation meeting to verify project Requirements. Manufacturer's conditions, recommended adhesive depending on product, substrate type and type of installation, manufacturer's installation instructions and manufacturer's warranty requirements. Comply with requirements in Division 1.

#### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with requirements in Division 1.
- B. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid construction delays.
- C. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with Identification labels intact.
- D. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and acclimated to site conditions at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by manufacturer.

#### 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements/Conditions: In accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, areas to receive Solid Vinyl Floor Tile shall be clean, fully

- enclosed, weather tight with the permanent HVAC set at a uniform temperature of 65-85 degrees F for 48 hours prior too, during and thereafter installation. Solid Vinyl Floor Tile and adhesive shall be conditioned in the same manner. Vinyl Tile must be unboxed & acclimated in area of use at least 48 hours prior to installation.
- B. Existing Conditions: [Specify existing conditions affecting product use and installation]

#### 1.07 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Finishing Operations: Install Solid Vinyl Floor Tile after finishing operations, including painting and ceiling operations etc. , have been completed.

#### 1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Materials Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents. Warranty to commence on Date of Substantial Completion. Notice of any defect must be made in writing to manufacturer within thirty (30) days after buyer learns of the defect
1. Warranty against defects in material and workmanship: one (1) year
  2. Limited Wear Warranty: Ten (10) year Limited Wear Warranty.
  3. Do not use in, around or near commercial kitchens.

#### 1.09 MAINTENANCE

- A. Extra Materials: Deliver to Owner extra materials from same production run as products installed. Package products with protective covering and identify with descriptive labels. Comply with Division 1 Closeout Submittals (Maintenance Materials) Section.
1. Quantity: Furnish quantity of floor tile equal to 5% of amount to be installed.
  2. Delivery, Storage and Protection: Comply with Owner's requirements for delivery, storage and protection of extra materials.
- B. Maintenance of finished floor covering to be conducted per Manufacturer's Maintenance Guide.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

Specifier Note: Retain article below for proprietary method specification. Add product attributes performance characteristics, material standards, and descriptions as applicable. Use of such phrases as "Or Equal" or "Or Approved Equal," or similar phrases may cause ambiguity in specifications. Such phrases require verification (procedural, legal, and regulatory) and assignment of responsibility for determining "Or Equal" products.

#### 2.01 SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE

- A. Physical requirements:
1. Description: Solid Vinyl Floor Tile meeting the requirements of ASTM F 1700-04.
  2. Resistance to Chemicals per ASTM F 925: Pass  
(List of chemicals provided by manufacturer on request)
  3. Light Stability per ASTM F 1515: Pass.(Delta E < 8.00)
  4. Abrasion resistance per ASTM D 3389: Excellent (<0.15 weight loss after 1,000 cycles using H-18 wheels with 500 gram load applied )

5. Design and Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard designs and colors.
6. Does do not contain any of the hazardous chemicals listed in California Proposition 65
7. Collaborative for High Performance Schools 01350 Low-Emitting Material Criteria: Pass

B. Basis of Design: Earthworks

1. Brighton Solid Vinyl Tile
  - .a. Classification: ASTM F 1700, Class III, Type A.
  - .b. Thickness: 0.120" (3mm) nominal
  - .c. Wear Layer Thickness: 6 mil/0.15mm – exceeds ASTM F 1700, Commercial Use.
  - .d. Static Coefficient of Friction (Slip Resistance) per ASTM C 1028
  - .e. Static load limit, per ASTM F 970 (test modified @ 2000 psi): Pass
  - .g. Size: 7" x 48"
  - .e. Edge treatment: Square Edge

2.02 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions: Approved Equals.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's requirements as published in manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Adhesive (Select one):
1. As recommended by manufacturer

3.02 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Confirm substrate conditions (which have been previously addressed under other sections) are acceptable for product installing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Material Inspection: In accordance with manufacturer's installing requirements, visually inspect materials prior to installing. Material with visual defects shall not be installed.

3.03 PREPARATION

- A. Adjacent Surfaces Protection: Protect adjacent work areas and finish surfaces from damage while installing.
- B. Surface Preparation, General: Prepare substrate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
1. Wood Substrate: Per ASTM F1482, Wood subfloor/underlayment assemblies shall be double layer construction, with a total thickness of not less than 1".
    - a. There shall be minimum 18 inches of well-ventilated air space beneath all wood subfloors. Crawl spaces shall be insulated and protected by a moisture vapor barrier.

- b. Do not install over "sleeper" underlayment systems or wood underlayment installed over concrete.
  - c. Do not install over Lauan panels, CCA Plywood, Fire rated plywood, plywood with knots, underlayment made of pine or other soft woods, particle board, Oriented Strand Board Masonite<sup>TM</sup> or other hardboard underlayment, hardwood flooring, textured or cushioned flooring, treated or otherwise coated wood material or other uneven or unstable substrates. Unacceptable surfaces shall be covered using a 1/4-inch or thicker panel underlayment per section d.
  - d. Wood Underlayments: Use only plywood underlayment that is warranted by the underlayment manufacturer for use as an underlayment for sheet vinyl floor covering in commercial applications. Do not use Lauan.
  - e. Refer to Division 6 Carpentry sections for wood subfloor construction.
3. Refer to manufacturer's installation instructions regarding installations over existing ceramic tile, cementitious terrazzo and metal.
  4. Do not install over existing floor covering nor over substrates not approved by manufacturer.

### 3.04 INSTALLING

- A. Refer to Manufacturer's Installation instructions for vinyl tile installation instructions for detailed instruction for installing vinyl tile.
- B. Finish Floor Covering Designs: As selected by Architect.
- C. Accessories: Architect shall specify manufacturers' color coordinated accessories as required, including (but not limited to) Resilient wall base, stair nosing, reducers or other edgings, welding rods for heat welded seams. .

### 3.05 FIELD QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Upon Owner's request and with minimum 72 hours notice, provide manufacturer's field service consisting of product use recommendations and periodic site visits to confirm installing of product is in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.06 CLEANING

- A. Cleaning: See manufacturer's maintenance instructions. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas. Repair or replace damaged installed products. Clean and maintain installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to owner's acceptance. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of.

### 3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protection: Protect installed product and finish surfaces from damage during construction. Remove And legally dispose of protective covering at time of substantial completion.
- B. Keep foot traffic off new floor covering for first 48 hours (Unless using Spray Adhesive)
- C. Keep furniture, fixtures and rolling traffic off for first 72 hours.

D. No maintenance for first 72 hours.

### 3.08 INITIAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

General: Include in contract sum cost for initial maintenance procedures and execution by professional maintenance personnel after floor covering has been installed for three days as specified in the manufacturer's maintenance instructions.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 099113  
EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:

1. Concrete.
2. Clay masonry.
3. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
4. Steel.
5. Galvanized metal.
6. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
7. Stainless-steel flashing.
8. Wood.
9. Plastic trim fabrications.
10. Exterior portland cement plaster (stucco).
11. Exterior gypsum board.
12. Cementitious panels and trim

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 0746 - Fiber Cement Siding and Trim.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a matte flat finish.
- B. Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a high-side sheen flat, velvet-like finish.
- C. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, an eggshell finish.

- D. Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a satin-like finish.
- E. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a semi-gloss finish.
- F. Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a gloss finish.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  - 2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 3. VOC content.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Coating Maintenance Manual: Provide coating maintenance manual including area summary with finish schedule, area detail designating location where each product/color/finish was used, product data pages, material safety data sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery and Handling: Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed containers, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing. Packaging shall bear the manufacture's label with the following information:
1. Product name and type (description).
  2. Batch date.
  3. Color number.
  4. VOC content.
  5. Environmental handling requirements.
  6. Surface preparation requirements.
  7. Application instructions.
- B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sherwin-Williams Company products indicated or comparable product from one of the following:
1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  2. Duron, Inc.
  3. Glidden Professional, Division of PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
  4. M.A.B. Paints.
  5. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain paint materials from single source from single listed manufacturer.
  - 1. Manufacturer's designations listed on a separate color schedule are for color reference only and do not indicate prior approval.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Provide products that comply with MPI standards indicated and that are listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Provide materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting

performance of the Work. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers. Where acceptability of substrate conditions is in question, apply samples and perform in-situ testing to verify compatibility, adhesion, and film integrity of new paint application.

1. Report, in writing, conditions that may affect application, appearance, or performance of paint.

B. Substrate Conditions:

1. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - a. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - b. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
  - c. Wood: 15 percent.
  - d. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
  - e. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
2. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
3. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.

- C. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected; application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
  - 4. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.
- J. Wood Substrates:
  - 1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
  - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
  - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
  - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
- K. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
  - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboard].
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

#### A. Cementitious Siding, Nontraffic Surfaces:

##### 1. Latex System:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, exterior: S-W Loxon Concrete & Masonry Primer Sealer, A24W8300, at 8.0 mils wet, 3.2 mils dry.
- b. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
- c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
- d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat, (Gloss Level 1): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Flat, A6 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.2 mils dry, per coat.
- e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low-sheen, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Low Sheen, A12 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
- f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, satin, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
- g. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5): S-W Solo Acrylic Semi-Gloss, A76 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
- h. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, gloss, (Gloss Level 6): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Gloss, A8 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry, per coat.

##### 2. Latex Aggregate/Latex System:

- a. Prime Coat: Block Filler, Latex, Interior/Exterior: S-W Loxon Block Surfacer, A24W200, at 50 to 100 sq ft/gal.
- b. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat, (Gloss Level 1)medium texture: S-W UltraCrete Textured Masonry Topcoat, A44-800 Series, at 50 to 80 sq ft/gal.

##### 3. Concrete Stain System (Water-based):

- a. First Coat: Low-luster opaque finish matching topcoat.
- b. Topcoat: Low-luster opaque finish: S-W H&C Concrete Stain Solid Color Water Based, A31 Series, at **50 to 250 sq. ft. per gal.**

#### B. Concrete Substrates, Pedestrian Traffic Surfaces:

##### 1. Latex Floor Paint System:

- a. First Coat: Floor paint, latex, slip-resistant, matching topcoat.
- b. Topcoat: Floor paint, latex, slip-resistant, low gloss, (maximum Gloss Level 3): S-W ArmorSeal Tread-Plex, B90 Series, at 1.5 to 2.0 mils dry per coat.



2. Concrete Stain System (Water-based) for Vertical Surfaces:
  - a. First Coat: Low-luster opaque finish matching top coat.
  - b. Topcoat: Low-luster opaque finish: S-W H&C Concrete Stain Solid Color Water Based, at 50 to 250 sq. ft. per gal.
  
- C. CMU Substrates:
  1. Latex System:
    - a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior: S-W PrepRite Block Filler, B25W25, at 75 to 125 sq. ft. per gal.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat, (Gloss Level 1): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Flat, A6 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.2 mils dry, per coat.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low-sheen, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Low Sheen, A12 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, satin, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5): S-W Solo Acrylic Semi-Gloss, A76 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - g. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, gloss, (Gloss Level 6): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Gloss, A8 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry, per coat.
  
  2. CMU Stain System (Water-based):
    - a. First Coat: Low-luster opaque finish matching topcoat.
    - b. Topcoat: Low-luster opaque finish: S-W H&C Concrete Stain Solid Color Water Based, at 50 to 250 sq. ft. per gal.
  
- D. Ferrous Metal, Galvanized-Metal, and Aluminum Substrates:
  1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, water-based, anti-corrosive for metal: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310 Series, 5.0 to 10.0 mils wet, 2.0 to 4.0 mils dry.
    - b. Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
    - c. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
    - d. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, eggshell, (Gloss Level 3): S-W Pro Industrial Eg-Shel Acrylic B66-660 Series, at 2.5 to 4.0 mils dry, per coat.
    - e. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5): S-W Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss Coating, B66-650 Series, at 2.5 to 4.0 mils dry, per coat.
    - f. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, gloss, (Gloss Level 6): S-W Pro Industrial Acrylic Gloss Coating, B66-600 Series, at 2.5 to 4.0 mils dry, per coat.

- E. Wood Substrates: Including exposed wood items not indicated to receive shop-applied finish.
  - 1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex for exterior wood.
    - a. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - b. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat, (Gloss Level 1): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Flat, A6 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.2 mils dry, per coat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low-sheen, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Low Sheen, A12 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, satin, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5): S-W Solo Acrylic Semi-Gloss, A76 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, gloss, (Gloss Level 6): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Gloss, A8 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry, per coat.
  
- F. Wood Substrates, Pedestrian Traffic Surfaces:
  - 1. Latex Floor Paint System:
    - a. First Coat: Floor paint, latex, slip-resistant, matching topcoat.
    - b. Topcoat: Floor paint, latex, slip-resistant, low gloss, (maximum Gloss Level 3): S-W ArmorSeal Tread-Plex, B90 Series, at 1.5 to 2.0 mils dry per coat.
  
  - 2. Solid Color Stain System:
    - a. First Coat: Solid color stain, latex, matching topcoat.
    - b. Topcoat: Solid color stain, latex, slip-resistant, flat, interior/exterior: S-W DeckScapes Exterior Acrylic Solid Color Deck, A15-Series, (Gloss Level 1), at **200 to 400 sq. ft. per gal.**
  
- G. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Including architectural PVC, plastic, and fiberglass items.
  - 1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, bonding, water-based: S-W PrepRite ProBlock Latex Primer/Sealer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat, (Gloss Level 1): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Flat, A6 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.2 mils dry, per coat.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low-sheen, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Low Sheen, A12 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, satin, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5): S-W Solo Acrylic Semi-Gloss, A76 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.

- g. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, gloss, (Gloss Level 6): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Gloss, A8 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry, per coat.
- H. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates:
- 1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, bonding, water-based: S-W PrepRite ProBlock Latex Primer/Sealer.
    - b. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat, (Gloss Level 1): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Flat, A6 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.2 mils dry, per coat.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low-sheen, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Low Sheen, A12 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, satin, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - g. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5): S-W Solo Acrylic Semi-Gloss, A76 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - h. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, gloss, (Gloss Level 6): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Gloss, A8 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry, per coat.
- I. [Exterior Insulation Finish Systems (EIFS)] [Vinyl Siding]:
- 1. Latex System:
    - a. First Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - b. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat, (Gloss Level 1): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Flat, A6 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.2 mils dry, per coat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low-sheen, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Low Sheen, A12 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, satin, (Gloss Level 3-4): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5): S-W Solo Acrylic Semi-Gloss, A76 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, gloss, (Gloss Level 6): S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Gloss, A8 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry, per coat.

END OF SECTION 099113



SECTION 099123  
INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:

1. Concrete.
2. Clay masonry.
3. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
4. Steel.
5. Cast iron.
6. Galvanized metal.
7. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
8. Wood.
9. Gypsum board.
10. Plaster.
11. Spray-textured ceilings.
12. Cotton or canvas insulation covering.
13. ASJ insulation covering.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 9 - for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a matte flat finish.
- B. Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a high-side sheen flat, velvet-like finish.
- C. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, an eggshell finish.

- D. Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a satin-like finish.
- E. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a semi-gloss finish.
- F. Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523, a gloss finish.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  - 2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 3. VOC content.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Coating Maintenance Manual: Provide coating maintenance manual including area summary with finish schedule, area detail designating location where each product/color/finish was used, product data pages, material safety data sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery and Handling: Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed containers, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing. Packaging shall bear the manufacturer's label with the following information:
1. Product name and type (description).
  2. Batch date.
  3. Color number.
  4. VOC content.
  5. Environmental handling requirements.
  6. Surface preparation requirements.
  7. Application instructions.
- B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Lead Paint: It is not expected that lead paint will be encountered in the Work.
1. If suspected lead paint is encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sherwin-Williams Company products indicated or comparable product from one of the following:
1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  2. Duron, Inc.
  3. Glidden Professional, Division of PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
  4. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
  5. Pratt & Lambert.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain paint materials from single source from single listed manufacturer.
  - 1. Manufacturer's designations listed on a separate color schedule are for color reference only and do not indicate prior approval.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Provide products that comply with MPI standards indicated and that are listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction and, for interior paints and coatings applied at Project site, the following VOC limits, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
  - 2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
  - 3. Dry-Fog Coatings: 400 g/L.
  - 4. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
  - 5. Anticorrosive and Antirust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
  - 6. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 340 g/L.
  - 7. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
  - 8. Floor Coatings: 100 g/L.
  - 9. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
  - 10. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.
- D. Low-Emitting Materials: Interior paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site,



- samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers. Where acceptability of substrate conditions is in question, apply samples and perform in-situ testing to verify compatibility, adhesion, and film integrity of new paint application.
  1. Report, in writing, conditions that may affect application, appearance, or performance of paint.
- B. Substrate Conditions:
  1. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
    - a. Concrete: 12 percent.
    - b. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
    - c. Wood: 15 percent.
    - d. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
    - e. Plaster: 12 percent.
  2. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
  3. Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
  4. Spray-Textured Ceiling Substrates: Verify that surfaces are dry.
- C. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected; application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Concrete Floors: Remove oil, dust, grease, dirt, and other foreign materials. Comply with SSPC-SP-13/NACE 6 or ICRI 03732.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
  - 4. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.
- J. Wood Substrates:
  - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
  - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
  - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
  - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

- K. Cotton or Canvas Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - h. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
  - 2. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.

- d. Pipe hangers and supports.
  - e. Metal conduit.
  - f. Plastic conduit.
  - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
  - h. Other items as directed by Architect.
3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces with flat black paint.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Metal Substrates (Aluminum, Steel, Galvanized Steel):
1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust-inhibitive, water based: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310 Series, at 5.0 to 10 mils wet, 2.0 to 4.0 mils dry.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based acrylic, interior, matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Water-based acrylic, semi-gloss[, (Gloss Level 5): S-W Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss Coating, B66-650 Series, at 2.5 to 4.0 mils dry, per coat.
      - d. Topcoat: Water-based acrylic, gloss[, (Gloss Level 6): S-W Pro Industrial Acrylic Gloss Coating, B66-660 Series, at 2.5 to 4.0 mils dry, per coat.
    2. Water-Based Dry-Fall System:
      - a. Top Coat: Dry-fall latex, flat: S-W Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall Flat, B42-80 Series, at 6.0 mils wet, 1.7 mils dry.
      - b. Top Coat: Dry-fall latex, eggshell: S-W Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic DryFall Eg-Shel, B42-2 Series, at 6.0 mils wet, 1.9 mils dry.
      - c. Top Coat: Dry-fall latex, semi-gloss: S-W Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic DryFall Semi-Gloss, B42-80 Series, at 5.8 mils wet, 2.3 mils dry.
    3. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System:
      - a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust-inhibitive, water based: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310 Series, at 5.0 to 10.0 mils wet, 2.0 to 4.0 mils dry.
      - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, interior, water based, matching topcoat.
      - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, interior, water based, eggshell, (Gloss Level 3): S-W Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Water Based Epoxy, K45-151 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
      - d. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, interior, water based, semi-gloss[, (Gloss Level 5): S-W Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Water Based Epoxy, K46-151 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
    4. Two-Component Epoxy and Epoxy High Build Systems: Refer to Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
  1. Acrylic/Alkyd System:
    - a. Prime Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310 Series, at 5.0 to 10.0 mils wet, 2.0 to 4.0 mils dry.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based acrylic-alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Water-based acrylic-alkyd, semi-gloss, interior: S-W ProMar 200 Waterbased Acrylic-Alkyd Semi-Gloss, B34-8200 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.7 mils dry, per coat.
    - d. Topcoat: Water-based acrylic-alkyd, gloss, interior: S-W ProMar 200 Waterbased Acrylic-Alkyd Gloss, B35-8200 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.7 mils dry, per coat.
- B. Wood Substrates: Including exposed wood items not indicated to receive shop-applied finish.
1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior: S-W PrepRite ProBlock Primer Sealer, B51-620 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.4 mils dry.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, eggshell[, (Gloss Level 3): S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Eg-Shel, B20-2600 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.7 mils dry, per coat.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss[, (Gloss Level 4): S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31-2600 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.6 mils dry, per coat.
  - e. Topcoat: Latex, interior, gloss, (Gloss Level 5): S-W ProMar 200 Latex Gloss, B11-2200 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
2. Acrylic/Alkyd System:
- a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior: S-W Premium Wall & Wood Primer, B28W8111, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.8 mils dry.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based acrylic-alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Water-based acrylic-alkyd, semi-gloss, interior: S-W ProMar 200 Waterbased Acrylic-Alkyd Semi-Gloss, B34-8200 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.7 mils dry, per coat.
  - d. Topcoat: Water-based acrylic-alkyd, gloss, interior: S-W ProMar 200 Waterbased Acrylic-Alkyd Gloss, B35-8200 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.7 mils dry, per coat.
- C. Wood Substrates, Pedestrian Traffic Surfaces:
1. Latex Floor Enamel System:
- a. First Coat: Floor paint, latex, slip-resistant, matching topcoat.
  - b. Topcoat: Floor paint, latex, slip-resistant, low gloss, (maximum Gloss Level 3): S-W ArmorSeal Tread-Plex, B90 Series, at 1.5 to 2.0 mils dry per coat.
- D. [Gypsum Board] [Plaster] [and] [Spray-Texture Ceiling] Substrates:
1. Latex System:
- a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex, interior: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, flat, (Gloss Level 1): S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Flat, B30-2600 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.6 mils dry, per coat.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, low sheen, (Gloss Level 2): S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Low Sheen Enamel, B24-2600 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.6 mils dry, per coat.
  - e. Topcoat: Latex, interior, eggshell, (Gloss Level 3): S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Eg-Shel, B20-2600 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.7 mils dry, per coat.
  - f. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 4): S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31-2600 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.6 mils dry, per coat.

- g. Topcoat: Latex, interior, gloss, (Gloss Level 5): S-W ProMar 200 Latex Gloss, B11-2200 Series, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.

END OF SECTION 099123





# ***DIVISION 12***

---

## **FURNISHINGS**

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
[Dammonengineering.com](http://Dammonengineering.com)





SECTION 123530  
RESIDENTIAL CASEWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes kitchen and vanity cabinets.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Cabinets.
  2. Cabinet hardware.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For casework.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CABINETS

- A. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- Cabinetry by Diamond  
P.O. Box 420  
Jasper, IN 47547
  - Aristokrat Cabinetry
  - Singer Kitchens
- B. Product Line: Prelude  
Door Style: Karwin

## 2.2 CABINET MATERIALS

### A. General:

1. Adhesives and Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Do not use products that contain urea formaldehyde.
2. Hardwood Lumber: Kiln dried to 7 percent moisture content.
3. Softwood Lumber: Kiln dried to 10 percent moisture content.
4. Hardwood Plywood: HPVA HP-1; made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.
5. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2; made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
6. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD; made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.

### B. Exposed Materials:

1. Exposed Wood Species: Oak
  - a. Select materials for compatible color and grain. Do not use two adjacent exposed surfaces that are noticeably dissimilar in color, grain, figure, or natural character markings.
  - b. Staining and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Solid Wood: Clear hardwood lumber of species indicated, free of defects.
3. Plywood: Hardwood plywood with face veneer of species indicated, with Grade A faces and Grade C backs of same species as faces.
4. Plastic Laminate: Particleboard faced with high-pressure decorative laminate complying with NEMA LD 3.
  - a. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: As selected by Architect from cabinet manufacturer's full range.

### C. Concealed Materials: Solid wood or plywood, of any hardwood or softwood species, with no defects affecting strength or utility; particleboard; MDF; or hardboard.

## 2.3 CABINET HARDWARE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard units complying with BHMA A156.9, of type, size, style, material, and finish as indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- B. Pulls: Back-mounted decorative pulls. Basis of design: Diamond Pull H64.
- C. Hinges: Concealed European-style, self-closing hinges.
- D. Drawer Guides: Epoxy-coated-metal, self-closing drawer guides; designed to prevent rebound when drawers are closed; with nylon-tired, ball-bearing rollers; and complying with BHMA A156.9, Type B05011 or Type B05091.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cabinets with no variations in flushness of adjoining surfaces; use concealed shims. Where cabinets abut other finished work, scribe and cut for accurate fit. Provide filler strips, scribe strips, and moldings in finish to match cabinet face.
- B. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit the openings, are aligned, and are uniformly spaced. Complete installation of hardware and accessories as indicated.
- C. Install cabinets level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet.
- D. Fasten cabinets to adjacent units and to backing.
  - 1. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust cabinets and hardware so doors and drawers are centered in openings and operate smoothly without warp or bind. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 123530



# ***DIVISION 22***

---

## **PLUMBING**

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com







## SECTION 220500

### COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Transition fittings.
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 5. Sleeves.
  - 6. Escutcheons.
  - 7. Grout.
  - 8. Plumbing demolition.
  - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 10. Painting and finishing.
  - 11. Concrete bases.
  - 12. Supports and anchorages.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.

- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
  - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  - 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  - 4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Transition fittings.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Escutcheons.
- B. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for plumbing items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.

- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
    - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
    - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
  - D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
  - E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
  - F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
  - G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
  - H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
    - 1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
    - 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
    - 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
    - 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
  - I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.
- 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS
- A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
    - 1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
      - b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
      - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated (The); Pipe Products Div.
      - d. JCM Industries.
      - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.

- f. Viking Johnson.
  2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
  3. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
  4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
- B. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Fernco, Inc.
    - c. Mission Rubber Company.
    - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Eclipse, Inc.
    - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
    - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Perfection Corp.
    - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

## 2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.

4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.

- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

## 2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PLUMBING DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

### 3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and



calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - 1. New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
    - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
    - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.

- k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
  - l. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Use the following:
- a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
  - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and spring clips.
  - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
  - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
  - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
  - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
  - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
  - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.
  - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
  - k. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:

- a. PVC Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
  - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
  - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
    - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
  3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.
- S. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- T. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
  - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
  - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
  - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.7 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.

3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use 4000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete.

### 3.8 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.9 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

### 3.10 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 220500





## SECTION 220523

### GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

###### A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
4. Bronze swing check valves.
5. Iron swing check valves.
6. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
7. Bronze gate valves.
8. Iron gate valves.
9. Bronze globe valves.
10. Iron globe valves.
11. Chainwheels.
12. Corporation and Curb Valves

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ###### A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

##### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- ###### A. ASME Compliance: ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
- ###### B. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- ###### A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- ###### B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- ###### C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
4. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

## 2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Kitz Corporation.
  - b.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: One piece.
  - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Stem: Brass.
  - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - i. Port: Reduced.

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. DynaQuip Controls.
  - d. Flow-Tek, Inc.; a subsidiary of Bray International, Inc.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
  - g. Jomar International, LTD.
  - h. Kitz Corporation.
  - i. Legend Valve.
  - j. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
  - k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - l. NIBCO INC.
  - m. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - n. RuB Inc.

2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Brass.
  - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - j. Port: Full.

C. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Hammond Valve.
  - b. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
  - c. Legend Valve.
  - d. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.

- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Regular.

## 2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

### A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Design: One piece.
  - d. Body Material: Bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Stem: Bronze.
  - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - i. Port: Reduced.

### B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
  - f. Legend Valve.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

C. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- e. DynaQuip Controls.
- f. Hammond Valve.
- g. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Regular.

## 2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.

- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- f. DeZurik Water Controls.
- g. Flo Fab Inc.
- h. Hammond Valve.
- i. Kitz Corporation.
- j. Legend Valve.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. NIBCO INC.
- m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

B. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- f. DeZurik Water Controls.
- g. Flo Fab Inc.
- h. Hammond Valve.
- i. Kitz Corporation.
- j. Legend Valve.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. NIBCO INC.
- m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- q.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: NBR.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
- C. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. American Valve, Inc.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Center Line.
  - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - g. DeZurik Water Controls.
  - h. Flo Fab Inc.
  - i. Hammond Valve.
  - j. Kitz Corporation.
  - k. Legend Valve.
  - l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - n. NIBCO INC.
  - o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
  - p. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
  - q. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  - r. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - s.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Nickel-plated[ **or -coated**] ductile iron.

D. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
- b. American Valve, Inc.
- c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Center Line.
- f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- g. DeZurik Water Controls.
- h. Flo Fab Inc.
- i. Hammond Valve.
- j. Kitz Corporation.
- k. Legend Valve.
- l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
- n. NIBCO INC.
- o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- p. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- q. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- r. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- s.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: NBR.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Nickel-plated[ **or -coated**] ductile iron.

2.5 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.



- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Kitz Corporation.
- g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Powell Valves.
- j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
- m.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Kitz Corporation.
- f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- g. NIBCO INC.
- h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- j.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

## 2.6 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Legend Valve.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Powell Valves.
  - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - k. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Composition.
- g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
- h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
- i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.7 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

### A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
  - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

### B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Weight-Closure Control:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
  - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

## 2.8 BRONZE GATE VALVES

### A. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Kitz Corporation.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Powell Valves.
  - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Kitz Corporation.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Powell Valves.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.9 IRON GATE VALVES

### A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Flo Fab Inc.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Kitz Corporation.
  - g. Legend Valve.
  - h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - i. NIBCO INC.
  - j. Powell Valves.
  - k. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
  - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

### B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Flo Fab Inc.
  - e. Hammond Valve.

- f. Kitz Corporation.
- g. Legend Valve.
- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. NIBCO INC.
- j. Powell Valves.
- k. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.10 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Kitz Corporation.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Powell Valves.
- h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- j. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
  - d. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.11 IRON GLOBE VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Powell Valves.
  - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.12 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
  2. Attachment: For connection to butterfly valve stems.
  3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating.
  4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

## 2.13 CORPORATION AND CURB VALVES

- A. Corporation Valves:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Amcast Industrial Corporation; Lee Brass Co.
    - b. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
    - c. Jones, James Company.
    - d. Master Meter, Inc.
    - e. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - f. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
    - g. Red Hed Manufacturing & Supply.
- B. Service-Saddle Assemblies: Comply with AWWA C800. Include saddle and valve compatible with tapping machine.
1. Service Saddle: Copper alloy with seal and AWWA C800, threaded outlet for corporation valve.
  2. Corporation Valve: Bronze body and ground-key plug, with AWWA C800, threaded inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
  3. Manifold: Copper fitting with two to four inlets as required, with ends matching corporation valves and outlet matching service piping material.
- C. Curb Valves: Comply with AWWA C800. Include bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, and wide tee head, with inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
- D. Service Boxes for Curb Valves: Similar to AWWA M44 requirements for cast-iron valve boxes. Include cast-iron telescoping top section of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over curb valve and with a barrel approximately 3 inches in diameter.
1. Shutoff Rods: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and slotted end matching curb valve.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for gate and globe valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
  - 1. Install swing check valves for proper direction of flow and in horizontal position with hinge pin level.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
  - 2. Throttling Service: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
  - 3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP class or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

### 3.4 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG OR LESS)

#### A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.

#### B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
4. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.

### 3.5 HIGH-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE 150 TO 200 PSIG

#### A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.

#### B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
4. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.

### 3.6 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

#### A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
3. Ball Valves: One piece, regular port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and weight.
5. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
6. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

### 3.7 SANITARY-WASTE AND STORM-DRAINAGE VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, RS.
5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and weight.
4. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
5. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION 220523



SECTION 220719  
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
  - 3. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
  - 4. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
  - 5. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 4. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  - 5. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 6. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.
    2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
    3. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
    4. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
    5. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
  - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
  - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
  - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
  - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
  - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
  - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

I. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Armacell LLC; Tubolit.
  - b. Nomaco Insulation; IMCOLOCK and NOMALOCK.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F .
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
    - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."



- E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
    - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
  - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F .
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F .
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
    - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F .
  5. Color: White or gray.

6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F .
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F .
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. , in a Leno weave, for pipe.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
    - e.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system.
  4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 , Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
  - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
  - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
2. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
3. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
4. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
5. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.
6. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
  - a. Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
  - b. Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
  - c. Tee covers.
  - d. Flange and union covers.
  - e. End caps.
  - f. Beveled collars.
  - g. Valve covers.
  - h. Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

- D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
  - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.

## 2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
  - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
  - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
  - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
2. Width: 3 inches .

3. Thickness: 11.5 mils .
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches .
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils .
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
    - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
    - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
  2. Width: 2 inches .
  3. Thickness: 6 mils .
  4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
    - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
  2. Width: 2 inches .

3. Thickness: 3.7 mils .
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209 , Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with closed seal.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.

## 2.11 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Engineered Brass Company.
    - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
    - c. McGuire Manufacturing.
    - d. Plumberex.
    - e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
  2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
  - b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.



- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.

4. Cleanouts.

### 3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on

insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER PREFORMED PIPE INSULATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

#### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

#### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

#### A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.

5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.10 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.



### 3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  - 2. Underground piping.
  - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.13 ATTIC PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Water and Domestic Hot Water: Insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

### 3.14 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Water Piping: Insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inches thick.

### 3.15 ATTIC, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils thick.

### 3.16 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.
- C. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC: 40 mils thick painted color selected by Architect.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221116  
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
  - 1. MSS SP-123.
  - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
  - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
  - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- G. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
- H. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22.
  - 2. Stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.

## 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
  - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

## 2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
  - 1. ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade, Standard Weight.

2. Include ends matching joining method.
  - B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
  - C. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
  - D. Malleable-Iron Unions:
    1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
    2. Hexagonal-stock body.
    3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
    4. Threaded ends.
  - E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
- 2.5 CPVC PIPING
- A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
    1. CPVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 and ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80.
    2. CPVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM F 437, Schedule 80.
  - B. CPVC Piping System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, pipe and socket fittings.
  - C. CPVC Tubing System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, tube and socket fittings.
- 2.6 PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS
- A. PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 877, SDR 9 tubing.
  - B. Fittings for PEX Tube: ASTM F 1807, metal-insert type with copper or stainless-steel crimp rings and matching PEX tube dimensions.
  - C. Manifold: Multiple-outlet, plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal assembly complying with ASTM F 877; with plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal valve for each outlet.
- 2.7 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
  - B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 and ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80.
  - C. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.

## 2.8 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

### A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

### B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

### C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

### D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

### E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

### F. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493.

1. CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### G. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### H. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.9 TRANSITION FITTINGS

### A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
- b. Harvel Plastics, Inc.
- c. Spears Manufacturing Company.

2. Description:

- a. CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
- b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.

D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
- b. NIBCO Inc.
- c. Spears Manufacturing Company.

2. Description:

- a. CPVC or PVC four-part union.
- b. Brass or stainless-steel threaded end.
- c. Solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end.
- d. Rubber O-ring.
- e. Union nut.

## 2.10 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
  - b. Central Plastics Company.
  - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
  - d. Jomar International.
  - e. Matco-Norca.
  - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Matco-Norca.
    - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
  4. Pressure Rating: [125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
  3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
  5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
  6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
  - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - c. Matco-Norca.
  - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - e. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- E. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- F. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward and plumb.
- H. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

- I. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- Q. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
- R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

### 3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- H. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
  - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- I. Joints for PEX Piping: Join according to ASTM F 1807.
- J. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.3 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition **[fittings] [or] [unions]**.

### 3.4 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch .
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet .
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2 : 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2 : 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2 : 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 : 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 : 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 7. NPS 6 : 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 8. NPS 8 to NPS 12 : 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet .

- I. Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 36 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 : 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 : 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 4 and NPS 5 : 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 6 : 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 8 : 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 60 inches for NPS 1 and smaller, and every 72 inches for NPS 1-1/4 and larger.
- K. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 32 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
- L. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches .
- M. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 : 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 : 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 : 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 8 : 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- N. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches .
- O. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  - 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.

3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:

- a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
  - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of **50 psig** above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.

Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

- e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
- 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
  - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
  - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
- 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

- 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
  - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
- c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
  - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
  - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Underground, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be the following:
1. PVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- E. Underground, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be the following:
1. PVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
1. CPVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  3. CPVC Tubing System: CPVC tube; CPVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 CPVC pipe with CPVC socket fittings may be used instead of tubing.
  4. PEX tube, NPS 1 and smaller; fittings for PEX tube; and crimped joints.

END OF SECTION 221116



## SECTION 221313 - FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes gravity-flow, nonpressure and force-main, pressure sanitary sewerage outside the building, with the following components:
  - 1. Special fittings for expansion and deflection.
  - 2. Backwater valves.
  - 3. Cleanouts.
  - 4. Corrosion-protection piping encasement.
  - 5. Precast concrete and Fiberglass manholes.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene-monomer rubber.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. LLDPE: Linear low-density, polyethylene plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- H. RTRF: Glass-fiber-reinforced, thermosetting-resin fitting.
- I. RTRP: Glass-fiber-reinforced, thermosetting-resin pipe.
- J. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure, Drainage-Piping Pressure Rating: 10-foot head of water.

- B. Force-Main, Pressure-Piping Pressure Rating: At least equal to system operating pressure but not less than 100 psig.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:

- 1. Special pipe fittings.
- 2. Backwater valves.
- 3. Manholes.

(Each submittal shall contain a certification that no product used contains asbestos.)

- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:

- 1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers.

- C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from sewerage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.

- D. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet and vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.

- E. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by User or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Do not proceed with interruption of service without User's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.

### 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra-Heavy classes.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### 2.3 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with ASTM A 666, Type 301, stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.

- 1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. ANACO.
- b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
- c. Fernco Inc.
- d. Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
- e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
- f. Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.

- 2. Couplings for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 2-1/8-inch-wide shield with 2 bands.

- 3. Couplings for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 3-inch-wide shield with 4 bands.

- 4. Couplings for NPS 8 and NPS 10: 4-inch-wide shield with 4 bands.

- D. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings, NPS 10 and Smaller: With ASTM A 666, Type 301 or Type 304, stainless-steel shield; 2 or more stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.

- 1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. ANACO.
- b. Clamp-All Corp.
- c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
- d. Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.

- e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - f. Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
  - 2. Couplings for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 3 inches.
  - 3. Couplings for NPS 5 to NPS 10: 4 inches.
  - E. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings, NPS 12 and NPS 15. With ASTM A 666, Type 301 or Type 304, stainless-steel shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. ANACO.
      - b. Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
      - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
      - d. Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
    - 2. Couplings: 5-1/2-inch-wide shield with 6 bands.
  - F. Heavy-Duty, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - 1. Couplings for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 2-1/8-inch-wide housing with 2 bolts.
    - 2. Couplings for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 3-1/8-inch-wide housing with 4 bolts.
    - 3. Couplings for NPS 8 and NPS 10: 4-inch-wide housing with 4 bolts.
  - G. Unshielded Couplings: ASTM C 1461, rigid, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - 1. Couplings for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: Sleeve with two bands.
- 2.4 DUCTILE-IRON, GRAVITY SEWER PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Pipe: ASTM A 746, for push-on joints.
  - B. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
  - C. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, for push-on joints.
  - D. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- 2.5 DUCTILE-IRON PRESSURE PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Pipe: AWWA C151, for push-on joints.
  - B. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.

- C. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, for push-on joints.
- D. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

## 2.6 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel, pipe and fittings with socket and spigot ends fabricated with ASTM A 666, Type 304L, stainless steel for gasketed joints.
- B. Gaskets: Lip seals shaped to fit socket groove, with plastic backup ring.
  - 1. General Applications: EPDM, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Applications for Fluids Containing Gasoline or Oil: NBR, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. ABS Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2751, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
  - 1. NPS 3 to NPS 6: SDR 26.
  - 2. NPS 8 to NPS 12: SDR 42.
  - 3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

## 2.8 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pressure Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 150, for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  - 1. Fittings NPS 4 to NPS 8: PVC pressure fittings complying with AWWA C907, for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  - 2. Fittings NPS 10 and Larger: Ductile-iron, compact fittings complying with AWWA C153, for push-on joints and using AWWA C111, rubber gaskets.
- B. PVC Water-Service Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 80 pipe, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints with ASTM D 2466, Schedule 80, socket-type fittings.
- C. PVC Cellular-Core Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 891, Sewer and Drain Series, PS 50 minimum stiffness pipe with ASTM D 3034, SDR 26, socket-type fittings for solvent-cemented joints.
- D. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 26, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- E. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 18 and Larger: ASTM F 679, T-2 wall thickness, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- F. PVC Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 794 pipe, with bell-and-spigot ends; ASTM D 3034 fittings, with bell ends; and ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

## 2.9 FIBERGLASS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Fiberglass Sewer Pipe: ASTM D 3262, RTRP for gasketed joints fabricated with Type 2, polyester or Type 4, epoxy resin.
  - 1. Liner: 1, reinforced thermoset.
  - 2. Grade: Reinforced, surface layer matching pipe resin.
  - 3. Stiffness: B, 18 psig.
- B. Fiberglass Nonpressure Fittings: ASTM D 3840, RTRF for gasketed joints.
  - 1. Laminating Resin: Type 1, polyester or Type 2, epoxy resin.
  - 2. Reinforcement: Grade with finish compatible with resin.
- C. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

## 2.10 CONCRETE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Nonreinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 14, Class 1 or 2, with bell-and-spigot or groove and tongue ends for gasketed joints with ASTM C 443, rubber gaskets.
- B. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76, with bell-and-spigot or groove and tongue ends for gasketed joints with ASTM C 443, rubber gaskets.
  - 1. Class II, Wall A.
  - 2. Class III, Wall A.
  - 3. Class IV, Wall A.
  - 4. Class V, Wall A.

## 2.11 NONPRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- B. Sleeve Materials:
  - 1. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443, rubber.
  - 2. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
  - 3. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
  - 4. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- C. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.

- b. Fernco Inc.
  - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
  - d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
  - e. NDS Inc.
  - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
- D. Shielded, Flexible Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg.
    - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
- E. Ring-Type, Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.
- 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Fernco Inc.
    - b. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
    - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
- F. Nonpressure-Type, Rigid Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

## 2.12 PRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

- A. Reducing or transition, metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground pressure piping. Include 150-psig minimum pressure rating and ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
- B. Tubular-Sleeve Couplings: AWWA C219, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners.
- 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg.
    - b. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
    - d. JCM Industries.
    - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
    - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.
    - g. Viking Johnson.
  - 2. Center-Sleeve Material: Stainless steel.
  - 3. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.

4. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- C. Split-Sleeve Couplings: With split sleeve with sealing pad and closure plates, O-ring gaskets, and bolt fasteners.
1. Sleeve Material: Stainless steel.
  2. Sleeve Dimensions: Of thickness and width required to provide pressure rating.
  3. Gasket Material: O-rings made of EPDM rubber, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

## 2.13 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Flexible Expansion Joints: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include 2 gasketed ball-joint sections and 1 or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
    - b. Romac Industries, Inc.
    - c. Star Pipe Products.
- B. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings: Compound coupling fitting with ball joint, flexing section, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for up to 15 degrees of deflection.
- C. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
    - b. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
    - c. JCM Industries.
    - d. Smith-Blair, Inc.

## 2.14 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Gray-Iron Backwater Valves: ASME A112.14.1, gray-iron body and bolted cover, with bronze seat.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Josam Company.
    - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
    - c. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.



- d. Watts Industries, Inc.
  - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.
  - f. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Horizontal Type: With swing check valve and hub-and-spigot ends.
  3. Combination Horizontal and Manual Gate-Valve Type: With swing check valve, integral gate valve, and hub-and-spigot ends.
  4. Terminal Type: With bronze seat, swing check valve, and hub inlet.
- B. PVC Backwater Valves: Horizontal type; with PVC body, PVC removable cover, and PVC swing check valve.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Canplas Inc.
    - b. IPS Corporation.
    - c. NDS Inc.
    - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
    - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - f. Zurn Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

## 2.15 CLEANOUTS

- A. Gray-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Josam Company.
    - b. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
    - d. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.
    - e. Watts Industries, Inc.
    - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.
    - g. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
  2. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy and Extra-heavy duty.
  3. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
- B. PVC Cleanouts: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to clean-out of same material as sewer piping.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Canplas Inc.
    - b. IPS Corporation.

- c. NDS Inc.
- d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
- e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- f. Zurn Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

## 2.16 CORROSION-PROTECTION PIPING ENCASEMENT

### A. Encasement for Underground Metal Piping: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

1. Form: Sheet or tube.
2. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
3. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness or high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
4. Material: High-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
5. Color: Black.

## 2.17 MANHOLES

### A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.

1. Diameter: 48 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
3. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
4. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and of length to provide depth indicated.
5. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type, unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
6. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
7. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
8. Steps: Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on 1 step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off of step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. .
9. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
10. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
11. Protective Coating: Plant-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 15-mil minimum thickness applied to exterior and interior surfaces.
12. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch-diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."

- a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile iron, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 15-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  
- B. Designed Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 913; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
  1. Ballast: Increase thickness of one or more precast concrete sections or add concrete to manhole as required to prevent flotation.
  2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
  3. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
  4. Steps: Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on 1 step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off of step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals.
  5. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
  6. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
  7. Protective Coating: Plant-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 15-mil minimum thickness applied to exterior and interior surfaces.
  8. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch-diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
    - a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile iron, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 15-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  
- C. Fiberglass Manholes: ASTM D 3753, fabricated, FRP.
  1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Associated Fiberglass Enterprises.
    - b. Containment Solutions, Inc.
    - c. L.F. Manufacturing, Inc.
  2. Diameter: 48 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete base as required to prevent flotation.
  4. Base Section: Concrete, 6-inch minimum thickness.
  5. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
  6. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off of step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals.

7. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
  8. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
  9. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch-diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
    - a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile iron, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 15-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Manhole Cover Inserts: Manufactured, plastic form, of size to fit between manhole frame and cover and designed to prevent stormwater inflow. Include handle for removal and gasket for gastight sealing.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. FRW Industries; a Syneco Systems, Inc. company.
    - b. Knutson Enterprises.
    - c. L.F. Manufacturing, Inc.
    - d. Parson Environmental Products, Inc.
  2. Type: With drainage and vent holes.

## 2.18 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
  2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
  3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
  4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
  2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.
- C. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
    - a. Invert Slope: 2 percent through manhole.

2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.

a. Slope: 8 percent.

D. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.

1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.

2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

## 2.19 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Paint: SSPC-Paint 16.

B. PE Sheeting: ASTM D 4397, with at least 8-mil thickness or other equivalent, impervious material.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping, unless otherwise indicated.

a. Unshielded flexible or rigid couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.

b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible or rigid couplings for pipes with different OD.

c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.

2. Use pressure-type pipe couplings for force-main joints.

B. Special Pipe Fittings: Use for pipe expansion and deflection. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure Sewer Piping: Use any of the following pipe materials for each size range:

1. NPS 3: Hub-and-spigot, [Extra-Heavy] [Service] class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; [gaskets; and gasketed] [calking materials; and calked] joints.
2. NPS 3: Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; [shielded, stainless-steel] [heavy-duty, shielded, stainless-steel] [heavy-duty, cast-iron] [unshielded] couplings; and coupled joints.
3. NPS 3; NPS 6 ductile-iron, gravity sewer pipe or NPS 3 or NPS 4 ductile-iron pressure pipe; ductile-iron standard fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
4. NPS 3): Stainless-steel drainage pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints. Use EPDM-compound gaskets, unless otherwise indicated. Use nitrile-rubber-compound gaskets for wastes containing gasoline or oil.
5. NPS 3: ABS, SDR 35, sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
6. NPS 3: PVC water-service pipe; PVC Schedule 80, water-service-pipe fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
7. NPS 3: NPS 4 PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
8. NPS 3 : NPS 4 Class 2, nonreinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
9. NPS 4: Hub-and-spigot, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
10. NPS 4: Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; stainless-steel or heavy-duty, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
11. NPS 4 : NPS 6 ductile-iron, gravity sewer pipe or NPS 4 ductile-iron pressure pipe; ductile-iron standard fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
12. NPS 4 : Stainless-steel drainage pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints. Use EPDM-compound gaskets, unless otherwise indicated. Use nitrile-rubber-compound gaskets for wastes containing gasoline or oil.
13. NPS 4 : ABS, SDR 35, sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
14. NPS 4 : PVC water-service pipe; PVC Schedule 80, water-service-pipe fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
15. NPS 4 : PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
16. NPS 4 : Class 2, nonreinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
17. NPS 5 and NPS 6 : Hub-and-spigot, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
18. NPS 5 and NPS 6 : Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
19. NPS 5 and NPS 6 : NPS 6 ductile-iron, gravity sewer pipe; ductile-iron standard fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
20. NPS 5 and NPS 6 : NPS 6 stainless-steel drainage pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints. Use EPDM-compound gaskets, unless otherwise indicated. Use nitrile-rubber-compound gaskets for wastes containing gasoline or oil.
21. NPS 5 and NPS 6 : NPS 6 ABS, SDR 35, sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
22. NPS 5 and NPS 6 : NPS 6 cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC sewer pipe fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
23. NPS 5 and NPS 6 : NPS 6 PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
24. NPS 5 and NPS 6 : NPS 6 Class 2, nonreinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
25. NPS 8 and NPS 10 : Hub-and-spigot, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.

26. NPS 8 and NPS 10 : Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
  27. NPS 8 and NPS 10 : Ductile-iron, gravity sewer pipe; ductile-iron standard fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  28. NPS 8 and NPS 10 : ABS, SDR 42, sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  29. NPS 8 and NPS 10 : Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC sewer pipe fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  30. NPS 8 and NPS 10 : PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  31. NPS 8 and NPS 10 : PVC profile gravity sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  32. NPS 8 and NPS 10 : Fiberglass Type 2 or 4, Class III; sewer RTRP; Type 1 or 2 RTRF, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  33. NPS 8 and NPS 10 : Nonreinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  34. NPS 12 and NPS 15 : Hub-and-spigot, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  35. NPS 12 and NPS 15 : Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
  36. NPS 12 to NPS 16 : Ductile-iron, gravity sewer pipe; ductile-iron standard fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  37. NPS 12: ABS, SDR 42, sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  38. NPS 12 and NPS 15: PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  39. NPS 12 and NPS 15: PVC profile gravity sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  40. NPS 12 to NPS 16: Fiberglass Type 2 or 4, Class III; sewer RTRP; Type 1 or 2 RTRF, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  41. NPS 12 and NPS 15: Nonreinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  42. NPS 12 and NPS 15: Reinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  43. NPS 18 to NPS 24: Ductile-iron, gravity sewer pipe; ductile-iron standard fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  44. NPS 18 to NPS 24: PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  45. NPS 18 to NPS 24: PVC profile gravity sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  46. NPS 18 to NPS 24: Fiberglass Type 2 or 4, Class III; sewer RTRP; Type 1 or 2 RTRF, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  47. NPS 18 to NPS 24: Nonreinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  48. NPS 18 to NPS 24: Reinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
- D. Force-Main, Pressure Piping: Use any of the following pipe materials for each size range:
1. NPS 2: PVC Schedule 80, water-service pipe; PVC Schedule 80, water-service-pipe fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. NPS 3: Ductile-iron, gravity sewer pipe or ductile-iron pressure pipe; ductile-iron standard or compact fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  3. NPS 3: PVC Schedule 80, water-service pipe; PVC Schedule 80, water-service-pipe fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

4. NPS 4: Ductile-iron, gravity sewer pipe or ductile-iron pressure pipe; ductile-iron standard or compact fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
5. NPS 4: PVC pressure pipe, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
6. NPS 6 to NPS 8: Ductile-iron sewer pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, ductile-iron fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
7. NPS 6 to NPS 8: PVC pressure pipe, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
8. NPS 10 and NPS 12: Ductile-iron sewer pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, ductile-iron fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
9. NPS 10 and NPS 12: PVC pressure pipe; compact-pattern, ductile-iron fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction, unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections, unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or combination of both.
- F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 2 percent, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Install piping NPS 6 and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place-concrete supports or anchors.
  3. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover.
  4. Install piping below frost line.
  5. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
  6. Install hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
  7. Install ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to ASTM A 746.
  8. Install ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
  9. Install stainless-steel drainage piping according to ASME A112.3.1.
  10. Install ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.



11. Install PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
12. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
13. Install PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
14. Install fiberglass sewer piping according to ASTM D 3839 and ASTM F 1668.
15. Install nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
16. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."

G. Install force-main, pressure piping according to the following:

1. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place-concrete supports or anchors.
2. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover.
3. Install piping below frost line.
4. Install ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
5. Install ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600.
6. Install PVC pressure piping according AWWA M23 or ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
7. Install PVC water-service piping according ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.

H. Install corrosion-protection piping encasement over the following underground metal piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105:

1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe.
2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
3. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
4. Special pipe fittings.

I. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Basic piping joint construction is specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:

1. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
2. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
3. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
4. Join ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.

5. Join ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
6. Join stainless-steel drainage piping according to ASME A112.3.1.
7. Join ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 2751 for elastomeric-seal joints.
8. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cemented joints.
9. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
10. Join PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM F 794 for gasketed joints.
11. Join fiberglass sewer piping according to ASTM D 4161 for elastomeric-seal joints.
12. Join nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 14 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
13. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
14. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible or rigid couplings.

C. Join force-main, pressure piping according to the following:

1. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
2. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
3. Join PVC pressure piping according AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
4. Join PVC water-service piping according ASTM D 2855.
5. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.

### 3.5 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Construct cast-in-place manholes as indicated.
- D. Install PE sheeting on earth where cast-in-place-concrete manholes are to be built.
- E. Install FRP manholes according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.
- G. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 6 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Install manhole cover inserts in frame and immediately below cover.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R.

### 3.7 BACKWATER VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install horizontal-type backwater valves in piping where indicated.
- B. Install combination horizontal and manual gate valve type in piping and in manholes where indicated.
- C. Install terminal-type backwater valves on end of piping and in manholes where indicated. Secure units to sidewalls.

### 3.8 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
  - 1. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or foot-traffic areas.
  - 2. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
  - 3. Use extra-heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

### 3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains within 5 feet of building.
- B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
  - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi .
  - 2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20 . Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi .
  - 3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 or larger, or to underground manholes by cutting opening into existing unit large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall, unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe or manhole wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
    - a. Use concrete that will attain minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi , unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
  - 4. Protect existing piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
- C. Connect to grease interceptors as shown on drawings.

### 3.10 CLOSING ABANDONED SANITARY SEWERAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
  - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch-thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
  - 2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Abandoned Manholes: Excavate around manhole as required and use either procedure below:
  - 1. Remove manhole and close open ends of remaining piping.
  - 2. Remove top of manhole down to at least 36 inches below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.
- C. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.11 PAINTING

- A. Clean and prepare concrete manhole surfaces for field painting. Remove loose efflorescence, chalk, dust, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen surface as required to remove glaze. Paint the following concrete surfaces as recommended by paint manufacturer:
  - 1. Precast Concrete Manholes: All exterior and interior.
- B. Prepare ferrous frame and cover surfaces according to SSPC-PA 1 and paint according to SSPC-PA 1 and SSPC-Paint 16. Do not paint surfaces with foundry-applied corrosion-resistant coating.

### 3.12 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground manholes.
  - 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
  - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground manholes.

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
  2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  4. Submit separate report for each test.
  5. Hydrostatic Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:
    - a. Allowable leakage is maximum of 50 gal./inch of nominal pipe size per mile of pipe, during 24-hour period.
    - b. Close openings in system and fill with water.
    - c. Purge air and refill with water.
    - d. Disconnect water supply.
    - e. Test and inspect joints for leaks.
    - f. Option: Test ductile-iron piping according to AWWA C600, "Hydrostatic Testing" Section. Use test pressure of at least 10 psig.
  6. Air Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
    - a. Option: Test plastic gravity sewer piping according to ASTM F 1417.
    - b. Option: Test concrete gravity sewer piping according to ASTM C 924.
  7. Force Main: Perform hydrostatic test after thrust blocks, supports, and anchors have hardened. Test at pressure not less than 1-1/2 times the maximum system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig.

- a. Ductile-Iron Piping: Test according to AWWA C600, "Hydraulic Testing" Section.
  - b. PVC Piping: Test according to AWWA M23, "Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
8. Manholes: Perform hydraulic test according to ASTM C 969.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

### 3.14 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous material. Flush with potable water.

END OF SECTION 221313

## SECTION 221316

### SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

##### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

### 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - c. Fernco Inc.
    - d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - e. MIFAB, Inc.
    - f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - g. Stant.
    - h. Tyler Pipe.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Clamp-All Corp.
    - c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - d. MIFAB, Inc.



- e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
  - f. Stant.
  - g. Tyler Pipe.
2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
  3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## 2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
  1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
  2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

## 2.5 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
- B. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
- C. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235.
  1. ABS solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 325 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.6 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.

- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
  - 1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
  - 1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.7 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  - 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
      - 2) Fernco Inc.
      - 3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
      - 4) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
    - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - d. Sleeve Materials:
      - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
      - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
      - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

- I. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- J. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- K. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- L. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- M. Install aboveground ABS piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- N. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- O. Install underground ABS or PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- P. Plumbing Specialties:
  - 1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping.
  - 2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping.
- Q. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by engineer.
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

### 3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- C. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.

- D. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
- E. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
  - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

### 3.3 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
  - 2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation:
  - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - 2. Install fiberglass pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
  - 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  - 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet : MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs **100 Feet** or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 : 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3 : 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 : 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 : 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet . Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches .
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet .
- G. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4 : 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 : 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2-1/2 : 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 3 and NPS 5 : 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- I. Install hangers for ABS or PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical ABS or PVC piping every 48 inches.
- K. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  5. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify engineer at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If the engineer find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water . From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and

watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg . Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.

5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed ABS or PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

### 3.8 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  1. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  1. Solid-wall ABS pipe pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  1. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221316



SECTION 221343

FACILITY PACKAGED SEWAGE PUMPING STATIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA C104/A21.4	(2003) Cement-Mortar Lining for Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings for Water
AWWA C110/A21.10	(2008) Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings for Water
AWWA C111/A21.11	(2000) Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings
AWWA C115/A21.15	(2005) Flanged Ductile-Iron Pipe With Ductile-Iron or Gray-Iron Threaded Flanges
AWWA C151/A21.51	(2002; Errata 2002) Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water
AWWA C500	(2002; R 2003) Metal-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service
AWWA C509	(2001) Resilient-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service
AWWA C600	(2005) Installation of Ductile-Iron Water Mains and Their Appurtenances
AWWA M23	(2002) Manual: PVC Pipe - Design and Installation

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B1.20.1	(1983; R 2006) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.1	(2005) Standard for Gray Iron Threaded Fittings; Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.11	(2005) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
ASME B16.3	(2006) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B31.3	(2008) Process Piping

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A 123/A 123M	(2008) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A 126	(2004) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings
ASTM A 53/A 53M	(2007) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A 536	(1984e1; R 2004) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM D 1784	(2008) Standard Specification for Rigid Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds
ASTM D 1785	(2006) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC), Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120
ASTM D 2241	(2005) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series)
ASTM D 2464	(2006) Standard Specification for Threaded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM D 2466	(2006) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
ASTM D 2467	(2006) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM D 3139	(1998; R 2005) Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM F 477	(2008) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1	(2007; Errata 2008) Standard for Motors and Generators
-----------	--

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

The work includes providing submersible sewage grinder pump station and related work. Provide system complete and ready for operations. Grinder pump station system including equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship as specified herein.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Pump:
    - a. Manufacturer and model.
    - b. Operating speed.
    - c. Capacity.
    - d. Characteristic performance curves.
  - 2. Motor:
    - a. Manufacturer.
    - b. Speed.
    - c. Current Characteristics and W (HP).
    - d. Efficiency
- C. Certified copies of all the factory and construction site test data sheets and reports.
- D. Complete operating and maintenance manuals including wiring diagrams, technical data sheets and information for ordering replaceable parts:
  - 1. Include complete list indicating all components of the system.
  - 2. Include complete diagrams of the internal wiring for each item of equipment.
  - 3. Diagrams shall have their terminals identified to facilitate installation, operating and maintenance.

### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING OF MATERIALS

#### 1.4.1 Delivery and Storage

Inspect materials delivered to site for damage. Unload and store with minimum handling. Store materials in enclosures or under protective covering. Store rubber gaskets not to be installed immediately under cover, out of direct sunlight. Do not store materials directly on the ground. Keep interior of pipes and fittings free of dirt and debris.

#### 1.4.2 Handling

Handle pipe, fittings, valves, and other accessories in such manner as to ensure delivery to the trench in sound, undamaged condition. Avoid injury to coatings and linings on pipe and fittings; make satisfactory repairs if coatings or linings are damaged. Carry pipe to the trench; do not drag it.

### 1.5 EXCAVATION, TRENCHING, AND BACKFILLING

Provide in accordance with Section 312000 EARTH MOVING, except as specified herein.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

Provide pressure piping, air release valves, and related accessories for force main piping outside the sewage wet well and valve vault in accordance with Section 22 13 13 FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS.

#### 2.1.1 Ductile-Iron Pipe

AWWA C151/A21.51, thickness Class 52.

##### 2.1.1.1 Flanged Pipe

AWWA C115/A21.15, ductile iron.

##### 2.1.1.2 Fittings

AWWA C110/A21.10, flanged. Provide flanged joint fittings within wet well and valve vault as indicated. Provide mechanical joint fittings outside valve vault enclosure as indicated. Use fittings with pressure rating at least equivalent to that of the pipe.

##### 2.1.1.3 Joints

AWWA C115/A21.15 for flanged joints. Use bolts, nuts, and gaskets for flanged connections recommended in the Appendix to AWWA C115/A21.15. Flange for setscrewed flanges must be of ductile iron, ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12, conforming to the applicable requirements of ASME B16.1, Class 250. Setscrews for setscrewed flanges must be 190,000 psi tensile strength, heat treated, and zinc-coated steel. Conform to the applicable requirements for mechanical-joint gaskets specified in AWWA C111/A21.11 for setscrewed flange gaskets. Use setscrewed gasket designed to provide for confinement and compression of gasket when joint to adjoining flange is made.

#### 2.1.2 PVC Plastic Pressure Pipe and Associated Fittings

##### 2.1.2.1 Pipe and Fittings Less Than 4 inch Diameter

Use pipe, couplings and fittings manufactured of materials conforming to ASTM D 1784, Class 12454-B.

- (1) Push-On Joint: ASTM D 3139, with ASTM F 477 gaskets. Fittings for push-on joints: AWWA C110/A21.10 or AWWA C111/A21.11. Iron fittings and specials: cement-mortar lined (standard thickness) in accordance with AWWA C104/A21.4.
- (2) Solvent Cement Joint: Use pipe conforming to dimensional requirements of ASTM D 1785 or ASTM D 2241 with joints meeting the requirements of 150 psi working pressure and 200 psi hydrostatic test pressure. Use fittings for solvent cement jointing conforming to ASTM D 2466 or ASTM D 2467.

##### 2.1.3 Insulating Joints

Provide between pipes of dissimilar metals a rubber gasket or other approved type of insulating joint or dielectric coupling to effectively prevent metal-to-metal contact between adjacent

sections of piping.

#### 2.1.4 Accessories

Provide flanges, connecting pieces, transition glands, transition sleeves, and other adapters as required.

#### 2.1.5 Flexible Flanged Coupling

Provide flexible flanged coupling applicable for sewage as indicated. Use flexible flanged coupling designed for a working pressure of 350 psi.

### 2.2 VALVES AND OTHER PIPING ACCESSORIES

#### 2.2.1 Check Valves Less Than 4 Inch Diameter

Neoprene ball check valve with integral hydraulic sealing flange, designed for a hydraulic working pressure of 175 psi.

#### 2.2.2 Miscellaneous Metals

Use stainless steel bolts, nuts, washers, anchors, and supports for installation of equipment.

#### 2.2.3 Quick Disconnect System with Hydraulic Sealing Flange.

Use quick disconnect system and a hydraulic sealing flange.

#### 2.2.4 Wet Well Vent

Galvanized ASTM A 53/A 53M pipe with insect screening.

### 2.3 SUBMERSIBLE SEWAGE GRINDER PUMPS

Provide submersible sewage pumps with grinder units as shown on the drawings. Provide submersible, centrifugal sewage pumps and grinder units capable of grinding all materials found in normal domestic sewage, including plastics, rubber, sanitary napkins, disposable diapers, and wooden articles into a finely ground slurry with particle dimensions no greater than 1/4 inch. Pump capacity and motor characteristics as indicated. Design pump to operate in a submerged or partially submerged condition.

#### 2.3.1 Casing

Provide hard, close-grained cast iron casing which is free from blow holes, porosity, hard spots, shrinkage defects, cracks, and other injurious defects. Design casings to permit replacement of wearing parts. Design passageways to permit smooth flow of sewage and to be free of sharp turns and projections.

#### 2.3.2 Impeller

Provide non-clogging type cast-iron, bronze or stainless steel impeller. Make impeller with smooth surfaces, free flowing with the necessary clearance to permit objects in the sewage to pass. Fit

and key, spline, or thread impeller on shaft, and lock in such manner that lateral movement will be prevented and reverse rotation will not cause loosening.

### 2.3.3 Shaft and Shaft Seals

Provide shaft of stainless steel. Provide mechanical seal of double carbon and ceramic construction with mating surfaces lapped to a flatness tolerance of one light band. Hold rotating ceramics in mating position with stationary carbons by a stainless steel spring. Oil lubricate bearings.

### 2.3.4 Bearings

Provide heavy duty ball thrust bearing or roller type bearing of adequate size to withstand imposed loads. Oil lubricate bearings.

### 2.3.5 Pump and Motor

Use pump and motor assembled on a single stainless steel shaft in a heavy duty cast-iron shell. Use free standing pump support legs of cast-iron providing enough clearance for the solids to get into the grinder.

## 2.4 PUMP MOTOR

Provide submersible sewage pumps in wet well 1,725 RPM, 240 volt, 1 phase, 60 Hz cycle. Motor horsepower must be not less than pump horsepower at any point on the pump performance curve.

## 2.5 PUMP CONTROL SYSTEM

Provide a sealed float switch control system. Provide manual "on-off" switch for each pump. Provide independent adjustable high and low water level switches. Provide floats, supports, and alarm. Metal parts, if used, must be of bronze or equivalent corrosion resistant material.

### 2.5.1 Float Assembly Description

Use a direct acting float switch consisting of a normally-open switch enclosed in a float. Use pipe mounted float assembly. Use float molded of rigid high-density polyurethane foam, color-coded and coated with a durable, water and corrosion-resistant jacket of clear urethane. Provide connecting cable and support pole in accordance with manufacturers recommendations. Provide a cast aluminum NEMA Type 4 junction box to connect float assembly. Use box with a gasketed cover with tapped float fitting and conduit entrance pipe threaded opening. Mount floats at fixed elevations as shown. Use floats designed to tilt and operate their switches causing sequential turn-on turn-off of the pump, when the liquid level being sensed rises or falls past the float.

### 2.5.2 Sewage Pump Alarm and Control Panel

Enclosed alarm panel in NEMA IV enclosure with a flashing red light with long life bulb in guarded enclosure. Use panel switch power on light, push to test button for light and push to silence button for light with automatic reset for next alarm. Use alarm designed to activate under the following conditions:

- a. High liquid level as sensed by float switch

### 2.5.3 Electrical Requirements

Furnish motors with their respective pieces of equipment. Furnish internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Provide power wiring and conduit for field installed equipment.

#### 2.5.4 Electric Motor

Use hermetically sealed electric motor. Seal the power cable inside the motor end bell.

### 2.6 UNDERGROUND EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE

#### 2.6.1 Wet Well

Provide fiberglass reinforced polyester resin basin with aluminum hatch and aluminum cover. The basin shall have an inside diameter of 24 inches.

#### 2.6.2 Wet Well Base Material

Provide crushed stone and polyethylene vapor barrier as indicated on drawings.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Provide pump station in accordance with drawings and requirements of the respective equipment manufacturers. Dampen and isolate equipment vibration.

#### 3.1.1 Installation of PVC Plastic Pressure Pipe and Fittings

Unless otherwise specified, install pipe and fittings in accordance with paragraph entitled "General Requirements for Installation of Pipelines" of this section and with the recommendations for pipe joint assembly and appurtenance installation in AWWA M23, Chapter 7, "Installation."

##### a. Pipe Less than 4 Inch Diameter:

(1) Make threaded joints by wrapping the male threads with joint tape or by applying an approved thread lubricant, than threading the joining members together. Tighten joints with strap wrenches that will not damage the pipe and fittings. Do not tighten joint more than 2 threads past hand-tight.

(2) Push-On Joints: Bevel ends of pipe for push-on joints to facilitate assembly. Mark pipe to indicate when the pipe is fully seated. Lubricate gasket to prevent displacement. Exercise care to ensure that the gasket remains in proper position in the bell or coupling while making the joint.

(3) Solvent-weld joints: comply with the manufacturer's instructions.

#### 3.1.2 Valves

Installation of Valves: Install gate valves conforming to AWWA C500 in accordance with AWWA C600 for valve-and-fitting installation and with the recommendations of the Appendix ("Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Gate Valves") to AWWA C500. Install gate valves conforming to AWWA C509 in accordance with AWWA C600 for valve-and-fitting installation and with the

recommendations of the Appendix ("Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Gate Valves") to AWWA C509. Install check valves in accordance with the applicable requirements of AWWA C600 for valve-and-fitting installation, except as otherwise indicated. Make and assemble joints to gate valves and check valves as specified for making and assembling the same type joints between pipe and fittings.

### 3.1.3 Steel Piping

Install steel piping in accordance with ASME B31.3. Use PTFE pipe thread paste or PTFE powder and oil for jointing compound for pipe threads.

### 3.1.4 Force Main

Provide in accordance with Section 33 30 00 SANITARY SEWERS.

### 3.1.5 Equipment Installation

Install equipment in accordance with these specifications and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Grout equipment mounted on concrete foundations before installing piping. Install piping to avoid imposing stress on any equipment. Match flanges accurately before securing bolts.

## 3.2 FIELD TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

Perform all field tests, and provide all labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing, except that water and electric power needed for field tests will be furnished as set forth in Division 01. Produce evidence, when required, that any item of work has been constructed in accordance with contract requirements. Allow concrete to cure a minimum of 5 days before testing any section of piping where concrete thrust blocks have been provided.

### 3.2.1 Testing Procedure

Test piping in accordance with the Section 33 30 00 SANITARY SEWERS. Test in operation all equipment to demonstrate compliance with the contract requirements.

### 3.2.2 Sewage Grinder Pump Lift Station

Test pumps and controls, in operation, under design conditions to insure proper operation of all equipment. Provide all appliances, materials, water, and equipment for testing, and bear all expenses in connection with the testing. Conduct testing after all equipment is properly installed, electrical services and piping are installed, liquid is flowing, and the pump station is ready for operation. Correct all defects discovered to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer, and all tests repeated, at the expense of the Contractor, until the equipment is in proper working order.

END OF SECTION 221343



SECTION 224100  
RESIDENTIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bathtubs.
2. Faucets.
3. Bidets.
4. Lavatories.
5. Showers.
6. Kitchen sinks.
7. Laundry trays.
8. Dishwasher air-gap fittings.
9. Disposers.
10. Water closets.
11. Toilet seats.
12. Supply fittings.
13. Waste fittings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted plumbing fixtures.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BATHTUBS

#### A. Bathtubs <BT1>: Enameled cast iron, with shower.

##### 1. Enameled Cast-Iron Bathtubs:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Kohler Co.

##### 2. Fixture:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2 for enameled cast-iron bathtubs.
- b. Bathing Surface: Slip resistant according to ASTM F 462.
- c. Size: 60 by 30 inches with front apron drop-in type.
- d. Color: By Architect
- e. Drain Location: As shown on drawings.
- f. Drain: NPS 1-1/2; chrome-plated-brass, pop-up waste and overflow.

##### 3. Supply Fittings: Included in faucet.

##### 4. Tub Filler: Chrome-plated-brass diverter spout.

##### 5. Waste Fittings:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B45.125.2.
- b. Drain: Stainless steel or chrome-plated brass, removable strainer.
- c. Overflow: Chrome-plated-brass escutcheon with toggle drain-plug device.
- d. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 cast-brass overflow, P-trap, and waste.
- e. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC, NPS 1-1/2 P-trap and waste.

### 2.2 BATHTUB FAUCETS

#### A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

#### B. Bathtub Faucets <BT1>: Single handle, pressure balance.

##### 1. Pressure-Balance Faucets:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) American Standard America.
  - 2) Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - 3) Central Brass Company.

- 4) Danze, Inc.
  - 5) Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.
  - 6) Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
  - 7) Kohler Co.
  - 8) Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 9) Leonard Valve Company.
  - 10) Matco-Norca.
  - 11) Moen Incorporated.
  - 12) Powers.
  - 13) Speakman Company.
  - 14) St. Thomas Creations.
  - 15) Sterling.
  - 16) Symmons Industries, Inc.
  - 17) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
  - 18) Wolverine Brass, Inc.
  - 19) Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.
2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.
  3. Faucet:
    - a. Body Material: Solid brass.
    - b. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
    - c. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Mounting: Concealed.
    - e. Operation: Single handle, push-pull or twist or rotate control, with hot- and cold-water indicators.
    - f. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve.
    - g. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
    - h. Diverter: In-tub filler spout.
    - i. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 .
  4. Shower Head:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
    - b. Type: Ball joint with arm and flange
    - c. Backflow-Prevention Device: ASSE 1014.
    - d. Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Spray Pattern: Fixed.
    - f. Integral Volume Control: Not required.
    - g. Shower-Arm, Flow-Control Fitting: Not required.
    - h. Temperature Indicator: Not required.
  5. Bathtub Filler Spout: Chrome-plated brass.

## 2.3 LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatories <L1>: Oval, vitreous china, counter mounted.

1. Vitreous-China Lavatories:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) American Standard America.
    - 2) Barclay Products Limited.
    - 3) Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - 4) Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
    - 5) Duravit USA, Inc.
    - 6) Eljer, Inc.
    - 7) Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - 8) Kohler Co.
    - 9) Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    - 10) Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
    - 11) St. Thomas Creations.
    - 12) Sterling.
    - 13) TOTO USA, INC.
2. Fixture:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 for vitreous-china lavatories.
  - b. Type: Self-rimming.
  - c. Oval Nominal Size: 20 by 17 inches.
  - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Three holes, 4-inch centers.
  - e. Color: By Architect.
3. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
4. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.

## 2.4 LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Lavatory Faucets <L1>: Two-handle mixing valve.
  1. General-Duty, Solid-Brass Faucets:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) American Standard America.
      - 2) Bradley Corporation.
      - 3) BrassTech Inc.
      - 4) Central Brass Company.
      - 5) Chicago Faucets.
      - 6) Danze, Inc.
      - 7) Delta Faucet Company.

- 8) Eljer, Inc.
- 9) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- 10) Franke Consumer Products, Inc.
- 11) Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- 12) Griffin Products, Inc.
- 13) GROHE America, Inc.
- 14) Hansgrohe Inc.
- 15) Houzer, Inc.
- 16) Hydrotek International, Inc.
- 17) Intersan Manufacturing Company.
- 18) Just Manufacturing.
- 19) Kohler Co.
- 20) Matco-Norca.
- 21) Moen Incorporated.
- 22) Price Pfister, Inc.
- 23) Rohl LLC.
- 24) Speakman Company.
- 25) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- 26) Watermark Designs, Ltd.
- 27) Wolverine Brass, Inc.
- 28) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

## 2.5 KITCHEN SINKS

A. Kitchen Sinks <S1>: Two bowls, counter mounted, stainless steel.

1. Stainless-Steel Kitchen Sinks:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- 2) Franke Consumer Products, Inc.
- 3) Griffin Products, Inc.
- 4) Moen Incorporated.
- 5) Houzer, Inc.
- 6) Just Manufacturing.
- 7) Kohler Co.
- 8) Revere Sink.
- 9) Sterling.
- 10) WhiteRock Corp.

2. Fixture:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 for stainless-steel kitchen sinks.
- b. Overall Dimensions: 21 x 33.
- c. Metal Thickness: 20 gauge

3. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.

4. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article, except include continuous waste for multibowl sinks.
  - a. Disposer: By Owner.
  - b. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fitting: Comply with requirements in "Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings" Article.

## 2.6 SINK FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

- B. Sink Faucets <S1>: Solid brass.

1. General-Duty, Solid-Brass Faucets:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) American Standard America.
- 2) Bradley Corporation.
- 3) BrassTech Inc.
- 4) Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
- 5) Central Brass Company.
- 6) Chicago Faucets.
- 7) Danze, Inc.
- 8) Delta Faucet Company.
- 9) Eljer, Inc.
- 10) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- 11) Fisher Manufacturing Co.
- 12) Franke Consumer Products, Inc.
- 13) Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- 14) GROHE America, Inc.
- 15) Hansgrohe Inc.
- 16) Hydrotek International, Inc.
- 17) Intersan Manufacturing Company.
- 18) Just Manufacturing.
- 19) Kingston Brass
- 20) Kohler Co.
- 21) Moen Incorporated.
- 22) Price Pfister, Inc.
- 23) Rohl LLC.
- 24) Speakman Company.
- 25) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- 26) Watermark Designs, Ltd.
- 27) Wolverine Brass, Inc.
- 28) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

## 2.7 DISHWASHER AIR-GAP FITTINGS

### A. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings <Insert drawing designation>:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. B & K Industries, Inc.
  - b. Brass Craft Manufacturing; a subsidiary of Masco Corporation.
  - c. BrassTech Inc.
  - d. Dearborn Brass.
  - e. Geberit US.
  - f. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - g. Watts Brass & Tubular; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1021.
3. Description: Device designed to prevent backflow of contaminated liquid into domestic dishwashers.
4. Material: Plastic body.
5. Hose Connections: 5/8-inch- ID inlet and 7/8-inch- ID outlet.
6. Capacity: At least 5 gpm ; at inlet pressure of at least 5 psig and at temperature of at least 140 deg F .
7. Mounting: Deck.
8. Hoses: Rubber and suitable for temperature of at least 140 deg F .
  - a. Inlet Hose: 5/8 inch ID and 48 inches long.
  - b. Outlet Hose: 7/8 inch ID and 48 inches long.

## 2.8 WATER CLOSETS

### A. Water Closets <WC >: Floor mounted, floor outlet, close coupled (gravity tank), vitreous china.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Standard America.
  - b. Barclay Products Limited.
  - c. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - d. Capizzi.
  - e. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
  - f. Duravit USA, Inc.
  - g. Eljer, Inc.
  - h. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
  - i. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
  - j. Kohler Co.
  - k. Lamosa Corp.; Sanitaryware.

- l. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
  - m. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
  - n. St. Thomas Creations.
  - o. TOTO USA, INC.
  - p. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
- 2. Bowl:
  - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.5, and ASSE 1037.
  - b. Bowl Type : Siphon jet.
  - c. Height: Standard.
  - d. Rim Contour: Elongated.
  - e. Water Consumption: Water saving.
  - f. Color: By Architect.
- 3. Supply Fittings:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
  - b. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated-copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated wall flange.
  - c. Stop: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
    - 1) Operation: Wheel handle.
  - d. Riser:
    - 1) Size: NPS 1/2.
    - 2) Material: ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel flexible hose riser.

## 2.9 TOILET SEATS

### A. Toilet Seats <WC>:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Standard America.
  - b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
  - c. Centoco Manufacturing Corporation.
  - d. Church Seats.
  - e. Eljer, Inc.
  - f. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
  - g. Jones Stephens Corp.; Comfort Seat Brand.
  - h. Kohler Co.
  - i. Olsonite Seat Co.
  - j. Pressalit Inc.



- k. Sanderson Plumbing Products, Inc.; Beneke Div.
- l. Sperzel of Lexington.
  
- 2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
- 3. Material: Plastic.
- 4. Type: Residential.
- 5. Shape: Elongated rim (Open front).
- 6. Configuration: Open front with cover.
- 7. Size: Elongated.
- 8. Hinge Type: Self-sustaining, check.
- 9. Hinge Material: Plastic.
- 10. Seat Cover: Required.
- 11. Color: By Architect.

## 2.10 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
  
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
  
- C. Lavatory and Kitchen Sink Supply Fittings:
  - 1. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated-copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated wall flange.
  - 2. Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
    - a. Operation: Wheel handle.
  - 3. Risers:
    - a. Size: NPS 1/2.
    - b. Material: ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel flexible hose riser.

## 2.11 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
  
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset tailpiece for accessible lavatories.
  
- C. Drain: Pop-up type with NPS 1-1/4 straight tailpiece as part of faucet for standard lavatories.
  
- D. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset tailpiece for accessible kitchen sinks.
  
- E. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 straight tailpiece for standard kitchen sinks.
  
- F. Trap:

1. Size: NPS 2 by NPS 1-1/4 for lavatories.
  2. Size: NPS 2 by NPS 1-1/2 for kitchen sinks.
  3. Material: ASTM F 409 ABS or PVC two-piece trap and waste to wall and wall flange.
- 

## 2.12 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: **5000-psi** , 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plumbing fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install floor-mounted water closets on closet flange attachments to drainage piping.
- C. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
- D. Install pedestal lavatories on pedestals and secured to wood blocking in wall.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
  1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
- G. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- H. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- I. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.

- J. Install traps on fixture outlets.
  - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
  - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Set **bathtubs and shower receptors** in leveling bed of cement grout.
- L. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- M. Seal joints between plumbing fixtures, counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust plumbing fixtures and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of plumbing fixtures, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed plumbing fixtures and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224100



# ***DIVISION* 23**

---

## **MECHANICAL**

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
[Dammonengineering.com](http://Dammonengineering.com)





## SECTION 230500

### COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Transition fittings.
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 5. Sleeves.
  - 6. Escutcheons.
  - 7. Grout.
  - 8. HVAC demolition.
  - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 10. Painting and finishing.
  - 11. Concrete bases.
  - 12. Supports and anchorages.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.

- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  - 1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  - 2. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  - 3. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Transition fittings.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Escutcheons.
- B. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.



## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.

- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

## 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
    - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Eclipse, Inc.
    - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
    - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225deg. F.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Perfection Corp.
    - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

## 2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  3. Pressure Plates: Plastic. Include two for each sealing element.
  4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- G. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

## 2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HVAC DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 3. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - 4. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - 5. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - 6. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - 7. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

### 3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - 1. New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type and set screw.
    - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
    - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
    - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
    - l. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Use the following:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.

- d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
  - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
  - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
  - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
  - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.
  - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
  - k. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
    - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
    - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
      - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
  - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and



location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
  3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.(mm)
1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
  - 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
  - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.7 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.8 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.9 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

### 3.10 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF DOCUMENT

## SECTION 233113

### METAL DUCTS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
  - 4. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
  - 5. Sheet metal materials.
  - 6. Duct liner.
  - 7. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 8. Hangers and supports.
  - 9. Seismic-restraint devices.

##### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Liners and adhesives.
  - 2. Sealants and gaskets.

3. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
  2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
  3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
  4. Elevation of top of ducts.
  5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
  6. Fittings.
  7. Reinforcement and spacing.
  8. Seam and joint construction.
  9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
  10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
  11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
  12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
  2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
  3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
  4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
  4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Perimeter moldings.
- E. Welding certificates.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  - 2. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lindab Inc.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
    - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
    - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be



free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- D. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
  - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
  - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
  - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: Black.
  - 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
    - b. Johns Manville.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.

- e. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
    - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
    - 2) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  - 2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 3. Solvent-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
    - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
- 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  - 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
- 1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  - 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  - 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  - 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  - 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  - 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
  - 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
  - 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.

- b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
  - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
- a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
- 1. Application Method: Brush on.
  - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  - 4. Water resistant.
  - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
- 1. Application Method: Brush on.
  - 2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  - 3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
  - 4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
  - 5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
  - 6. Water resistant.
  - 7. Mold and mildew resistant.
  - 8. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
  - 10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
  - 11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.

12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
    1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
    2. Type: S.
    3. Grade: NS.
    4. Class: 25.
    5. Use: O.
    6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
  - F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
    1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
    2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
    3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### 3.2 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
  - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg. and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg : Seal Class B.
  - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### 3.3 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  - 2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 1-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 1-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 1-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.

- e. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 1-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
  2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
    - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- ### 3.7 DUCT CLEANING
- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
  2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
  2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:



1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.8 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- B. DUCT SCHEDULE
- C. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel:
1. Underground Ducts: Concrete-encased, galvanized sheet steel
- D. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 1-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
  2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
  4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
- E. Return Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
  2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

F. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
  - a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6>.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

G. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

H. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel

I. Liner:

1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I 1 inch thick.
2. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I 1 inch thick.
3. Exhaust Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I 1 inch thick.
4. Supply Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II 1 inch thick.
5. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II 2 inches thick.
6. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I 1 inch thick.

J. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
    - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
    - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
    - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

K. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF DOCUMENT



SECTION 233300  
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Smoke dampers.
6. Flange connectors.
7. Turning vanes.
8. Duct-mounted access doors.
9. Flexible connectors.
10. Flexible ducts.
11. Duct accessory hardware.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
  - a. Special fittings.
  - b. Manual volume damper installations.
  - c. Control-damper installations.
  - d. Fire-damper and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors.
  - e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches

### 2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 5. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 7. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 8. Pottorff.



9. Ruskin Company.
  10. Vent Products Company, Inc.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch- thick stainless steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted maximum 6-inch width, noncombustible, tear-resistant, neoprene-coated fiberglass with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
1. Material: Stainless steel.
  2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  3. Electric actuators.
  4. Chain pulls.
  5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
    - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
  6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
  7. Screen Material: [Galvanized steel.
  8. Screen Type: Bird.
  9. 90-degree stops.

## 2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - c. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
    - d. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - f. Pottorff.
    - g. Ruskin Company.
    - h. Trox USA Inc.
    - i. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
  3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  4. Frames:
    - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch- thick stainless steel.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Stainless-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  6. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.
  7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - e. Pottorff.

- f. Ruskin Company.
    - g. Trox USA Inc.
    - h. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
  3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
    - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- thick extruded aluminum.
  6. Blade Axles: Nonferrous metal.
  7. Bearings:
    - a. Molded synthetic.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- C. Jackshaft:
  1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
  2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- D. Damper Hardware:
  1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
  2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
  3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.

3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
6. McGill AirFlow LLC.
7. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
8. Nailor Industries Inc.
9. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
10. Pottorff.
11. Ruskin Company.
12. Vent Products Company, Inc.
13. Young Regulator Company.

B. Frames:

1. Angle shaped.
2. 0.05-inch- thick stainless steel.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

C. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
2. Parallel- and opposed-blade design.
3. Stainless steel.
4. 0.064 inch thick single skin or 0.0747-inch- thick dual skin.
5. Blade Edging: PVC.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

D. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; nonferrous metal; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

E. Bearings:

1. Molded synthetic.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.

5. Nailor Industries Inc.
  6. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  7. Pottorff.
  8. Prefco; Perfect Air Control, Inc.
  9. Ruskin Company.
  10. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  11. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Type: Static; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.
- E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
  2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024 thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.
- K. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric, replaceable link and switch package, factory installed, 165 deg F rated.
- 2.7 SMOKE DAMPERS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  4. Nailor Industries Inc.

5. Pottorff.
  6. Ruskin Company.
- B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
- D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners.
- E. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, overlapping, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- F. Leakage: Class II.
- G. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- H. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.05-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
- I. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.
- J. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
  3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf .
  5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F .
  6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft. , size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf
  7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.
- K. Accessories:
1. Auxiliary switches for fan control or position indication.
  2. Test and reset switches, remote mounted.

## 2.8 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
  - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.9 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  - 3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  - 4. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - 5. SEMCO Incorporated.
  - 6. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction: Single wall.

## 2.10 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  4. Elgen Manufacturing.
  5. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  6. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  7. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  8. Nailor Industries Inc.
  9. Pottorff.
  10. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  11. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Vision panel.
    - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
    - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
- C. Pressure Relief Access Door:
1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
  2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
  3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
  4. Factory set at 3.0- to 8.0-inch wg .
  5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.



6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## 2.11 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Flame Gard, Inc.
  3. 3M.
- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon or 0.0428-inch stainless steel.
- D. Fasteners: Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

## 2.12 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. .
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F .

F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd. .
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

## 2.13 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.

C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

D. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches , to suit duct size.
2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Liquid adhesive plus tape.

## 2.14 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
  - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 4. At drain pans and seals.
  - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  - 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  - 8. Upstream from turning vanes.
  - 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.

10. Control devices requiring inspection.
  11. Elsewhere as indicated.
- I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
  - J. Access Door Sizes:
    1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
    2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
    3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
    4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
    5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
    6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
  - K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
  - L. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
  - M. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 144-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
  - N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus tape.
  - O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  3. Operate fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
  4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 23 81 26  
SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
  - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
  - 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Period:

- 1. For Compressor: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- 2. For Parts: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- 3. For Labor: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The contractor shall furnish and install air-cooled condensing units as shown as scheduled on the contract documents. The unit(s) shall be installed in accordance with this specification and perform at the specified conditions as scheduled.
- B. APPROVED MANUFACTURERS:
  - 1. Rheem.
  - 2. Substitutions: prior approval required as indicated under the general and/or supplemental conditions of these specifications.

### 2.2 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

- A. Evaporator-Fan Components:
  - 1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
  - 2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
  - 3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
  - 4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
  - 5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for over-current protection.
  - 6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
  - 7. Fan Motors:

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type.
  2. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
  3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
9. Filters: Replaceable.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:
1. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
    - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
    - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
  2. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
  3. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
    - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 2. Route drain line to nearest outside location, not into the Sanitary Sewer System.
  4. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
  5. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

## 2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

### A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
  1. Compressor Type: Scroll.
  2. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
  3. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.

4. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Thermostat: Low voltage with sub-base to control compressor and evaporator fan.
- B. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- C. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- D. Drain Hose: For condensate.
- E. Dampers: All dampers shall be internally mounted. Dampers shall be premium ultra low leak and located as scheduled. Dampers shall be Ruskin CD60 double-skin airfoil design or equivalent for minimal air leakage and pressure drop. Leakage rate shall not exceed 5 cfm/square foot at one inch water gauge and 9 cfm/square foot at 4 inches water gauge. All leakage testing and pressure ratings shall be based on AMCA Publication 500. Manufacturer shall submit brand and model of damper being provided.

## 2.5 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Cooling Capacity:
  1. See drawings.
- B. Heating Capacity:
  1. See drawings
- C. Indoor Unit:
  1. Fan Motor Electrical Characteristics:
    1. Volts: 240V for units below 5 tons.
    2. Phase: Single.
    3. Hertz: 60.
- D. Outdoor Unit:



1. Type: Air cooled.
2. Electrical Characteristics:
  1. Volts: 240.
  2. Phase: Single.
  3. Hertz: 60.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
  1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on elevated platform.
  2. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.
- D. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Balance the system.
  1. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
    1. Measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
    - 1.) Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    - 2.) Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - 3.) Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
    - 4.) Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
  3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
    - 1.) Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
  4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
  5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  6. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
2. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
    - a. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
    - b. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
    - c. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

3. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
4. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
  - a. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
  - b. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 23 81 26



# ***DIVISION* 26**

---

## **ELECTRICAL**

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com





## SECTION 260500

### COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
  - 2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - 3. Sleeve seals.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Common electrical installation requirements.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

##### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
  - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
  - 2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
  - 3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
  - 4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

- C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 8 Section "Access Doors and Frames."
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

### 2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM or NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Plastic, Carbon steel, or Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.



4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

### 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using **steel** pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

END OF DOCUMENT



## SECTION 260519

### LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
  - 3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

##### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
  2. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
  3. General Cable Corporation.
  4. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
  5. Southwire Company.
- B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THHN-THWN

### 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
  4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
  5. Tyco Electronics Corp.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

### 2.3 SLEEVES FOR CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

## 2.4 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Calpico, Inc.
  - 3. Metraflex Co.
  - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- D. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- I. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.
- J. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.



### 3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
  - 1. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches , thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
  - 2. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.
- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
- G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
- H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry.
- J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- M. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.

- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
    - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF DOCUMENT



## SECTION 260526

### GROUNDING AND BONDING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1) Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
  - 2) Dossert; AFL Telecommunications LLC.
  - 3) ERICO International Corporation.
  - 4) Fushi Copperweld Inc.
  - 5) Galvan Industries, Inc.; Electrical Products Division, LLC.
  - 6) Harger Lightning and Grounding.
  - 7) ILSCO.
  - 8) O-Z/Gedney; A Brand of the EGS Electrical Group.
  - 9) Robbins Lightning, Inc.
  - 10) Siemens Power Transmission & Distribution, Inc.

##### 2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

## 2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
  - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- C. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:
  - 1. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
  - 2. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding. If wood, use pressure-treated fir or cypress or cedar.
- D. Grounding Bus: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 2 inches in cross section, unless otherwise indicated; with insulators.

## 2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
  - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## 2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel, 3/4 inch by 10 feet in diameter.

1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches long.
2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, #4 AWG minimum.
  - 1) Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
- C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1) Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2) Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3) Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4) Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

### 3.3 GROUNDING OVERHEAD LINES

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Install 2 parallel ground rods if resistance to ground by a single, ground-rod electrode exceeds 25 ohms.
- C. Drive ground rods until tops are 12 inches below finished grade in undisturbed earth.
- D. Ground-Rod Connections: Install bolted connectors for underground connections and connections to rods.
- E. Lightning Arrester Grounding Conductors: Separate from other grounding conductors.
- F. Secondary Neutral and Transformer Enclosure: Interconnect and connect to grounding conductor.

- G. Protect grounding conductors running on surface of wood poles with molding extended from grade level up to and through communication service and transformer spaces.

### 3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Lighting circuits.
  - 3. Receptacle circuits.
  - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
  - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
  - 9. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
  - 10. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding



conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
  - 1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch grounding bus.
  - 2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
- H. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
  - 2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

G. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF DOCUMENT

## SECTION 260529

### HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

##### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For steel slotted support systems.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. GS Metals Corp.
    - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - f. Unistrut; Atkore International.
    - g. Wesanco, Inc.
  - 2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 4. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 5. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
  - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

- a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1) Hilti, Inc.
  - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
  - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated or stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
  - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - 3) Hilti, Inc.
    - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
  3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
  5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
  6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
  7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings less than stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- C. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete.
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
  - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529





## SECTION 260533

### RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
- C. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- D. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- E. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- F. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- G. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- H. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- I. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.
- J. PVCGRC: PVC Coated Galvanized Rigid Conduit

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Alflex Inc.
3. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
5. Electri-Flex Co.
6. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
7. Maverick Tube Corporation.
8. O-Z Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
9. Wheatland Tube Company.

B. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.

C. Aluminum Rigid Conduit: ANSI C80.5.

D. IMC: ANSI C80.6.

E. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated IMC.

1. Comply with NEMA RN 1 standard.
2. PVC exterior Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.+/- 5% tolerance.

Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

Robroy "Plastibond, Permacote and KorKap.

F. EMT: ANSI C80.3.

G. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.

H. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.

1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
2. Fittings for EMT: Steel or die-cast, set-screw type.
3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

- I. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
3. Arnco Corporation.
4. CANTEX Inc.
5. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
6. Condux International, Inc.
7. ElecSYS, Inc.
8. Electri-Flex Co.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
11. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
12. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

- B. ENT: NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
- C. RNC: NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. LFNC: UL 1660.
- E. Fittings for ENT and RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- F. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

## 2.3 OPTICAL FIBER/COMMUNICATIONS CABLE RACEWAY AND FITTINGS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Arnco Corporation.
2. Endot Industries Inc.
3. IPEX Inc.
4. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

- B. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible type, approved for general-use installation.

## 2.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
  2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
  3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
  4. Hoffman.
  5. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co. Division.
  6. O-Z/Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
  7. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
  8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
  9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet Division.
  10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
  11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
  13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy or aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 2 and UL514C.
- E. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast or sheet metal, semi-adjustable, rectangular.
- F. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.
- G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum or galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- I. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
- J. Cabinets:
1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

## 2.5 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

## 2.6 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Calpico, Inc.
  - 3. Metraflex Co.
  - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Plastic or Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  - 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
  - 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  - 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: Rigid steel conduit.
3. Underground Conduit: Type EPC-40-PVC.
4. Corrosive Enviroments: PVCGRC as required by engineer.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFNC.
6. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
7. Application of Handholes and Boxes for Underground Wiring:
  - a. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete or Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
  - b. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Heavy-duty fiberglass units with polymer-concrete frame and cover, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
  - c. Handholes and Pull Boxes Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.

B. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit. Includes raceways in the following locations:
  - a. Loading dock.
  - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
  - c. Mechanical rooms.
  - d. Overhead Roll-up doors.
4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: IMC.
7. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
8. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel or nonmetallic in damp or wet locations.

- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
  - 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits in contact with concrete.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.
- B. PVC Coated Conduit: Installers to be trained and certified by manufacture for proper methods of installation. All recommended methods of installation to be followed. Tooling for proper installation to be used.
- C. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- D. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- E. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- F. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
- G. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.
- H. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
  - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.

3. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, rigid steel conduit, or IMC before rising above the floor.
- J. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
  - K. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
  - L. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.
  - M. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
    1. 3/4-Inch Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet.
    2. 1-Inch Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet.
    3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
  - N. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
    1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
    2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
  - O. Expansion-Joint Fittings for RNC: Install in each run of aboveground conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet.
    1. Install expansion-joint fittings for each of the following locations, and provide type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for location:
      - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
      - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
      - c. Indoor Spaces: Connected with the Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
      - d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.



2. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change.
  3. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at the time of installation.
- P. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- Q. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.
- R. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- S. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
  2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
  5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
    - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits, placing them 24 inches o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of conduit.

### 3.4 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
  1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
  2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.
- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
- H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

- M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.5 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533



## SECTION 260544

### SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

###### A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

###### B. Related Requirements:

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ###### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 SLEEVES

###### A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- ###### B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

###### C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
  - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.

- b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. CALPICO, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Company (The).
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
    - e. Proco Products, Inc.
  2. Sealing Elements: EPDM or Nitrile (Buna N) rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  3. Pressure Plates: Plastic or Stainless steel.
  4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, or Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Presealed Systems.

## 2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
  - 2. Sealant shall have VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
  - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
    - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
    - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
  - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
  - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
  - 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544



## SECTION 260553

### IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Identification for raceway and metal-clad cable.
  - 2. Identification for conductors and communication and control cable.
  - 3. Underground-line warning tape.
  - 4. Warning labels and signs.
  - 5. Instruction signs.
  - 6. Equipment identification labels.
  - 7. Miscellaneous identification products.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.
- B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.
- C. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and ANSI C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.

##### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in the Contract Documents, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring

diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual, and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RACEWAY AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Color for Printed Legend:
  - 1. Power Circuits: Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate system or service and voltage, if applicable.
- C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- D. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- E. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- F. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

### 2.2 CONDUCTOR AND COMMUNICATION- AND CONTROL-CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.
- B. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

- C. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels: Cut from 0.014-inch thick aluminum sheet, with stamped, embossed, or scribed legend, and fitted with tabs and matching slots for permanently securing around wire or cable jacket or around groups of conductors.
- D. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking nylon tie fastener.
- E. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.010 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and polyester or nylon tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

### 2.3 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Description: Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, polyethylene tape.
  - 1. Not less than 6 inches wide by 5 mils thick.
  - 2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
  - 3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
  - 4. Printed legend shall indicate type of underground line.
- B. Color and Printing:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
  - 2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE
  - 3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

### 2.4 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.
- D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs: Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches.
- E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

## 2.5 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch thick for signs up to 20 sq. in. and 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes.
  1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
  2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
  3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.6 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.
- B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and ultraviolet-resistant seal for label.
- C. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.
- D. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.
- E. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, 1-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.
  1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  2. Tensile Strength: 50 lb, minimum.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- B. Paint: Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.

1. Exterior Concrete, Stucco, and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):
  - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
    - 1) Primer: Exterior concrete and masonry primer.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
2. Exterior Concrete Unit Masonry:
  - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a block filler.
    - 1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
3. Exterior Ferrous Metal:
  - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
    - 1) Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
4. Exterior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):
  - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
    - 1) Primer: Exterior zinc-coated metal primer.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
5. Interior Concrete and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):
  - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
    - 1) Primer: Interior concrete and masonry primer.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss alkyd enamel.
6. Interior Concrete Unit Masonry:
  - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a block filler.
    - 1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
7. Interior Gypsum Board:
  - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
    - 1) Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
8. Interior Ferrous Metal:

- a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
  - 1) Primer: Interior ferrous-metal primer.
  - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
- 9. Interior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):
  - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
    - 1) Primer: Interior zinc-coated metal primer.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
- C. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30 A: Identify with orange self-adhesive vinyl label or snap-around label.
- B. Accessible Raceways and Cables of Auxiliary Systems: Identify the following systems with color-coded, self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands or snap-around, color-coding bands:
  - 1. Fire Alarm System: Red.
  - 2. Fire-Suppression Supervisory and Control System: Red and yellow.
  - 3. Combined Fire Alarm and Security System: Red and blue.
  - 4. Security System: Blue and yellow.
  - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Supervisory System: Green and blue.
  - 6. Telecommunication System: Green and yellow.
  - 7. Control Wiring: Green and red.
- C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification: For primary and secondary conductors No. 1/0 AWG and larger in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes use aluminum wraparound marker labels or metal tags. Identify source and circuit number of each set of conductors. For single conductor cables, identify phase in addition to the above.
- D. Branch-Circuit Conductor Identification: Where there are conductors for more than three branch circuits in same junction or pull box, use color-coding conductor tape or aluminum wraparound marker labels or metal tags. Identify each ungrounded conductor according to source and circuit number.
- E. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags or marker tape to conductors and list source and circuit number.

- F. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, signal, sound, intercommunications, voice, and data connections.
1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
  2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- G. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
- H. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145 and apply self-adhesive warning labels. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
1. Equipment with Multiple Power or Control Sources: Apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.
  2. Equipment Requiring Workspace Clearance According to NFPA 70: Unless otherwise indicated, apply to door or cover of equipment but not on flush panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- I. Instruction Signs:
1. Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
  2. Emergency Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for emergency operations.
- J. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
1. Labeling Instructions:
    - a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch

high letters on 1-1/2-inch high label; where 2 lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

- b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
- c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

- a. Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
- b. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
- c. Electrical switchgear and switchboards.
- d. Transformers.
- e. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
- f. Disconnect switches.
- g. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- h. Motor starters.
- i. Push-button stations.
- j. Contactors.
- k. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- l. Voice and data cable terminal equipment.
- m. Master clock and program equipment.
- n. Intercommunication and call system master and staff stations.
- o. Television/audio components, racks, and controls.
- p. Fire-alarm control panel and annunciators.
- q. Monitoring and control equipment.
- r. Terminals, racks, and patch panels for voice and data communication and for signal and control functions.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- E. Attach nonadhesive signs and plastic labels with screws and auxiliary hardware appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. System Identification Color Banding for Raceways and Cables: Each color band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.



- G. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V and Less: Use the colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
  - 1. Color shall be factory applied or, for sizes larger than No. 10 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit, field applied.
  - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
  - 3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Brown.
    - b. Phase B: Orange.
    - c. Phase C: Yellow.
  - 4. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- H. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- I. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench exceeds 16 inches overall.
- J. Painted Identification: Prepare surface and apply paint according to Division 9 painting Sections.

END OF DOCUMENT



## SECTION 262416

### PANELBOARDS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
  - 3. Load centers.
  - 4. Electronic-grade panelboards.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
- B. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  - 5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - 6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  - 7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

8. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
- C. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.
  - D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
    2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
  - B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations:
    1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
    2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
      - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
      - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
  - B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
    1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
    2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.
  - C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
2. Comply with NFPA 70E.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

- 1.8 Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and Ground Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

- B. Enclosures: Flush and surface-mounted cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

- a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - d. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5.
2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
  3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
  4. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
  5. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  6. Finishes:
    - a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    - b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
    - c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
  7. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.
- C. Incoming Mains Location: Top and bottom.
- D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
  3. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
  4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
  5. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
- E. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
  3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
  4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
  5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
  6. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.

- 7. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
- F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- G. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- H. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices, listed and labeled for series-connected short-circuit rating by an NRTL.
- I. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

## 2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
  - 1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Plug-in circuit breakers.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.
- G. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
  - 1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.

## 2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
  - 1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
- F. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- G. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

## 2.4 LOAD CENTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- C. Load Centers: Comply with UL 67.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.



- F. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.

## 2.5 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
    - a. Instantaneous trip.
    - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
  4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
  5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
  6. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
  7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
  8. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
    - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.

- c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
- d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
- e. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit.
- f. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
- g. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
- h. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.

## 2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases, 4-inch nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
  2. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.
  5. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- F. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- G. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- H. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- I. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- J. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
  - 1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
  - 2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
  - 3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
  - 4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

END OF DOCUMENT

## SECTION 262726

### WIRING DEVICES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
  - 2. Twist-locking receptacles.
  - 3. Receptacles with integral surge suppression units.
  - 4. Wall-box motion sensors.
  - 5. Isolated-ground receptacles.
  - 6. Hospital-grade receptacles.
  - 7. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
  - 8. Solid-state fan speed controls.
  - 9. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
  - 10. Communications outlets.
  - 11. Pendant cord-connector devices.
  - 12. Cord and plug sets.
  - 13. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- E. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
  - 1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
  - 1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
  - 2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
  - 3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
  - 4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

#### 2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
    - b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
    - c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).
- B. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498 Supplement SD.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; 8300 (duplex).

- b. Hubbell; HBL8310 (single), HBL8300H (duplex).
  - c. Leviton; 8310 (single), 8300 (duplex).
  - d. Pass & Seymour; 9301-HG (single), 9300-HG (duplex).
- C. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Hubbell; CR 5253IG.
    - b. Leviton; 5362-IG.
    - c. Pass & Seymour; IG6300.
  - 2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- D. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; TR8300.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL8300SG.
    - c. Leviton; 8300-SGG.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 63H.
  - 2. Description: Labeled to comply with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.

### 2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description: Straight blade, feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.
- B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; GF20.
    - b. Pass & Seymour; 2084.
- C. Hospital-Grade, Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Cooper; HGF20.
  - b. Hubbell; HGF8300.
  - c. Leviton; 6898-HG.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; 2091-SHG.

## 2.4 RESIDENTIAL DEVICES

### A. Fan Speed Controls:

1. Modular, 120-V, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters.
2. Comply with UL 1917.
3. Continuously adjustable slider, 5 A.
4. Three-speed adjustable rotary knob, 1.5 A.

### B. Telephone Outlet:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a) Cooper; 3560-6.
  - b) Leviton; 40649.
2. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for terminating 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e. Comply with UL 1863.

### C. Combination TV and Telephone Outlet:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a) Cooper; 3562.
  - b) Leviton; 40159
2. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e. Comply with UL 1863.

## 2.5 TVSS RECEPTACLES

### A. General Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 1449, with integral TVSS in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground.

1. TVSS Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 volts and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.



2. Active TVSS Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
- B. Duplex TVSS Convenience Receptacles:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; 5362BLS.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL5362SA.
    - c. Leviton; 5380.
  2. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R.
- C. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; IG5362BLS.
    - b. Hubbell; IG5362SA.
    - c. Leviton; 5380-IG.
  2. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- D. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles: Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; 8300BLS.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL8362SA.
    - c. Leviton; 8380.
  2. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R.
- E. Isolated-Ground, Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; IG8300HGBLS.
    - b. Hubbell; IG8362SA.
    - c. Leviton; 8380-IG.

2. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

## 2.6 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

- A. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Cooper; L520R.
  - b. Hubbell; HBL2310.
  - c. Leviton; 2310.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; L520-R.

- B. Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Hubbell; IG2310.
  - b. Leviton; 2310-IG.
2. Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

## 2.7 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector; NEMA WD 6 configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade.

1. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
2. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

## 2.8 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.

1. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
2. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

## 2.9 SNAP SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).
  - b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
  - c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
  - d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).

C. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Cooper; 2221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
  - b. Hubbell; HPL1221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
  - c. Leviton; 1221-PLR for 120 V, 1221-7PLR for 277 V.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-PLR for 120 V.
2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."

D. Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Cooper; 2221L.
  - b. Hubbell; HBL1221L.
  - c. Leviton; 1221-2L.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-L.
2. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

- E. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; 1995.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1557.
    - c. Leviton; 1257.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 1251.
  
- F. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; 1995L.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1557L.
    - c. Leviton; 1257L.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 1251L.

## 2.10 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

- A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
- B. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.
- C. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
  - 1. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "OFF."
- D. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

## 2.11 COMMUNICATIONS OUTLETS

- A. Telephone Outlet:
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; 3560-6.

- b. Leviton; 40649.
  - 2. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for terminating 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e. Comply with UL 1863.
- B. Combination TV and Telephone Outlet:
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper; 3562.
    - b. Leviton; 40595.
  - 2. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e; and one Type F coaxial cable connector.

## 2.12 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
  - 1. Match type and color of wall plates in existing building.
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant with lockable cover.

## 2.13 FINISHES

- A. Device Color:
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
  - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red
  - 3. TVSS Devices: Blue
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant with lockable cover.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
  - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
  - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
  - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.
  2. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.
- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
  2. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Electrical Identification."
1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use stamped black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
  2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
  3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.
- B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
  3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective

devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

- C. Test straight blade hospital-grade convenience outlets for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz.

END OF DOCUMENT



## SECTION 265100

### INTERIOR LIGHTING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballasts.
  - 2. Emergency lighting units.
  - 3. Exit signs.
  - 4. Lighting fixture supports.
  - 5. Retrofit kits for fluorescent lighting fixtures.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BF: Ballast factor.
- B. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- C. CU: Coefficient of utilization.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
- G. RCR: Room cavity ratio.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
  - 1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
  - 2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
  - 3. Ballast.
  - 4. Energy-efficiency data.

5. Air and Thermal Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Furnish data required in "Submittals" Article in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
  6. Sound Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Indicate sound power level and sound transmission class in test reports certified according to standards specified in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
  7. Life, output, and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
  8. Photometric data, in IESNA format, based on laboratory tests of each lighting fixture type, outfitted with lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
    - a. For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by the manufacturer.
    - b. Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
1. Lighting fixtures.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Structural members to which suspension systems for lighting fixtures will be attached.
  4. Other items in finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Air outlets and inlets.
    - b. Speakers.
    - c. Sprinklers.
    - d. Smoke and fire detectors.
    - e. Occupancy sensors.
    - f. Access panels.
- C. Samples for Verification: Interior lighting fixtures designated for sample submission in Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule. Each sample shall include the following:
1. Lamps: Specified units installed.
  2. Accessories: Cords and plugs.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled fixtures, signed by product manufacturer.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining nine years.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining six years.
- B. Special Warranty for Ballasts: Manufacturer's standard form in which ballast manufacturer agrees to repair or replace ballasts that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Electronic Ballasts: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Electromagnetic Ballasts: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Warranty for T5 and T8 Fluorescent Lamps: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by lamp manufacturer agreeing to replace lamps that fail in materials or workmanship, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
  - 1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## 1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 2. Plastic Diffusers and Lenses: 1 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 3. Battery and Charger Data: One for each emergency lighting unit.
  - 4. Ballasts: 1 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

5. Globes and Guards: 1 for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

### 2.2 GENERAL MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Finish ferrous mounting hardware and accessories to prevent corrosion and discoloration to adjacent materials.
- B. For vapor tight installations, painted finishes of fixtures and accessories shall be weather resistant enamel using proper primers or galvanized bonderized epoxy, so that the entire assemble is completely corrosion resistant for the service intended. Where aluminum parts come into contact with bronze or steel parts, apply a coating material to both surfaces to prevent corrosion.
- C. Fixtures shall be free of light leaks and designed to provide sufficient ventilation of lamps to provide the photometric performance required. Ballasts and transformers shall be adequately vented.
- D. All sheet metal work shall be free from tool marks and dents and shall have accurate angles bent as sharp as compatible with the gauges of the required metals. Intersection and joints shall be formed true and of adequate strength and structural rigidity to prevent any distortion after assembly. Finish exposed edges o no sharp or ragged edges. All miters shall be in accurate alignment with abutting intersection members.

### 2.3 LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
- B. Incandescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
- C. Fluorescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
- D. HID Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
- E. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

- F. Sheet Metal Components: Steel, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- G. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- H. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
  - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
  - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
  - 4. Laminated Silver Metallized Film: 90 percent.
- I. Plastic Diffusers, Covers, and Globes:
  - 1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
    - a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless different thickness is indicated.
    - b. UV stabilized.
  - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Electromagnetic-Interference Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted electromagnetic-interference as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate lighting fixtures with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.
- K. Air-Handling Fluorescent Fixtures: For use with plenum ceiling for air return and heat extraction and for attaching an air-diffuser-boot assembly specified in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
  - 1. Air Supply Units: Slots in one or both side trims join with air-diffuser-boot assemblies.
  - 2. Heat Removal Units: Air path leads through lamp cavity.
  - 3. Combination Heat Removal and Air Supply Unit: Heat is removed through lamp cavity at both ends of the fixture door with air supply same as for air supply units.
  - 4. Dampers: Operable from outside fixture for control of return-air volume.
  - 5. Static Fixture: Air supply slots are blanked off, and fixture appearance matches active units.

## 2.4 BALLASTS FOR LINEAR FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Electronic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.11; instant-start type, unless otherwise indicated, and designed for type and quantity of lamps served. Ballasts shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated.

1. Sound Rating: A.
  2. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 percent.
  3. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
  4. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
  5. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
  6. BF: 0.85 or higher.
  7. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
  8. Parallel Lamp Circuits: Multiple lamp ballasts shall comply with ANSI C 82.11 and shall be connected to maintain full light output on surviving lamps if one or more lamps fail.
- B. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1; energy saving, high-power factor, Class P, and having automatic-reset thermal protection.
1. Ballast Manufacturer Certification: Indicated by label.
- C. Single Ballasts for Multiple Lighting Fixtures: Factory-wired with ballast arrangements and bundled extension wiring to suit final installation conditions without modification or rewiring in the field.
- D. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
1. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  2. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
  3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.
- E. Ballasts for Bi-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
1. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.
    - a. High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - b. Low-Level Operation: 30 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  2. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
  3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated.
- 2.5 BALLASTS FOR COMPACT FLUORESCENT LAMPS
- A. Description: Electronic programmed rapid-start type, complying with ANSI C 82.11, designed for type and quantity of lamps indicated. Ballast shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated:
1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
  2. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
  3. Sound Rating: A.

4. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
5. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
6. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
7. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
8. BF: 0.95 or higher, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
10. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
11. Ballast Case Temperature: 75 deg C, maximum.

B. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.

1. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
2. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.

## 2.6 EMERGENCY FLUORESCENT POWER UNIT

A. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within lighting fixture body and compatible with ballast. Comply with UL 924.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate 1 fluorescent lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
2. Night-Light Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously.
3. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
  - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
6. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

B. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more fluorescent lamps, remote mounted from lighting fixture. Comply with UL 924.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
2. Night-Light Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp in a remote fixture continuously.
3. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
4. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
5. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
6. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
7. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
8. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

## 2.7 BALLASTS FOR HID LAMPS

- A. Electromagnetic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029. Include the following features, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
  2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F for single-lamp ballasts.
  3. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F.
  4. Open-circuit operation that will not reduce average life.
  5. Low-Noise Ballasts: Manufacturers' standard epoxy-encapsulated models designed to minimize audible fixture noise.
- B. Electronic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
  2. Sound Rating: A.
  3. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 15 percent.
  4. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
  5. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.5 or less.
  6. Power Factor: .90 or higher.
  7. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
  8. Protection: Class P thermal cutout.
  9. Retain subparagraph and associated subparagraphs below for bi-level ballasts.
  10. Bi-Level Dimming Ballast: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated fixture between high- and low-level and off.



- a. High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - b. Low-Level Operation: 50 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - c. Compatibility: Certified by ballast manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
11. Continuous Dimming Ballast: Dimming range shall be from 100 to 35 percent of rated lamp lumens without flicker.
- a. Ballast Input Watts: Reduced to a maximum of 50 percent of normal at lowest dimming setting.
  - b. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
- C. Auxiliary Instant-On Quartz System: Factory-installed feature automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when power outages occur. System automatically turns quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent light output.
- D. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type, with solid-state igniter/starter. Igniter-starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
1. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
    - a. Restrike Range: 105- to 130-V ac.
    - b. Maximum Voltage: 250-V peak or 150-V ac RMS.
  2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 40 deg F.
  3. Open-circuit operation shall not reduce average lamp life.

## 2.8 EXIT SIGNS

- A. Description: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
1. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, 2 for each fixture, 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
  2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 70,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
  3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
    - a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.

- b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
  - c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  - d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  - e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - f. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  - g. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.
4. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
- a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in ballast for power connection to remote unit.
  - b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

## 2.9 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

- A. Description: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.
- 1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type.
  - 2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
  - 3. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  - 4. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  - 5. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - 6. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures.
  - 7. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval of 15 minutes when power is restored after an outage.
  - 8. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared

receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.

9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

## 2.10 FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Low-Mercury Lamps: Comply with EPA's toxicity characteristic leaching procedure test; shall yield less than 0.2 mg of mercury per liter when tested according to NEMA LL 1.
- B. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 32 W maximum, nominal length of 48 inches, 2800 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 17 W maximum, nominal length of 24 inches, 1300 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. T5 rapid-start lamps, rated 28 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches, 2900 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 3000 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.11 HID LAMPS

- A. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.
  1. Dual-Arc Tube Lamps: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
- B. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.1372, with a minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- C. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- D. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and color temperature 4000 K.

## 2.12 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
- C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.
- D. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- E. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gage.
- F. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- G. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

## 2.13 RETROFIT KITS FOR FLUORESCENT LIGHTING FIXTURES

- A. Comply with UL 1598 listing requirements.
  - 1. Reflector Kit: UL 1598, Type I. Suitable for two- to four-lamp, surface-mounted or recessed lighting fixtures by improving reflectivity of fixture surfaces.
  - 2. Ballast and Lamp Change Kit: UL 1598, Type II. Suitable for changing existing ballast, lamps, and sockets.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Lighting fixtures: Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls. Install lamps in each fixture.
- B. Support for Lighting Fixtures in or on Grid-Type Suspended Ceilings: Use grid as a support element.
  - 1. Install a minimum of four ceiling support system rods or wires for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches from lighting fixture corners.
  - 2. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
  - 3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
  - 4. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.
- C. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
  2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
  3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
- D. Air-Handling Lighting Fixtures: Install with dampers closed and ready for adjustment.
- E. Adjust aimable lighting fixtures to provide required light intensities.
- F. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.
- B. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

END OF DOCUMENT



## SECTION 265600 EXTERIOR LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior luminaires with lamps and ballasts.
2. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
3. Poles and accessories.

#### 1.2 STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS CRITERIA FOR POLE SELECTION

- A. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
- B. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf, distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
- C. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft., applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M Ice Load Map.
- D. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire and banners and banner arms, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles is 130 mph.
    - a. Risk Category: Cat IV.
    - b. Minimum Design Life: 50 years.
    - c. Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.25.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LUMINAIRES

- A. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. LER Tests Incandescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
  - 2. LER Tests HID Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
- B. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
- C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- D. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- E. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.
- G. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
- H. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- I. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.



- J. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
  - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
  - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
  
- K. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
  
- L. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and - tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finishes process and color of pole or support materials.
  
- M. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  - 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  
- N. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
  - 3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
  - 4. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
    - a. Color: by Architect.
  
- O. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
  - a. "USES ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
  - b. Lamp tube configuration (twin, quad, triple), base type, and nominal wattage for compact fluorescent luminaires.
  - c. Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
  - d. Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start) compact fluorescent luminaires.
  - e. ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
  - f. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

## 2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

- A. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.
- B. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc and off at 4.5 to 10 fc with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.
  1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
  2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

## 2.4 FLUORESCENT BALLASTS AND LAMPS

- A. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments:
  1. Temperatures 0 Deg F and Higher: Electronic or electromagnetic type rated for 0 deg F starting and operating temperature with indicated lamp types.
  2. Temperatures Minus 20 Deg F and Higher: Electromagnetic type designed for use with indicated lamp types.
- B. Ballast Characteristics:
  1. Power Factor: 90 percent, minimum.
  2. Sound Rating: Class A.
  3. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 percent.
  4. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1, energy-saving, high power factor, Class P, automatic-reset thermal protection.
  5. Case Temperature for Compact Lamp Ballasts: 65 deg C, maximum.
  6. Transient-Voltage Protection: Comply with IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
- C. Low-Temperature Lamp Capability: Rated for reliable starting and operation with ballast provided at temperatures 0 deg F and higher.

## 2.5 BALLASTS FOR HID LAMPS

- A. Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029 and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
  - 2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F.
  - 3. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F.
  - 4. Ballast Fuses: One in each ungrounded power supply conductor. Voltage and current ratings as recommended by ballast manufacturer.
- B. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type with solid-state igniter/starter and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Igniter/starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.

## 2.6 HID LAMPS

- A. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), CCT color temperature 1900K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.
  - 1. Dual-Arc Tube Lamp: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
- B. Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.43.
- C. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.43, with minimum CRI 65, and CCT color temperature 4000K.
- D. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and CCT color temperature 4000K.
- E. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and CCT color temperature 4000K.

## 2.7 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.
  - 1. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.
  - 2. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.

- B. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
  - 1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
  - 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.
- D. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches, with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws. Provide on all, except wood poles.
- E. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- F. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.
- G. Breakaway Supports: Frangible breakaway supports, tested by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, according to AASHTO LTS-4-M.

## 2.8 STEEL POLES

- A. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500, Grade B, carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig; one-piece construction up to 40 feet (12 m) in height with access handhole in pole wall.
  - 1. Shape: Square, tapered.
  - 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- B. Steel Mast Arms: Single-arm type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as pole.
- C. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
  - 1. Adapter fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole mounted adapter, and then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
  - 2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
  - 3. Match pole material and finish.
- D. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.

- E. Steps: Fixed steel, with nonslip treads, positioned for 15-inch vertical spacing, alternating on opposite sides of pole; first step at elevation 10 feet above finished grade.
- F. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
- G. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported cable times a 5.0 safety factor.
- H. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- I. Galvanized Finish: After fabrication, hot-dip galvanize complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- J. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  - 2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
  - 3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.9 ALUMINUM POLES

- A. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6 with access handhole in pole wall.
- B. Poles: ASTM B 209, 5052-H34 marine sheet alloy with access handhole in pole wall.
  - 1. Shape: Square, tapered.
  - 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- C. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- D. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed

for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.

- E. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, with pole and adapter fittings of cast aluminum. Adapter fitting welded to pole and bracket, and then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
  - 1. Tapered oval cross section, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
  - 2. Finish: Same as pole.
- F. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- G. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
  - 3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
  - 4. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.10 WOOD POLES

- A. Poles: Douglas fir complying with ANSI O5.1 and with AWPA UC4 for wood species used; and bored, roofed, and gabled before treatment.
  - 1. Mounting Provisions: Embedded.
- B. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat poles with ammoniacal copper arsenate according to AWPA UC4.
- C. Luminaire Brackets: Comply with ANSI C136.13. Fasteners shall be compatible with chemicals used in preservative treatment.

## 2.11 POLE ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex Receptacle: 120 V, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly complying with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for ground-fault circuit-interrupter type.
  - 1. Recessed, 12 inches above finished grade.

2. Nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass, weatherproof in use, cover, color to match pole, that when mounted results in NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure.
  3. With cord opening.
  4. With lockable hasp and latch that complies with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.
- B. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.
- C. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.
- D. Transformer Type Base: Same material and color as pole. Coordinate dimensions to suit pole's base flange and accept indicated accessories on drawings.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
1. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

#### 3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.
- B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
1. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: 60 inches.
  2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet.
  3. Trees: 15 feet from tree trunk.
- C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.
  - 1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
  - 2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
  - 3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch-diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
- E. Embedded Poles with Tamped Earth Backfill: Set poles to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
  - 1. Dig holes large enough to permit use of tampers in the full depth of hole.
  - 2. Backfill in 6-inch layers and thoroughly tamp each layer so compaction of backfill is equal to or greater than that of undisturbed earth.
- F. Embedded Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
  - 1. Make holes 6 inches in diameter larger than pole diameter.
  - 2. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi at 28 days, and finish in a dome above finished grade.
  - 3. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch-diameter pipe to make a drain hole through concrete dome. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
  - 4. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.
- G. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of 6-inch-wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level 1 inch below top of concrete slab.
- H. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).

### 3.3 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
- B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches **above** finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTING LUMINAIRES

- A. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete



materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.5 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

### 3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
- B. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
  - 2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
  - 3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.

END OF SECTION 265600



# ***DIVISION 31***

---

## **EARTHWORK**

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.  
554 OLD SPANISH TRAIL  
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458  
Phone: 985-649-5832  
Fax: 985-641-5950  
Dammonengineering.com





## SECTION 311000

### SITE CLEARING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Protecting existing trees, shrubs, groundcovers, plants and grass to remain.
  - 2. Removing existing trees, shrubs, groundcovers, plants and grass.
  - 3. Clearing and grubbing.
  - 4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
  - 5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
  - 6. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.
  - 7. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than **2 inches** in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.
- B. Tree Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

##### 1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for stripped topsoil or other materials indicated to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
- B. Record drawings, according to Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents," identifying and accurately locating capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
  - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.
- D. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- E. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Section "Earthwork."

1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly flag trees and vegetation to remain or to be relocated.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
  1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion and sedimentation control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- C. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

### 3.3 TREE PROTECTION

- A. Erect and maintain temporary fencing around tree protection zones before starting site clearing. Remove fence when construction is complete.
  1. Do not store construction materials, debris, or excavated material within fenced area.
  2. Do not permit vehicles, equipment, or foot traffic within fenced area.
  3. Maintain fenced area free of weeds and trash.
- B. Do not excavate within tree protection zones, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where excavation for new construction is required within tree protection zones, hand clear and excavate to minimize damage to root systems. Use narrow-tine spading forks, comb soil to expose roots, and cleanly cut roots as close to excavation as possible.
  1. Cover exposed roots with burlap and water regularly.

2. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently redirected and covered with soil.
  3. Coat cut faces of roots more than 1-1/2 inches in diameter with an emulsified asphalt or other approved coating formulated for use on damaged plant tissues.
  4. Backfill with soil as soon as possible.
- D. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.
1. Employ an arborist, licensed in jurisdiction where Project is located, to submit details of proposed repairs and to repair damage to trees and shrubs.
  2. Replace trees that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by Architect.

### 3.4 UTILITIES

- A. Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.
- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.
1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
  2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- D. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.
- E. Removal of underground utilities is included in Division 2 Sections covering site utilities.

### 3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
  2. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner where such roots and branches obstruct installation of new construction.



3. Grind stumps and remove roots, obstructions, and debris extending to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
4. Use only hand methods for grubbing within tree protection zone.
5. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.

B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.

1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of **8 inches**, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

### 3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.

B. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.

1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

C. Stockpile topsoil materials away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to **72 inches**.
2. Do not stockpile topsoil within tree protection zones.
3. Dispose of excess topsoil as specified for waste material disposal.
4. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

### 3.7 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.

B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.

1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut length of existing pavement to remain before removing existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain to prevent corrosion.

### 3.8 DISPOSAL

A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

1. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 312000

### EARTH MOVING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
  - 2. Excavating and backfilling for utility trenches.
  - 3. Excavating and backfilling trenches for buried mechanical and electrical utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
  - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- C. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- D. Drainage Course: Course supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- E. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices.
  - 2. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.

- F. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- G. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- H. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or course placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- I. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- J. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Each type of plastic warning tape.
  - 2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:
  - 1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
  - 2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698 for each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
- C. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earthwork operations. Submit before earthwork begins.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pre-excavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Architect and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.

1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
  3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.
- B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3 according to AASHTO M 145, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups in A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7 according to AASHTO M 145, or a combination of these groups.
1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed or crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
- I. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.

- J. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate, natural, or manufactured sand.
- K. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

## 2.2 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

- A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Low-density, self-compacting, flowable concrete material as follows:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, II, or III.
  - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
  - 3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33.
  - 4. Foaming Agent: ASTM C 869.
  - 5. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
  - 6. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm)
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
  - 1. Red: Electric.
  - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
  - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  - 4. Blue: Water systems.
  - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Preparation of subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface is specified in Division 2 Section "Site Clearing."

- C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 2 Section "Site Clearing," during earthwork operations.
- D. Provide protective insulating materials to protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost.

### 3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
  - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
  - 2. Install a dewatering system, specified in Division 2 Section "Dewatering," to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

### 3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

### 3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
  - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.
- B. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth.
  - 1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.

### 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

### 3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
  - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
  - 1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter and flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
  - 2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
- D. Trench Bottoms: Excavate trenches 4 inches deeper than bottom of pipe elevation to allow for bedding course. Hand excavate for bell of pipe.

### 3.7 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
  - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Architect.

### 3.8 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.



1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

### 3.9 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
  3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
  4. Removing concrete formwork.
  5. Removing trash and debris.
  6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

### 3.10 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.
- E. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material or satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
  1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- F. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
- G. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.

- H. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
- I. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.
- J. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.11 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
  - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
  - 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
  - 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
  - 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
  - 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

### 3.12 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
  - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
  - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

### 3.13 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to [ASTM D 698] [ASTM D 1557]:

1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent.

### 3.14 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

### 3.15 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES

- A. Place subbase and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
  1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
  2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  3. Shape subbase and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
  4. Place subbase and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
  5. Place subbas and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.

6. Compact subbase and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

### 3.16 PROTECTION

A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.

1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.

C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.

1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

### 3.17 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

B. Disposal: Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Architect.

1. Remove waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF DOCUMENT





## SECTION 316219

### TIMBER PILES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes round timber piles.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for piles, including details of driving shoes, tips or boots, and pile butt protection.

##### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Round timber pile treatment data.
- B. Pile-Driving Equipment Data: Include type, make, and rated energy range; weight of striking part of hammer; weight of drive cap; and, type, size, and properties of hammer cushion.
- C. Pile-driving records.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 TIMBER PILES

- A. Pressure-treated round timber piles conforming to ASTM D25, shall have a minimum tip diameter and a minimum butt diameter as indicated on drawings, measured three feet from the butt:
  - 1. Service Condition: Foundation.
  - 2. Treatment: In accordance with the latest revision of AWPA Standard for treatment of Foundation Piles.

## 2.2 PILE ACCESSORIES

- A. Driving Shoes: Fabricate from ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-rolled carbon-steel strip to suit pile-tip diameter.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Pile Tips: Cut and shape pile tips to accept driving shoes. Fit and fasten driving shoes to pile tips according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Pile Butt: Trim pile butt and cut perpendicular to longitudinal axis of pile. Chamfer and shape butt to fit tightly to driving cap of hammer.
- C. Field-Applied Wood Preservative: Treat field cuts, holes, and other penetrations according to AWWA M4.
- D. Pile-Length Markings: Mark each pile with horizontal lines at 12-inch intervals; label the distance from pile tip at 60-inch intervals.

## PART 3 - E EQUIPMENT

### 3.1 Equipment for Driving Piles - Provide pile driving equipment meeting the following requirements:

- A. Impact Pile Hammers - Provide a striking part of the hammer not less than one-third the mass (weight) of the helmet and pile being driven, but never less than 1250 kg (2,750 pounds).
  1. Air-Steam Hammers - Provide power plant and equipment for air-steam hammers with sufficient capacity under working conditions to maintain the volume and pressure at the hammer specified by the manufacturer and with accurate pressure gauges easily accessible to the Engineer.
  2. Open-End Diesel Hammers - Provide open-end (single-acting) diesel hammers equipped with a device which allows the Engineer to visually determine hammer stroke at all times during pile driving operations. Provide the Engineer with the hammer manufacturer's chart equating stroke and blows per minute.
  3. Closed-End Diesel Hammers - Provide closed-end (double-acting) diesel hammers equipped with a bounce chamber pressure gauge, mounted near ground level so the Engineer can easily read it. Before driving, provide the Engineer a chart calibrated within six months before first use on the Project to actual hammer performance, equating bounce chamber pressure to either equivalent energy or stroke.
  4. Gravity Hammers - Provide gravity hammers that have a ram weighing between 900 kg (2,000 pounds) and 2200 kg (5,000 pounds) and a drop height of not more than 3 m (10 feet). The mass (weight) of gravity hammers shall not be less than the combined mass (weight) of helmet and pile.
  5. Hydraulic Hammers - Provide either single or double acting hydraulic hammers equipped with monitoring systems to measure impact velocity and determine



equivalent energy and stroke. Locate monitoring systems for easy access by the Engineer.

- B. Vibratory Hammers - Control installation of production piles with vibratory hammers according to the power consumption, rate of penetration, specified tip elevation, or other acceptable means which assure the pile resistance equals or exceeds the required nominal pile bearing resistance. After driving piles with a vibratory hammer, verify pile capacity (See Sec 4.2). Do not use vibratory hammers to drive test piles or when preboring or jetting.

C. Driving Components:

1. Pile Cushion - Protect the heads of prestressed concrete piles with a pile cushion made of wood or other approved material.

The pile cushion shall be:

- a. Equal to or greater in cross-sectional contact area than the pile head.
- b. In full contact with the pile head.
- c. No less than 4 inches thick, before driving begins, if made of plywood.

Provide a pile cushion for each pile. Replace the pile cushion if, during the driving, the cushion is either compressed to less than one-half the original thickness or begins to burn.

2. Helmet - Equip piles driven with impact hammers with an adequate metal helmet. The helmet shall:

- a. Fit around the pile top.
- b. Be axially aligned with the hammer and pile.
- c. Distribute the hammer energy to the total cross section of the pile head.
- d. Be guided by leads.

3. Hammer Cushion - Equip impact pile driving equipment with a suitable thickness of hammer cushion material to prevent damage to the hammer or pile and to insure uniform driving performance. Provide hammer cushions of durable manufactured materials according to the hammer manufacturer's guidelines. Do not use wood, wire rope, or asbestos hammer cushions. Place a striker plate, as recommended by the hammer manufacturer, on the hammer cushion to insure uniform compression of the cushion material.

Inspect the hammer cushion in the presence of the Engineer at the beginning of pile driving at each structure or after each 100 hours of use during pile driving, whichever is less. Replace the hammer cushion when its thickness becomes less than 75% of its original thickness.

4. Followers - Use a follower between the pile hammer and the pile to transmit energy when the pile head is below the reach of the hammer, if approved in writing. If a follower is allowed, drive the first pile in each bent, and every tenth pile driven after that, full length without a follower. Before additional piles are installed, verify that the first two piles installed with followers in each substructure unit meet the position and alignment criteria of 4.1C.

5. Leads - Support piles in line and position while driving. Construct pile hammer leads to give the hammer freedom of movement while maintaining alignment of

the hammer and the pile to insure concentric impact for each blow. Leads shall be fixed unless the Engineer approves the use of swinging leads. Fit swinging leads, when used, with a pile gate at the bottom of the leads. To maintain alignment of batter piles, use horizontally braced swinging leads, adequately embedded in the ground, or rigidly attached to prevent movement during pile driving.

## PART 4 - EXECUTION

### 4.1 DRIVING PILES

- A. General: Continuously drive piles to elevations or penetration resistance indicated. Establish and maintain axial alignment of leads and piles before and during driving.
- B. Heaved Piles: Redrive heaved piles to tip elevation at least as deep as original tip elevation with a driving resistance at least as great as original driving resistance.
- C. Driving Tolerances: Drive piles without exceeding the following tolerances, measured at pile heads:
  - 1. Location: 4 inches from location indicated after initial driving, and 6 inches after pile driving is completed.
  - 2. Plumb: Maintain 1 inch in 4 feet from vertical, or a maximum of 4 inches, measured when pile is aboveground in leads.
  - 3. Batter Angle: Maximum 1 inch in 4 feet from required angle, measured when pile is aboveground in leads.
- D. Withdraw damaged or defective piles and piles that exceed driving tolerances and install new piles within driving tolerances. Fill holes left by withdrawn piles as directed by Architect.
- E. Cutting Off: Cut off butts of driven piles square with pile axis and at elevations indicated.
- F. Pile-Driving Records: Maintain accurate driving records for each pile, compiled and attested to by the President/Owner of the pile driving company.

### 4.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform static load test(s) on 10% of driven piles selected by engineer. Test shall be conducted in accordance with the latest revision of ASTM D 1143, Standard Test Method for Piles Under Static Axial Compressive Load

END OF SECTION 316219